

# **Online User's Guide**

MFC-J2330DW MFC-J2730DW MFC-J5330DW MFC-J5730DW MFC-J5930DW

## **IMPORTANT NOTICE**

The following features described in this guide may not be available at the time of purchase:

- Auto Crop in Scan options
- Fit to Page in Copy options
- Ink Save Copy
- Thin Paper Copy
- Book Copy
- Watermark Copy

#### These features will be available in January 2017.

To activate these features, download the latest firmware and software:

- To check for the latest firmware, visit <u>solutions.brother.com/up2</u>.
- To check for the latest software, go to your model's **Downloads** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u>, and download the **Full Driver & Software Package**.

#### Home > Table of Contents

## **Table of Contents**

Before You Use Your Brother Machine	1
Definitions of Notes	2
Trademarks	3
Important Note	4
Introduction to Your Brother Machine	5
Before Using Your Machine	6
Control Panel Overview	7
Touchscreen LCD Overview	10
New Information from Brother	
Settings Screen Overview	
Navigate the Touchscreen	23
Set the Ready Screen	25
Set the Default Screen of the Copy and Scan Mode	
Access Brother Utilities (Windows)	27
Uninstall the Brother Software and Drivers (Windows)	
Paper Handling	29
Load Paper	
Load Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2	
Load Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray (MP Tray)	
Load Paper in the Manual Feed Slot	53
Unprintable Area	
Paper Settings	
Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media	64
Load Documents	74
Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	75
Load Documents on the Scanner Glass	77
Unscannable Area	78
Print	79
Print from Your Computer (Windows)	80
Print a Photo (Windows)	
Print a Document (Windows)	
Cancel a Print Job (Windows)	
Print More Than One Page on a Single Sheet of Paper (N in 1) (Windows)	
Print as a Poster (Windows)	
Print on Both Sides of the Paper Automatically (Automatic 2-sided Printing) (Windows)	
Print as a Booklet Automatically (Windows)	
Print a Colour Document in Greyscale (Windows)	91
Prevent Smudged Printouts and Paper Jams (Windows)	
Use a Preset Print Profile (Windows)	93
Change the Default Print Settings (Windows)	
Print Settings (Windows)	
Print from Your Computer (Mac)	
Print a Photo (Mac)	
Print a Document (Mac)	
Print on Both Sides of the Paper Automatically (Automatic 2-sided Printing) (Mac)	105

Home > Table of Contents	
Print More Than One Page on a Single Sheet of Paper (N in 1) (Mac)	106
Print a Colour Document in Greyscale (Mac)	107
Prevent Smudged Printouts and Paper Jams (Mac)	108
Print Options (Mac)	109
Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive	115
Compatible USB Flash Drives	116
Print Photos Directly from a USB Flash Drive	117
Print a PDF File Directly from a USB Flash Drive	130
Scan	132
Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine	
Scan Photos and Graphics	
Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File	
Save Scanned Data to a USB Flash Drive	
Scan Multiple Business Cards and Photos (Auto Crop)	
Scan to an Editable Text File Using OCR	
Scan to Email Attachment	
Send Scanned Data to an Email Server	
Scan to FTP	
Scan to Network (Windows)	161
Web Services for Scanning on Your Network (Windows Vista SP2 or greater, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10)	169
Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter4 (Windows)	174
Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter2 (Mac)	
Scan from Your Computer (Windows)	182
Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)	
Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)	200
Scan Using Nuance <sup>™</sup> PaperPort <sup>™</sup> 14 or Other Windows Applications	
Scan Using Windows Photo Gallery or Windows Fax and Scan	222
Install BookScan Enhancer and Whiteboard Enhancer (Windows)	226
Scan from Your Computer (Mac)	
Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)	228
Scan Using TWAIN-Compliant Applications (Mac)	
Configure Scan Settings Using Web Based Management	
Set the Scan Job Email Report Using Web Based Management	
Сору	249
Copy a Document	250
Enlarge or Reduce Copied Images	
Sort Copies	
Make Page Layout Copies ( N in 1 or Poster)	256
Copy on Both Sides of the Paper (2-sided Copy)	
Copy an ID Card	
Use the A3 Copy Shortcuts	
Copy in Ink Save Mode	
Copy Options	
Use Preset Copy Settings	
Fax	277
Send a Fax	

Send a Fax from Your Brother Machine	279
Send a 2-sided Fax from the ADF	283
Send a Fax Manually	284
Send a Fax at the End of a Conversation	285
Send the Same Fax to More than One Recipient (Broadcasting)	286
Send a Fax in Real Time	
Send a Fax at a Specified Time (Delayed Fax)	
Change the Fax Auto Redial Setting	
Cancel a Fax in Progress	
Check and Cancel a Pending Fax	
Fax Options	
Receive a Fax	
Receive Mode Settings	299
Fax Preview	306
Shrink Page Size of an Oversized Incoming Fax	312
Set the Fax Receive Stamp	
Receive a Fax at the End of a Telephone Conversation	
Memory Receive Options	
Remote Fax Retrieval	
Voice Operations and Fax Numbers	330
Voice Operations	331
Store Fax Numbers	334
Set up Groups for Broadcasting	341
Telephone Services and External Devices	346
Distinctive Ring	347
Caller ID	351
Set the Telephone Line Type	353
FaxAbility	355
Voice Over Internet Protocol (VoIP/Telephone Line Interference)	357
External TAD (Telephone Answering Device)	358
External and Extension Telephones	362
Fax Reports	368
Set the Transmission Verification Report's Style	369
Set the Fax Journal's Interval Period	370
PC-FAX	372
PC-FAX for Windows	373
PC-FAX for Mac	396
Network	. 399
Supported Basic Network Features	400
Network Management Software and Utilities	401
Learn about Network Management Software and Utilities	402
Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network	403
Before Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network	404
Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup <sup>™</sup> (WPS)	
Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup <sup>™</sup> (WPS)	406

Home > Table of Contents	
Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID is Not Broadcast	409
Configure Your Machine for an Enterprise Wireless Network	412
Use Wi-Fi Direct <sup>®</sup>	417
Advanced Network Features	429
Print the Network Configuration Report	430
Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax)	431
Configure and Operate LDAP Search	453
Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management	457
Technical Information for Advanced Users	461
Reset the Network Settings to Factory Default	462
Print the WLAN Report	463
Security	466
Before Using Network Security Features	467
Secure Function Lock 3.0	
Before Using Secure Function Lock 3.0	469
Configure Secure Function Lock 3.0 Using Web Based Management	470
Scan Using Secure Function Lock 3.0	471
Configure Public Mode for Secure Function Lock 3.0	472
Additional Secure Function Lock 3.0 Features	473
Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS	474
Certificates and Web Based Management	475
Send or Receive an Email Securely	500
Configure Email Sending or Receiving Using Web Based Management	501
Send an Email with User Authentication	502
Send or Receive an Email Securely Using SSL TLS	503
Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network	505
What Is IEEE 802.1x Authentication?	506
Configure IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network Using Web Based Management (Web Browser)	507
IEEE 802.1x Authentication Methods	509
Mobile/Web Connect	510
Brother Web Connect	511
Brother Web Connect Overview	512
Online Services Used with Brother Web Connect	513
Conditions for Using Brother Web Connect	515
Set Up Brother Web Connect	519
Scan and Upload Documents Using Brother Web Connect	529
Upload a Document from an External Memory Device Using Brother Web Connect	531
Download and Print Documents Using Brother Web Connect	533
Download and Save a Document to an External Memory Device Using Brother Web Connect	
FaxForward to Cloud or E-mail	539
Google Cloud Print <sup>™</sup>	543
Google Cloud Print <sup>™</sup> Overview	544
Before Using Google Cloud Print <sup>™</sup>	545
Print from Google Chrome <sup>™</sup> or Chrome OS <sup>™</sup>	
Print from Google Drive <sup>™</sup> for Mobile	

#### ▲ Home > Table of Contents

Print from Gmail <sup>™</sup> Webmail Service for Mobile	553
AirPrint	
AirPrint Overview	
Before Using AirPrint	556
Print Using AirPrint	
Scan Using AirPrint	
Send a Fax Using AirPrint (For MFC Models)	566
Mobile Printing for Windows	
Mopria <sup>®</sup> Print Service	
Brother iPrint&Scan	
Near-Field Communication (NFC)	
ControlCenter	573
ControlCenter4 (Windows)	
Change the Operation Mode in ControlCenter4 (Windows)	
Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)	
Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)	
Set Up the Brother Machine Using ControlCenter4 (Windows)	
Create a Custom Tab Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)	
ControlCenter2 (Mac)	
Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)	
Set Up the Brother Machine Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)	
Turn the AutoLoad Feature On (Mac)	
Troubleshooting	588
Error and Maintenance Messages	
Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report	
Error Messages When Using the Brother Web Connect Feature	
Document Jams	610
Document is Jammed in the Top of the ADF Unit	611
Document is Jammed in the Bottom of the ADF Unit	612
Document is Jammed inside the ADF Unit	613
Remove Paper Scraps Jammed in the ADF	614
Printer Jam or Paper Jam	615
Paper is Jammed in the Front of the Machine	616
Paper is Jammed in the Back of the Machine	
Remove Paper Scraps	627
If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine	
Paper Handling and Printing Problems	
Telephone and Fax problems	
Other Problems	
Network Problems	
Google Cloud Print <sup>™</sup> Problems	653
AirPrint Problems	
Check the Machine Information	
Reset Your Brother Machine	
Reset Functions Overview	
Routine Maintenance	658

▲ Home > Table of Contents

Clean Your Brother Machine       662         Clean the Scanner.       663         Clean the Print Head from Your Brother Machine       665         Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Windows)       667         Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Mac)       668         Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Mac)       668         Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Mac)       669         Clean the Machine's LCD       669         Clean the Outside of the Machine       670         Clean the Machine's Printer Platen       672         Clean the Paper Feed Rollers       673         Clean the Paper Feed Rollers       675         Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers for Paper Tray #2       676         Check Your Brother Machine       677         Check the Print Quality       680         Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Windows)       683         Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)       685         Check the Init Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)       686         Check the Init Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)       686         Check the Init Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)       686         Check the Init Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)       686         Check the Init Alignment from Your Computer (Mac) <td< th=""></td<>
Clean the Print Head from Your Brother Machine       665         Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Windows)       667         Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Mac)       668         Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Mac)       668         Clean the Machine's LCD       668         Clean the Outside of the Machine       670         Clean the Outside of the Machine       672         Clean the Machine's Printer Platen       672         Clean the Paper Feed Rollers       673         Clean the Base Pad       675         Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers       676         Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers for Paper Tray #2       678         Check Your Brother Machine       679         Check the Print Quality       680         Check the Print Alignment from Your Brother Machine       683         Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Windows)       685         Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)       686         Check the Ink Volume       687
Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Windows)       667         Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Mac)       668         Clean the Machine's LCD       669         Clean the Outside of the Machine       670         Clean the Outside of the Machine       670         Clean the Machine's Printer Platen       672         Clean the Paper Feed Rollers       673         Clean the Base Pad       675         Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers       676         Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers for Paper Tray #2       678         Check Your Brother Machine       679         Check the Print Quality       680         Check the Print Alignment from Your Brother Machine       683         Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Windows)       685         Check the Init Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)       686         Check the Init Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)       686         Check the Init Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)       687         Check the Init Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)       687         Check the Init Nolume       687
Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Mac)       668         Clean the Machine's LCD       669         Clean the Outside of the Machine       670         Clean the Machine's Printer Platen       672         Clean the Paper Feed Rollers       673         Clean the Base Pad       675         Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers       676         Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers for Paper Tray #2       678         Check Your Brother Machine       679         Check the Print Quality       680         Check the Print Alignment from Your Brother Machine       683         Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Windows)       685         Check the Ink Volume       686         Check the Ink Volume       687
Clean the Machine's LCD
Clean the Outside of the Machine       670         Clean the Machine's Printer Platen       672         Clean the Paper Feed Rollers       673         Clean the Base Pad       675         Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers       676         Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers for Paper Tray #2       678         Check Your Brother Machine       679         Check the Print Quality       680         Check the Print Alignment from Your Brother Machine       683         Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Windows)       685         Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)       686         Check the Ink Volume       687
Clean the Machine's Printer Platen       672         Clean the Paper Feed Rollers       673         Clean the Base Pad       675         Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers       676         Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers for Paper Tray #2       678         Check Your Brother Machine       679         Check the Print Quality       680         Check the Print Alignment from Your Brother Machine       683         Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Windows)       685         Check the Ink Volume       687
Clean the Paper Feed Rollers       673         Clean the Base Pad       675         Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers       676         Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers for Paper Tray #2       678         Check Your Brother Machine       679         Check the Print Quality       680         Check the Print Alignment from Your Brother Machine       683         Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Windows)       685         Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)       686         Check the Ink Volume       687
Clean the Base Pad       675         Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers       676         Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers for Paper Tray #2       678         Check Your Brother Machine       679         Check the Print Quality       680         Check the Print Alignment from Your Brother Machine       683         Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Windows)       685         Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)       686         Check the Ink Volume       687
Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers
Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers for Paper Tray #2
Check Your Brother Machine
Check the Print Quality
Check the Print Alignment from Your Brother Machine
Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Windows)
Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)
Check the Ink Volume
Maritan Mashing Otatus from Maur Oceanutan (Mindaus)
Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Windows)
Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Mac)694
Correct the Paper Feed to Clear Vertical Lines
Change the Print Setting Options When Having Printing Problems
Pack and Ship Your Brother Machine699
Machine Settings
Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel
In the Event of Power Failure (Memory Storage)
General Settings
Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut
Print Reports
Settings and Features Tables
Change Machine Settings from Your Computer765
Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management
Change the Machine Settings Using Remote Setup70
Appendix
Specifications
Supply Specifications
Enter Text on Your Brother Machine
Brother Numbers

▲ Home > Before You Use Your Brother Machine

## Before You Use Your Brother Machine

- Definitions of Notes
- Trademarks
- Important Note

▲ Home > Before You Use Your Brother Machine > Definitions of Notes

## **Definitions of Notes**

WARNING indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could **WARNING** result in death or serious injuries. CAUTION indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injuries. IMPORTANT indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may **IMPORTANT** result in damage to property or loss of product functionality. NOTE specifies the operating environment, conditions for installation, or special NOTE conditions of use. Tips icons indicate helpful hints and supplementary information. Electrical Hazard icons alert you to possible electrical shock. /4 Bold Bold style identifies buttons on the machine's control panel or computer screen. Italics Italicised style emphasises an important point or refers you to a related topic. Courier New Courier New font identifies messages shown on the machine's LCD.

We use the following symbols and conventions throughout this User's Guide:

#### Related Information

Before You Use Your Brother Machine

#### Home > Before You Use Your Brother Machine > Trademarks

## **Trademarks**

Microsoft, Windows, Windows Vista, Windows Server, SharePoint, Internet Explorer, Excel, PowerPoint, OneNote, OneDrive and Microsoft Edge are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Apple, AirPrint, Mac, Safari, iPad, iPhone, iPod touch and OS X are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the United States and other countries.

App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

Nuance and PaperPort are trademarks or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc. or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.

Wi-Fi<sup>®</sup>, Wi-Fi Alliance<sup>®</sup> and Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup> are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance<sup>®</sup>.

WPA<sup>™</sup>, WPA2<sup>™</sup>, Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> and Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> logo are trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance<sup>®</sup>.

Android, Gmail, Google Cloud Print, Google Drive, Google Play, Google Chrome, Chrome OS and Google are trademarks of Google, Inc. Use of these trademarks are subject to Google Permissions.

Mozilla and Firefox are registered trademarks of the Mozilla Foundation.

The Bluetooth word mark is owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Brother Industries, Ltd. is under license.

Intel is a trademark of Intel Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.

Evernote and the Evernote Elephant logo are trademarks of Evernote Corporation and used under a license.

Mopria<sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark and a service mark of Mopria Alliance, Inc. in the United States and other countries. Unauthorized use is strictly prohibited.

WordPerfect is a registered trademark of Corel Corporation and/or its subsidiaries in Canada, the United States and/or other countries.

Each company whose software title is mentioned in this manual has a Software License Agreement specific to its proprietary programs.

Any trade names and product names of companies appearing on Brother products, related documents and any other materials are all trademarks or registered trademarks of those respective companies.

#### Related Information

· Before You Use Your Brother Machine

#### ▲ Home > Before You Use Your Brother Machine > Important Note

## **Important Note**

- Do not use this product outside the country of purchase as it may violate the wireless telecommunication and power regulations of that country.
- Windows 10 in this document represents Windows 10 Home, Windows 10 Pro, Windows 10 Education and Windows 10 Enterprise.
- Windows Server 2008 in this document represents Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2.
- In this User's Guide, the LCD messages of the MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW are used unless otherwise specified.
- In this User's Guide, the illustrations of the MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW are used unless otherwise specified.
- The screens in this User's Guide are for illustration purposes only and may differ from the actual screens.
- Unless otherwise specified, the screens in this manual are from Windows 7 and OS X v10.10.x. Screens on your computer may vary depending on your operating system.
- The contents of this guide and the specifications of this product are subject to change without notice.

#### IMPORTANT NOTICE

The following features described in this guide may not be available at the time of purchase:

- Auto Crop in Scan options
- Fit to Page in Copy options
- Ink Save Copy
- Thin Paper Copy
- Book Copy
- Watermark Copy

#### These features will be available in January 2017.

To activate these features, download the latest firmware and software:

- To check for the latest firmware, visit <u>solutions.brother.com/up2</u>.
- To check for the latest software, go to your model's Downloads page on the Brother Solutions Center at support.brother.com, and download the Full Driver & Software Package.

#### Related Information

- Before You Use Your Brother Machine
- · Save Scanned Data to a USB Flash Drive
- · Scan Multiple Business Cards and Photos (Auto Crop)
- Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter4 (Windows)
- Custom Scan Settings (Windows)
- Scan Settings for ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- TWAIN Driver Settings (Windows)
- Enlarge or Reduce Copied Images
- Copy in Ink Save Mode
- Copy Options
- Use Preset Copy Settings
- Other Problems
- Features Tables (2.7"(67.5 mm) Touchpanel models)
- Features Tables (3.7"(93.4 mm) Touch Panel models)

▲ Home > Introduction to Your Brother Machine

## Introduction to Your Brother Machine

- Before Using Your Machine
- Control Panel Overview
- Touchscreen LCD Overview
- Settings Screen Overview
- Navigate the Touchscreen
- Set the Ready Screen
- Access Brother Utilities (Windows)

▲ Home > Introduction to Your Brother Machine > Before Using Your Machine

## **Before Using Your Machine**

Before attempting any printing operation, confirm the following:

- Make sure you have installed the Brother software and drivers.
- For USB or network cable users: Make sure the interface cable is physically secure.

#### Selecting the correct type of paper

For high quality printing, it is important to select the correct type of paper. Be sure to read the information about acceptable paper before buying paper, and to determine the printable area depending on the settings in the printer driver.

#### Simultaneous printing, scanning and faxing

Your machine can print from your computer while sending or receiving a fax into memory or while scanning a document into the computer. Fax sending will not be stopped during printing from your computer. However, when the machine is copying or receiving a fax on paper, it pauses the printing operation, and then continues printing when copying or fax receiving has finished.

#### Firewall (Windows)

If your computer is protected by a firewall and you are unable to network print, network scan, or PC-FAX, you may need to configure the firewall settings. If you are using the Windows Firewall and you installed the Brother software and drivers from the CD-ROM, the necessary firewall settings have already been set. If you are using any other personal firewall software, see the User's Guide for your software or contact the software manufacturer.

#### Related Information

· Introduction to Your Brother Machine

## **Control Panel Overview**

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW



#### 1. Touchscreen Liquid Crystal Display (LCD)

Access menus and options by pressing them on the touchscreen. Adjust the angle of the control panel by lifting it.



#### 2. Menu buttons

## 🕁 (Back)

Press to go back to the previous menu.



Press to return to the Home screen.

## (Cancel)

Press to cancel an operation.

3. Dial Pad

Press the numbers to dial telephone or fax numbers and to enter the number of copies.

#### 4. LED Power Indicator

The LED lights up depending on the machine's power status.

When the machine is in Sleep Mode, the LED blinks.

## 5. O Power On/Off

Press () to turn the machine on.

Press and hold down (b) to turn the machine off. The touchscreen will display [Shutting Down] and will stay on for a few seconds before turning itself off. If you have connected an external telephone or TAD, it is always available.

If you turn the machine off using (), it will still clean the print head periodically to maintain print quality. To prolong print head life, provide better ink efficiency, and maintain print quality, keep your machine connected to a power source at all times.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW



#### 1. Touchscreen Liquid Crystal Display (LCD)

Access menus and options by pressing them on the touchscreen. Adjust the angle of the control panel by lifting it.



2. Menu buttons



Press to go back to the previous menu.



Press to return to the Home screen.



Press to cancel an operation.

3. Dial Pad

Press the numbers to dial telephone or fax numbers and to enter the number of copies.

#### 4. LED Power Indicator

The LED lights up depending on the machine's power status. When the machine is in Sleep Mode, the LED blinks.

#### 5. O Power On/Off

Press () to turn the machine on.

Press and hold down () to turn the machine off. The touchscreen will display [Shutting Down] and will stay on for a few seconds before turning itself off. If you have connected an external telephone or TAD, it is always available.

If you turn the machine off using (), it will still clean the print head periodically to maintain print quality. To prolong print head life, provide better ink efficiency, and maintain print quality, keep your machine connected to a power source at all times.

## Related Information

- Introduction to Your Brother Machine
- Near-Field Communication (NFC)

## **Touchscreen LCD Overview**

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

There are three Home screens that you can access by pressing  $\triangleleft$  or  $\blacktriangleright$ .

From the Home screens, you can access Shortcuts, Wi-Fi setup, Settings and Ink levels screens.

## Home Screen 1 20:38 01.01.2017 Fax Copy Scan Copy Scan Shortcuts 3 4 5 6

This screen shows the machine's status when the machine is idle. This Home screen is also called the Ready Mode screen. When displayed, it indicates that your machine is ready for the next command.

Home Screen 1 provides access to [Fax], [Copy] and [Scan] operations.

7



Home Screen 2 provides access to additional features, such as [Web], [Apps] and [USB] operations.



Home Screen 3 provides access to additional features, such as [A3 Copy Shortcuts] and [Download Software] operations.

#### 1. Date & Time

Displays the date and time set on the machine.

#### 2. **Quiet Mode**

This icon appears when the [Quiet Mode] setting is set to [On].

The Quiet Mode setting can reduce printing noise. When Quiet Mode is turned on, the print speed becomes slower.

3. + [Shortcuts]

Create Shortcuts for frequently-used operations, such as sending a fax, copying, scanning, Web Connect and Apps services.



- There are three Shortcuts screens. You can program four shortcuts on each screen.

#### 4. 🔿 Wireless Status

Each icon in the following table shows the wireless network status:

WIFI	Your machine is not connected to the wireless access point. Press this button to configure wireless settings. For more detailed information, see the <i>Quick Setup Guide</i> .
((•	Wireless network is connected. A three-level indicator in each of the Home screens displays the current wireless signal strength.
	The wireless access point cannot be detected.
1 k	The wireless setting is disabled.

You can configure wireless settings by pressing the Wireless Status button.

#### 5. [Settings]

Press to access the [Settings] menu.

#### 6. [Ink]

Ø

Displays the available ink volume. Press to access the [Ink] menu.

When an ink cartridge is near the end of its life or having a problem, an error icon is displayed on the ink colour.

#### 7. Modes:



Press to access Fax mode.

[Copy]

Press to access Copy mode.

• 🛃 [Scan]

Press to access Scan mode.

• 🔁 [Web]

Press to connect the Brother machine to an Internet service.

• 🜍 [Apps]

Press to connect the Brother machine to the Brother Apps service.

• 🧪 [USB]

Press to access the [USB] menu.

[A3 Copy Shortcuts]

Press to copy to A3 or Ledger size paper using this preset menu.

• 📊 [Download Software]

(available only for some countries)

Press to display information about downloading and installing software for mobile devices and computers.

8. [Stored Faxes:]



[Stored Faxes] displays how many received faxes are in the machine's memory.





When [Fax Preview] is set to [On], [New Faxes] displays how many new faxes you have received and stored in the memory.

Press (i) to view the faxes on the touchscreen.

If you receive a fax containing multiple paper sizes (for example, a page of A4 data and a page of A3 data), the machine may create and store a file for each paper size, so the touchscreen may show that more than one fax job has been received.

#### 10. Warning icon



The warning icon **(!)** appears when there is an error or maintenance message; press **(!)** to view the details, and then press **()** to return to Ready mode.

This product adopts the font of ARPHIC TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

There are three Home screens that you can access by swiping left or right or pressing ◀ or ►.

From the Home screens, you can access Shortcuts, Wi-Fi setup, Settings and Ink levels screens.

#### Home Screen 1



This screen shows the machine's status when the machine is idle. This Home screen is also called the Ready Mode screen. When displayed, it indicates that your machine is ready for the next command.



Home Screen 1 provides access to [Fax], [Copy] and [Scan] operations.

#### Home Screen 2



Home Screen 2 provides access to additional features, such as [Web], [Apps] and [USB] operations.

#### Home Screen 3



Home Screen 3 provides access to additional features, such as [A3 Copy Shortcuts] and [Download Software] operations.

#### 1. Date & Time

Displays the date and time set on the machine.

#### 2. **Quiet Mode**

This icon appears when the [Quiet Mode] setting is set to [On].

The Quiet Mode setting can reduce printing noise. When Quiet Mode is turned on, the print speed becomes slower.

#### 3. + [Shortcuts]

Create Shortcuts for frequently-used operations, such as sending a fax, copying, scanning, Web Connect and Apps services.



- Three Shortcuts tabs are available with six Shortcuts on each tab.
- Press  $\square$   $\square$   $\square$   $\square$ , displayed at the bottom of the screen to access the Home Screens.

#### Wireless Status 4.

Each icon in the following table shows the wireless network status:

	<u> </u>
WiFi	Your machine is not connected to the wireless access point.
	Press this button to configure wireless settings. For more detailed information, see the Quick Setup Guide.
	Wireless network is connected.
	A three-level indicator in each of the Home screens displays the current wireless signal strength.
	The wireless access point cannot be detected.
The second second	The wireless setting is disabled.
<u> </u>	
You	can configure wireless settings by pressing the Wireless Status button.
5. 🍟	[Settings]
Press	to access the [Settings] menu.
6.	[Ink]
Displa	ays the available ink volume. Press to access the [Ink] menu.
Wher colou	an ink cartridge is near the end of its life or having a problem, an error icon is displayed on the ink
7 Mode	e'

#### 7. Modes:

•

[Fax]

Press to access Fax mode.

[Copy]

Press to access Copy mode.

[Scan]

Press to access Scan mode.

[Web]

Press to connect the Brother machine to an Internet service.

[Apps] 1

Press to connect the Brother machine to the Brother Apps service.

[USB]

•

Press to access the [USB] menu.

[A3 Copy Shortcuts]

Press to copy to A3 or Ledger size paper using this preset menu.

[Download Software] •

(available only for some countries)

Press to display information about downloading and installing software for mobile devices and computers.

8. [Stored Faxes:]



[Stored Faxes] displays how many received faxes are in the machine's memory.

Press **(i)** to print the faxes.

9. [New Faxes:]



When [Fax Preview] is set to [On], [New Faxes] displays how many new faxes you have received and stored in the memory.

Press (i) to view the faxes on the touchscreen.

If you receive a fax containing multiple paper sizes (for example, a page of A4 data and a page of A3 data), the machine may create and store a file for each paper size, so the touchscreen may show that more than one fax job has been received.

#### 10. Warning icon

Ø



The warning icon **!** appears when there is an error or maintenance message; press **!** to view the details, and then press **X** to return to Ready mode.

This product adopts the font of ARPHIC TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD.

#### Related Information

- Introduction to Your Brother Machine
- New Information from Brother
- · Set the Ready Screen
- Reduce Printing Noise
- · Check the Ink Volume
- · Settings Screen Overview

- Use the A3 Copy Shortcuts
- Error and Maintenance Messages

▲ Home > Introduction to Your Brother Machine > Touchscreen LCD Overview > New Information from Brother

## New Information from Brother

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

New information from Brother appears in the information bar when the notification settings such as [Message from Brother] and [Firmware Auto Check] are set to [On].

Press (i) to view the details.

Internet connection is needed, and data rates may apply.



## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

New information from Brother appears in the information bar when the notification settings such as [Message from Brother] and [Firmware Auto Check] are set to [On].

Press i to view the details.

Ø

Internet connection is needed, and data rates may apply.





**Related Information** 

Touchscreen LCD Overview

Home > Introduction to Your Brother Machine > Settings Screen Overview

## **Settings Screen Overview**

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

The touchscreen shows the machine's status when you press **}** [Settings].

Use the Settings menu to access all of your Brother machine's settings.



1. [Maintenance]

#### Press to access the following menus:

- [Improve Print Quality]
- [Print Head Cleaning]
- [Remove Paper Scraps]
- [Ink Volume]
- [Ink Cartridge Model]
- [Print Setting Options]

#### [Quiet Mode]

#### Displays the Quiet Mode setting.

Press to access the [Quiet Mode] menu.

When this menu is set to [On], ( is displayed on the Home screen.

#### 3. [Fax Preview]

Displays the Fax Preview setting.

Press to access the [Fax Preview] menu.

#### 4. Receive Mode

Displays the current Receive Mode.

5. [Date & Time]

Displays the date and time.

Press to access the [Date & Time] menu.

6. [Wi-Fi]

Press to set up a wireless network connection.

If you are using a wireless connection, a three-level indicator on the screen displays the current wireless signal strength.

#### 7. [Tray Setting]

Press to access the [Tray Setting] menu.

Use options in the Tray setting menu to change the paper size and type.

8. [All Settings]

Press to access a menu of all of your machine's settings.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

The touchscreen shows the machine's status when you press

[Settings].

Use the Settings menu to access all of your Brother machine's settings.



#### 1. Receive Mode

Displays the current Receive Mode.

#### 2. [Maintenance]

Press to access the following menus:

- [Improve Print Quality]
- [Print Head Cleaning]
- [Remove Paper Scraps]
- [Ink Volume]
- [Ink Cartridge Model]
- [Print Setting Options]

#### 3. [Wi-Fi]

Press to set up a wireless network connection.

If you are using a wireless connection, a three-level indicator on the screen displays the current wireless signal strength.

4. [Date & Time]

Displays the date and time.

Press to access the [Date & Time] menu.

#### 5. [Quiet Mode]

Displays the Quiet Mode setting.

Press to access the [Quiet Mode] menu.

When this menu is set to [On], is displayed on the Home screen.

6. [All Settings]

Press to access a menu of all of your machine's settings.

[Fax Preview]

Displays the Fax Preview setting.

Press to access the [Fax Preview] menu.

#### 8. [Tray Setting]

Press to access the [Tray Setting] menu.

Use options in the Tray setting menu to change the paper size and type.

#### Related Information

· Introduction to Your Brother Machine

- Touchscreen LCD Overview
- Check the Ink Volume
- Distinctive Ring

Home > Introduction to Your Brother Machine > Navigate the Touchscreen

## Navigate the Touchscreen

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

 Press your finger on the touchscreen to display and access all the settings and features and their available options. Press <> or ▲ ▼ to scroll through them.



## IMPORTANT

DO NOT press the touchscreen with a sharp object such as a pen or stylus. It may damage the machine.

DO NOT touch the touchscreen immediately after plugging in the power cord or turning on the machine. Doing this may cause an error.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

Press your finger on the touchscreen to display and access all the settings and features and their available options. Swipe left, right or up, down or press <> or ▲ ▼ to scroll through them.



#### IMPORTANT

DO NOT press the touchscreen with a sharp object such as a pen or stylus. It may damage the machine.

DO NOT touch the touchscreen immediately after plugging in the power cord or turning on the machine. Doing this may cause an error.

## **Related Information**

 $\checkmark$ 

• Introduction to Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Introduction to Your Brother Machine > Set the Ready Screen

## Set the Ready Screen

Related Models: MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

You can change the Ready screen to either the [Screen 1], [Screen 2], [Screen 3], [Shortcuts 1], [Shortcuts 2] or [Shortcuts 3] screen.

When the machine is idle or you press , the machine will go back to the screen that you have set.

- Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Screen Settings] > [Home Screen].
- 2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Screen 1], [Screen 2], [Screen 3], [Shortcuts 1], [Shortcuts 2], or [Shortcuts 3] option, and then press the option you want.
- 3. Press

The machine will go to your new Home screen.

#### Related Information

- Introduction to Your Brother Machine
- · Set the Default Screen of the Copy and Scan Mode
- Touchscreen LCD Overview

▲ Home > Introduction to Your Brother Machine > Set the Ready Screen > Set the Default Screen of the Copy and Scan Mode

## Set the Default Screen of the Copy and Scan Mode

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

You can change the default screen of the Scan mode.

- Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Screen Settings] > [Scan Screen].
- 2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the scan options, and then press the option you want in the default screen.
- 3. Press

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

You can change the default screen of the Copy and Scan mode.

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - when changing the copy screen:

```
Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Screen Settings] > [Copy
Screen].
```

when changing the scan screen:

Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Screen Settings] > [Scan Screen].

- 2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the copy or scan options, and then press the option you want in the default screen.
- 3. Press

#### Related Information

Set the Ready Screen

▲ Home > Introduction to Your Brother Machine > Access Brother Utilities (Windows)

## Access Brother Utilities (Windows)

Brother Utilities is an application launcher that offers convenient access to all Brother applications installed on your computer.

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista and Windows 7

Click (Start) > All Programs > Brother > Brother Utilities.

• Windows 8

Tap or click **Tap (Brother Utilities**) either on the **Start** screen or the desktop.

• Windows 8.1

Move your mouse to the lower left corner of the **Start** screen and click (if using a touch-based device, swipe up from the bottom of the **Start** screen to bring up the **Apps** screen).

When the **Apps** screen appears, tap or click  $\begin{bmatrix} \bullet & \bullet \\ \bullet & \bullet \end{bmatrix}$  (**Brother Utilities**).

• Windows 10



2. Select your machine.



3. Select the operation you want to use.



#### **Related Information**

- Introduction to Your Brother Machine
- Uninstall the Brother Software and Drivers (Windows)

▲ Home > Introduction to Your Brother Machine > Access Brother Utilities (Windows) > Uninstall the Brother Software and Drivers (Windows)

## Uninstall the Brother Software and Drivers (Windows)

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista and Windows 7 •

Click (Start) > All Programs > Brother > Brother Utilities.

Windows 8

Tap or click **Tap** (Brother Utilities) either on the Start screen or the desktop.

Windows 8.1 .

> Move your mouse to the lower left corner of the Start screen and click 🕖 (if using a touch-based device, swipe up from the bottom of the Start screen to bring up the Apps screen).

When the **Apps** screen appears, tap or click  $\begin{bmatrix} \bullet & \bullet \\ \bullet & \bullet \end{bmatrix}$  (Brother Utilities).

Windows 10



Click = > All apps > Brother > Brother Utilities.

2. Click the drop-down list, and then select your model name (if not already selected). Click Tools in the left navigation bar, and then click Uninstall.

Follow the instructions in the dialog box to uninstall the software and drivers.



Access Brother Utilities (Windows)

## Home > Paper Handling

## **Paper Handling**

- Load Paper
- Load Documents
▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper

## Load Paper

- Load Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2
- Load Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray (MP Tray)
- Load Paper in the Manual Feed Slot
- Unprintable Area
- Paper Settings
- Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media
- Error and Maintenance Messages
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Load Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2

# Load Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2

- Load A4, Letter, or Executive Size Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2
- Load A3, Ledger, or Legal Size Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2
- Load Photo Paper in Paper Tray #1
- Load Envelopes in Paper Tray #1

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Load Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2 > Load A4, Letter, or Executive Size Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2

# Load A4, Letter, or Executive Size Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2

- If the [Check Paper] setting is set to [On] and you pull the paper tray out of the machine, a message appears on the LCD asking if you want to change the paper type and paper size. Change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings if needed, following the LCD instructions.
- Load only one size and type of paper in the paper tray at a time.
- When you load a different paper size in the tray, you must change the Paper Size setting in the machine or the paper size setting on your computer.

Doing this enables the machine to automatically feed paper from the appropriate tray if Auto Tray Select has been set in the machine or printer driver. (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)

• You can use only plain paper in Tray #2. (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)

These instructions describe how to load paper in Tray #1. The steps for Tray #2 are very similar. (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)

1. If the paper support flap (1) is open, close it, and then close the paper support (2).



2. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine as shown by the arrow.



3. Remove the tray top cover (1).



Gently press and slide the paper width guides (1) and then the paper length guide (2) to fit the paper size.
Make sure the triangular mark (3) on the paper width guide (1) and paper length guide (2) line up with the marks for the paper you are using.





5. Fan the stack of paper well to avoid paper jams and misfeeds.



Ø

Always make sure the paper is not curled or wrinkled.

6. Gently load paper in the paper tray with the printing surface face down.

## Landscape orientation



## IMPORTANT

Ø

Be careful not to push the paper in too far; it may lift at the back of the tray and cause paper feed problems.

To add paper before the tray is empty, remove the paper from the tray and combine it with the paper you are adding. Always fan the stack of paper well to prevent the machine from feeding multiple pages.

7. Make sure the paper length guide (1) touches the edges of the paper.



Gently adjust the paper width guides (1) to fit the paper.
Make sure the paper guides touch the edges of the paper.



 Make sure the paper is flat in the tray and below the maximum paper mark (1). Overfilling the paper tray may cause paper jams.



10. Replace the tray top cover.



11. Slowly push the paper tray completely into the machine.



### IMPORTANT

DO NOT push the paper tray into the machine forcefully or quickly. Doing this may cause paper jams or paper feed problems.

12. Pull out the paper support until it locks into place.



13. Change the paper size setting in the machine's menu, if needed.

- Load Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2
- Change the Check Paper Size Setting

- Choose the Right Print Media
- Change the Paper Size and Paper Type

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Load Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2 > Load A3, Ledger, or Legal Size Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2

# Load A3, Ledger, or Legal Size Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2

- If the [Check Paper] setting is set to [On] and you pull the paper tray out of the machine, a message appears on the LCD asking if you want to change the paper type and paper size. Change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings if needed, following the LCD instructions.
- Load only one size and type of paper in the paper tray at a time.
- When you load a different paper size in the tray, you must change the Paper Size setting in the machine or the paper size setting on your computer.

Doing this enables the machine to automatically feed paper from the appropriate tray if Auto Tray Select has been set in the machine or printer driver. (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)

- Glossy photo paper will not be an option in Tray #1 when using this method.
- You can use only plain paper in Tray #2. (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)

These instructions describe how to load paper in Tray #1. The steps for Tray #2 are very similar. (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)

1. If the paper support flap (1) is open, close it, and then close the paper support (2).



2. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine as shown by the arrow.



3. Remove the tray top cover (1).



4. Rest the tray on a flat surface.

Push the green slider to the left and then extend the tray until it locks into place.



5. Gently press and slide the paper width guides (1) and then the paper length guide (2) to fit the paper size. Make sure the triangular mark (3) on the paper width guide (1) and paper length guide (2) line up with the marks for the paper you are using.



6. Fan the stack of paper well to avoid paper jams and misfeeds.



Ø

Always make sure the paper is not curled or wrinkled.

7. Gently load paper in the paper tray with the printing surface face down.

#### Portrait orientation



## IMPORTANT

Be careful not to push the paper in too far; it may lift at the back of the tray and cause paper feed problems.

To add paper before the tray is empty, remove the paper from the tray and combine it with the paper you are adding. Always fan the stack of paper well to prevent the machine from feeding multiple pages.

8. Make sure the paper length guide (1) touches the edges of the paper.



Gently adjust the paper width guides (1) to fit the paper.
Make sure the paper guides touch the edges of the paper.



10. Make sure the paper is flat in the tray and below the maximum paper mark (1). Overfilling the paper tray may cause paper jams.



11. Replace the tray top cover.



12. Slowly push the paper tray completely into the machine.



## IMPORTANT

DO NOT push the paper tray into the machine forcefully or quickly. Doing this may cause paper jams or paper feed problems.

13. Pull out the paper support (1) until it locks into place, and then unfold the paper support flap (2).



14. Change the paper size setting in the machine's menu, if needed.



Position the machine so the tray will not protrude past the edge of the table or desk where someone may bump into it. The machine could fall and cause injury.



Before you collapse the paper tray, take the paper out of the tray.

Rest the tray on a flat surface.

Ø

Push the green slider to the left and then push in the front of the tray to collapse it until it locks into place. Put the paper in the tray.



#### **Related Information**

• Load Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Load Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2 > Load Photo Paper in Paper Tray #1

# Load Photo Paper in Paper Tray #1

- If the [Check Paper] setting is set to [On] and you pull the paper tray out of the machine, a message appears on the LCD asking if you want to change the paper type and paper size. Change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings if needed, following the LCD instructions.
- Load only one size and type of paper in the paper tray at a time.
- When you load a different paper size in the tray, you must change the Paper Size setting in the machine or the paper size setting on your computer.

Doing this enables the machine to automatically feed paper from the appropriate tray if Auto Tray Select has been set in the machine or printer driver. (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)

1. If the paper support flap (1) is open, close it, and then close the paper support (2).



2. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine as shown by the arrow.



3. Remove the tray top cover (1).



- 4. Do one of the following:
  - If you load Photo L (9 x 13 cm) in the paper tray, lift up the Photo L stopper (1).
  - If you load Photo (10 x 15 cm) in the paper tray, lift up the Photo stopper (2).
  - If you load Photo 2L (13 x 18 cm) in the paper tray, lift up the Photo 2L stopper (3).

Gently press and slide the paper width guides (4) to fit the paper size.



5. Load up to 20 sheets of photo paper in the paper tray with the printing surface *face down*. Loading more than 20 sheets of photo paper may cause paper jams.



6. Gently adjust the paper width guides (1) to fit the paper.

Make sure the paper guides touch the edges of the paper and the paper is flat in the tray.



7. Replace the tray top cover.



8. Slowly push the paper tray completely into the machine.



## IMPORTANT

DO NOT push the paper tray into the machine forcefully or quickly. Doing this may cause paper jams or paper feed problems.

9. Pull out the paper support until it locks into place.



10. Change the paper size setting in the machine's menu, if needed.

- Load Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2
- Change the Check Paper Size Setting
- Choose the Right Print Media
- Change the Paper Size and Paper Type

# ▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Load Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2 > Load Envelopes in Paper Tray #1

# Load Envelopes in Paper Tray #1

- If the [Check Paper] setting is set to [On] and you pull the paper tray out of the machine, a message appears on the LCD asking if you want to change the paper type and paper size. Change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings if needed, following the LCD instructions.
- · Load only one size and type of paper in the paper tray at a time.
- When you load a different paper size in the tray, you must change the Paper Size setting in the machine or the paper size setting on your computer.

Doing this enables the machine to automatically feed paper from the appropriate tray if Auto Tray Select has been set in the machine or printer driver. (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)

• Before loading envelopes in the tray, press the corners and sides of the envelopes to make them as flat as possible.

See Related Information: About Envelopes.

1. If the paper support flap (1) is open, close it, and then close the paper support (2).



2. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine as shown by the arrow.



3. Remove the tray top cover (1).



4. Load up to 10 envelopes in the paper tray with the printing surface *face down*. Loading more than 10 envelopes may cause paper jams.

If the envelope flaps are on the long edge, load the envelopes with the flap on the left, as shown in the illustration. Gently press and slide the paper width guides (1) and paper length guide (2) to fit the size of the envelopes.

Make sure the envelopes are flat in the tray.



## IMPORTANT

If envelopes are "double-feeding," load one envelope in the paper tray at a time.

If you are using envelopes that are longer than the tray length, such as Com-10 envelopes, extend the tray as follows, and then load the envelopes.

Rest the tray on a flat surface. Push the green slider to the left and then extend the tray until it locks into place.



5. Replace the tray top cover.



6. Slowly push the paper tray completely into the machine.



## IMPORTANT

DO NOT push the paper tray into the machine forcefully or quickly. Doing this may cause paper jams or paper feed problems.

7. Pull out the paper support (1) until it locks into place, and then unfold the paper support flap (2).



8. Change the paper size setting in the machine's menu, if needed.

- Load Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2
- About Envelopes
- Change the Check Paper Size Setting
- Choose the Right Print Media
- Change the Paper Size and Paper Type

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Load Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray (MP Tray)

# Load Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray (MP Tray)

Related Models: MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

Use the MP Tray for special print media, such as photo paper or envelopes.

- If the [Check Paper] setting is set to [On] and you set the paper in MP tray, a message appears on the LCD asking if you want to change the paper type and paper size. Change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings if needed, following the LCD instructions.
- Load only one size and type of paper in the paper tray at a time.
- When you load a different paper size in the tray, you must change the Paper Size setting in the machine or the paper size setting on your computer.

Doing this enables the machine to automatically feed paper from the appropriate tray if Auto Tray Select has been set in the machine or printer driver.

1. Open the MP tray.



When you want to load paper larger than A4 or Letter size paper, pull up the paper tray using both hands until it locks into place.



2. Gently press and slide the MP tray paper guides to match the width of the paper you are using.



3. Fan the stack of paper well to avoid paper jams and misfeeds.



Ø

Always make sure the paper is not curled or wrinkled.

- 4. Gently load the paper in the MP tray with the printing surface face up.
  - Using A4, Letter, Executive, or B5 (JIS)<sup>1</sup>

#### Landscape orientation





 Using A3, Ledger, B4 (JIS)<sup>1</sup>, Legal, Folio, Mexico Legal, India Legal, A5, A6, envelopes, Photo, Photo L, Photo 2L, B6 (JIS)<sup>1</sup>, or Index Card

#### Portrait orientation

<sup>1</sup> Supported only in some countries.



When using envelopes, load the envelopes with the printing surface *face up* and the flap on the left as shown in the illustration.

See Related Information: About Envelopes.



Ø

If you are having difficulty loading paper in the MP tray, push the release lever (1) towards the back of the machine, and then load the paper.



5. Using both hands, gently adjust the MP tray paper guides to fit the paper.



- DO NOT press the paper guides too tightly against the paper. Doing this may cause the paper to fold and jam.
  - Place the paper in the centre of the MP tray between the paper guides. If the paper is not centred, pull it out and insert it again at the centre position.
- 6. Do one of the following:
  - When using A4 or Letter size, or smaller size paper

Pull out the paper support until it locks into place.



• When using paper larger than A4 or Letter size, or envelopes Pull out the paper support (1) until it locks into place, and then unfold the paper support flap (2).



7. Change the paper size setting in the machine's menu, if needed.

<sup>\*</sup> Make sure printing has finished before you close the MP tray.

- Load Paper
- About Envelopes
- Choose the Right Print Media
- Error and Maintenance Messages

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Load Paper in the Manual Feed Slot

## Load Paper in the Manual Feed Slot

Related Models: MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

Load special print media in this slot, one sheet at a time.

The machine automatically turns on Manual Feed mode when you put paper in the manual feed slot.

1. Open the manual feed slot cover.

Ø



2. Slide the manual feed slot paper guides to fit the width of the paper you are using.



3. Load only one sheet of paper in the manual feed slot with the printing surface face up.

Using both hands, push one sheet of paper into the manual feed slot until the front edge touches the paper feed rollers. Let go of the paper when you feel the machine pull it. The LCD displays [Manual Feed Slot ready].

Read the instruction displayed on the LCD, and then press [OK].

• Using A4, Letter, Executive, or B5 (JIS)<sup>1</sup>

#### Landscape orientation





 Using A3, Ledger, B4 (JIS)<sup>1</sup>, Legal, Folio, Mexico Legal, India Legal, A5, A6, envelopes, Photo, Photo L, Photo 2L, B6 (JIS)<sup>1</sup>, or Index Card

# Portrait orientation



• When using envelopes, load the envelopes with the printing surface *face up* and the flap on the left as shown in the illustration.

See Related Information: About Envelopes.



• When loading an envelope, or a sheet of thick paper, push the envelope into the manual feed slot until you feel the paper feed rollers grab it.

<sup>1</sup> Supported only in some countries.

## IMPORTANT

- DO NOT load more than one sheet of paper in the manual feed slot at any time. Doing this may cause a paper jam. When printing multiple pages, do not feed the next sheet of paper until the touchscreen displays a message instructing you to feed the next sheet.
- DO NOT load paper in the manual feed slot when you are printing from the paper tray. Doing this may cause a paper jam.
- 4. Do one of the following:
  - When using A4 or Letter size, or smaller size paper Pull out the paper support until it locks into place.



When using paper larger than A4 or Letter size, or envelopes
Pull out the paper support (1) until it locks into place, and then unfold the paper support flap (2).



- If the document does not fit on one sheet, the LCD will prompt you to load another sheet of paper. Place another sheet of paper in the manual feed slot, and then press [OK].
  - When you feed paper larger than A4 or Letter size into the manual feed slot, the machine holds the printed page after printing so it does not fall. Once printing is complete, pull out the printed page and press [OK].
  - Make sure printing has finished before you close the manual feed slot cover.
  - The machine will eject paper loaded in the manual feed slot while a test page, fax, or report is being printed.
  - The machine will eject paper loaded in the manual feed slot during the machine's cleaning process. Wait until the machine finishes its cleaning, and then load paper in the manual feed slot.

- Load Paper
- About Envelopes
- Choose the Right Print Media
- Error and Maintenance Messages

# **Unprintable Area**

The unprintable area depends on the settings in the application you are using. The figures below show the unprintable areas on cut-sheet paper and envelopes. The machine can print in the shaded areas of cut-sheet paper only when the Borderless print feature is available and turned on.

#### **Cut-Sheet Paper**



Envelopes



	Тор (1)	Left (2)	Bottom (3)	Right (4)
Cut-Sheet	3 mm	3 mm	3 mm	3 mm
Envelopes	12 mm	3 mm	12 mm	3 mm

The Borderless print feature is not available for envelopes and 2-sided printing.

#### **Related Information**

Load Paper

Ŵ

• Paper Handling and Printing Problems

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Paper Settings

## **Paper Settings**

- Change the Paper Size and Paper Type
- Change the Check Paper Size Setting
- Set a Default Tray Based on Your Task
- Change Paper Tray Priority
- Change the Paper Low Notice Setting
- Shrink Page Size of an Oversized Incoming Fax

Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Paper Settings > Change the Paper Size and Paper Type

## Change the Paper Size and Paper Type

Set the Paper Size and Paper Type settings for the paper tray.

- To get the best print quality, set the machine for the type of paper you are using.
- When you change the size of the paper you load in the tray, you must change the Paper Size setting on the LCD at the same time.
- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [Tray Setting].
- 2. Press [Paper Type].
- 3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the paper type options, and then press the option you want.
- 4. Press [Paper Size].
- 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the paper size options, and then press the option you want.
- 6. Press

The machine ejects paper with the printed surface face up onto the paper tray at the front of the machine. When you use glossy paper, remove each sheet at once to prevent smudging or paper jams.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [Tray Setting].
- 2. Press the tray option you want.
- 3. Press [Paper Type].
- 4. Press the paper type option you want.

Use plain paper only in Tray #2.

- 5. Press [Paper Size].
- 6. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the paper size options, and then press the option you want.
- 7. Press

Ø

The machine ejects paper with the printed surface face up onto the paper tray at the front of the machine. When you use glossy paper, remove each sheet at once to prevent smudging or paper jams.

- · Paper Settings
- Load A4, Letter, or Executive Size Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2
- Load Photo Paper in Paper Tray #1
- Load Envelopes in Paper Tray #1
- · Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media
- Error and Maintenance Messages
- · Paper Handling and Printing Problems

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Paper Settings > Change the Check Paper Size Setting

## Change the Check Paper Size Setting

If the Check Paper setting is set to [On] and you pull the paper tray out of the machine or load paper in the MP Tray, the LCD displays a message asking if you want to change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings.

The default setting is [On].

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup].
- 2. Press ▲ or V to display the [Check Paper] option, and then press it.
- 3. Press [On] or [Off].
- 4. Press

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Tray Setting] > [Check Paper].
- 2. Press [On] or [Off].
- 3. Press

- Paper Settings
- Load A4, Letter, or Executive Size Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2
- Load Photo Paper in Paper Tray #1
- Load Envelopes in Paper Tray #1
- Error and Maintenance Messages

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Paper Settings > Set a Default Tray Based on Your Task

# Set a Default Tray Based on Your Task

Related Models: MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

Change the default tray the machine uses for each mode.

[Auto Tray Select] sets your machine to feed paper from the most appropriate tray for the paper type and size you have set.

The machine feeds paper from the most appropriate tray using the tray priority order you have set.

Some trays are not available depending on your model.

- 1. Press 🎦 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Tray Setting].
  - For printing in Copy mode, press [Tray Setting: Copy] > [Tray Use].
  - For printing received faxes, press [Tray Setting: Fax] > [Tray Use].
  - For printing photos, press [Tray Setting: JPEG Print (Media)] > [Tray Use].
- 2. Press the tray option you want.
- 3. Press

Ø

### Related Information

• Paper Settings

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Paper Settings > Change Paper Tray Priority

# **Change Paper Tray Priority**

Related Models: MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

Change the default tray priority the machine uses for each mode.

When [Auto Tray Select] is selected in the tray select settings, the machine will feed paper from the most appropriate tray for the paper type and size according to the tray priority setting.

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Tray Setting].
- 2. Press the [Tray Setting: Copy], [Tray Setting: Fax], [Tray Setting: Print], or [Tray Setting: JPEG Print (Media)] option.
- 3. Press [Tray Priority].
- 4. Press the option you want.
- 5. Press



Paper Settings

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Paper Settings > Change the Paper Low Notice Setting

## **Change the Paper Low Notice Setting**

```
Related Models: MFC-J5930DW
```

If the Paper Low Notice setting is set to [On], the machine displays a message telling you that the paper tray is nearly empty.

The default setting is [On].

In addition, you can see the icon that displays the remaining amount of paper in the Tray Select option of the Copy mode.



- Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Tray Setting] > [Paper Low Notice].
- 2. Press [On] or [Off].
- 3. Press



Paper Settings

Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media

# Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media

The print quality can be affected by the type of paper you use in the machine.

To get the best print quality for the settings you have chosen, always set the Paper Type to match the type of paper you load.

You can use plain paper, inkjet paper (coated paper), glossy paper, recycled paper and envelopes.

We recommend testing various paper types before buying large quantities.

For best results, use Brother paper.

- When you print on inkjet paper (coated paper) and glossy paper, be sure to choose the proper print media in the **Basic** tab of the printer driver or in the Paper Type setting on the machine.
- When you print on Brother Photo paper, load one extra sheet of the same photo paper in the paper tray.
- When using photo paper, remove each sheet at once to prevent smudging or paper jams.
- Avoid touching the printed surface of the paper immediately after printing; the surface may not be completely dry and may stain your fingers.

- Load Paper
- Recommended Print Media
- Handle and Use Print Media
- About Envelopes
- · Choose the Right Print Media
- · Change the Paper Size and Paper Type
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media > Recommended Print Media

# **Recommended Print Media**

For the best print quality, we recommend using the Brother paper listed in the table.

If Brother paper is not available in your country, we recommend testing various paper types before purchasing large quantities.

## **Brother paper**

Paper Type	Item	
A3 Plain	BP60PA3	
A3 Glossy Photo	BP71GA3	
A3 Inkjet (Matte)	BP60MA3	
A4 Plain	BP60PA	
A4 Glossy Photo	BP71GA4	
A4 Inkjet (Matte)	BP60MA	
10 x 15 cm Glossy Photo	BP71GP	

#### Related Information

• Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media
# ▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media > Handle and Use Print Media

# Handle and Use Print Media

- Store paper in its original packaging and keep it sealed. Keep the paper flat and away from moisture, direct sunlight and heat.
- Avoid touching the shiny (coated) side of photo paper.

# IMPORTANT

DO NOT use the following kinds of paper:

· Damaged, curled, wrinkled, or irregularly shaped



- 1. 2 mm or greater curl may cause jams to occur.
- Extremely shiny or highly textured
- · Paper that cannot be arranged uniformly when stacked
- Paper made with a short grain

# Related Information

Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media > About Envelopes

# **About Envelopes**

- Use envelopes that weigh from 80 to 95 gsm.
- Some envelope sizes require that you set margins in the application. Make sure you do a test print first before
  printing many envelopes.

# IMPORTANT

DO NOT use envelopes that:

- Are loosely constructed
- Have windows
- Are embossed (have raised writing on them)
- · Have clasps or staples
- · Are pre-printed on the inside
- Are self-adhesive
- Have double flaps

### Self-adhesive Double flaps



You may experience paper feed problems caused by the thickness, size and flap shape of the envelopes you are using.

 Before loading envelopes in the tray, press the flaps, edges and corners to make them as flat as possible, as shown in the illustrations.



Fan the stack of envelopes well to avoid paper jams and misfeeds.



# IMPORTANT

If envelopes are "double-feeding," load one envelope in the paper tray at a time.

# Related Information

· Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media

- Load Envelopes in Paper Tray #1
- Load Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray (MP Tray)
- Load Paper in the Manual Feed Slot

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media > Choose the Right Print Media

- Paper Type and Size for Each Operation
- Paper Orientation and Capacity of the Paper Trays
- Use the User Defined Paper Size Option in the Printer Driver
- Paper Weight and Thickness
- Load A4, Letter, or Executive Size Paper in Paper Tray #1 / Paper Tray #2
- Load Photo Paper in Paper Tray #1
- Load Envelopes in Paper Tray #1
- Load Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray (MP Tray)
- Load Paper in the Manual Feed Slot

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media > Choose the Right Print Media > Paper Type and Size for Each Operation

# Paper Type and Size for Each Operation

Paper Type	Paper Size		Usage	Usage			
			Fax	Сору	Direct Print		Printer
					JPEG Print	PDF Print <sup>2</sup>	
Cut-Sheet	A3	297 x 420 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	A4	210 x 297 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Ledger	279.4 x 431.8 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Letter	215.9 x 279.4 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Legal	215.9 x 355.6 mm	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes
	Mexico Legal	215.9 x 339.85 mm	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes
	India Legal	215 x 345 mm	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes
	Folio	215.9 x 330.2 mm	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes
	Executive	184.1 x 266.7 mm	-	-	-	-	Yes
	B4 (JIS) <sup>1</sup>	257 x 364 mm	Yes	-	-	Yes	Yes
	B5 (JIS) <sup>1</sup>	182 x 257 mm	-	-	-	Yes	Yes
	B6 (JIS) <sup>1</sup>	128 x 182 mm	-	-	-	-	Yes
	A5	148 x 210 mm	-	Yes	-	Yes	Yes
	A6	105 x 148 mm	-	Yes	-	Yes	Yes
Cards	Photo	10 x 15 cm	-	Yes	Yes	-	Yes
	Photo L	9 x 13 cm	-	-	-	-	Yes
	Photo 2L	13 x 18 cm	-	-	Yes	-	Yes
	Index Card	13 x 20 cm	-	-	-	-	Yes
Envelopes	C5 Envelope	162 x 229 mm	-	-	-	-	Yes
	DL Envelope	110 x 220 mm	-	-	-	-	Yes
	Com-10	104.7 x 241.3 mm	-	-	-	-	Yes
	Monarch	98.4 x 190.5 mm	-	-	-	-	Yes

<sup>1</sup> Supported only in some countries.

<sup>2</sup> PDF Print is available only for MFC-J5930DW.

# **Related Information**

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media > Choose the Right Print Media > Paper Orientation and Capacity of the Paper Trays

# Paper Orientation and Capacity of the Paper Trays

	Paper Size <sup>1</sup>	Paper Types	No. of sheets
Paper Tray #1	<ul> <li><landscape></landscape></li> <li>A4, Letter, Executive, B5</li> <li>(JIS)</li> <li><portrait></portrait></li> <li>A3, Ledger, B4 (JIS), Legal, Mexico Legal, India Legal, Folio, A5, B6 (JIS), A6, Envelopes (C5, Com-10, DL, Monarch), Photo (10 x 15 cm), Photo L (9 x 13 cm), Photo 2L (13 x 18 cm), Index card (13 x 20 cm)</li> </ul>	Plain Paper, Recycled Paper	250 <sup>2</sup>
		Inkjet Paper	20
		Glossy Paper, Photo	20 (Up to A4/Letter)
		Index Card	30
		Envelopes	10
Paper Tray #2 (MFC-J2730DW/ MFC-J5730DW/ MFC-J5930DW)	<landscape> A4, Letter <portrait> A3, Ledger, B4 (JIS), Legal, Mexico Legal, India Legal, Folio</portrait></landscape>	Plain Paper, Recycled Paper	250 <sup>2</sup>
Multi-purpose tray (MP tray)	tray) <landscape> A4, Letter, Executive, B5 (JIS) <portrait> A3, Ledger, B4 (JIS), Legal, Mexico Legal, India Legal, Folio, A5, B6 (JIS), A6, Envelopes (C5, Com-10, DL, Monarch), Photo (10 x 15 cm), Photo L (9 x 13 cm), Photo 2L (13 x 18 cm), Index card (13 x 20 cm)</portrait></landscape>	Plain Paper, Recycled Paper	100 <sup>2</sup>
(MFC-J2730DW/		Inkjet Paper	20 (Up to A4/Letter)
MFC-J5730DW/ MFC-J5930DW)			5 (Over A4/Letter)
		Glossy Paper, Photo	20 (Up to A4/Letter) 5 (Over A4/Letter)
		Index Card	50
		Envelopes	20 (Up to A4/Letter) 5 (Over A4/Letter)
Manual Feed Slot (MFC-J2330DW/ MFC-J5330DW)	<landscape> A4, Letter, Executive, B5 (JIS) <portrait> A3, Ledger, B4 (JIS), Legal, Mexico Legal, India Legal, Folio, A5, B6 (JIS), A6, Envelopes (C5, Com-10, DL, Monarch), Photo (10 x 15 cm), Photo L (9 x 13 cm), Photo 2L (13 x 18 cm), Index card (13 x 20 cm)</portrait></landscape>	Plain Paper, Inkjet Paper, Glossy Paper, Recycled Paper, Photo and Envelopes	1

<sup>1</sup> B6 (JIS), B5 (JIS) and B4 (JIS) size paper are supported only in some countries.

<sup>2</sup> When using plain paper 80 gsm

<sup>3</sup> We recommend using MP tray for glossy paper.

# **Related Information**

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media > Choose the Right Print Media > Use the User Defined Paper Size Option in the Printer Driver

# Use the User Defined Paper Size Option in the Printer Driver

User Defined Size	Paper Orientation	
<ul> <li>Width: 88.9 mm - 297.0 mm</li> <li>Height: 127.0 mm - 431.8 mm</li> </ul>	Portrait	
<ul> <li>(MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)</li> <li>Tray #1 and Tray #2 cannot be used for user defined paper sizes.</li> </ul>		

# Related Information

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Paper > Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media > Choose the Right Print Media > Paper Weight and Thickness

# Paper Weight and Thickness

Paper Type		Weight	Thickness
Cut-Sheet	Plain Paper, Recycled Paper	64 to 120 gsm	0.08 to 0.15 mm
	Inkjet Paper	64 to 200 gsm	0.08 to 0.25 mm
	Glossy Paper <sup>1 2</sup>	Up to 220 gsm	Up to 0.25 mm
Cards	Photo Card <sup>1 2 3</sup>	Up to 200 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Up to 0.25 mm
	Index Card	Up to 120 gsm	Up to 0.15 mm
Envelopes		80 to 95 gsm	Up to 0.52 mm

<sup>1</sup> BP71 260 gsm paper is specially designed for Brother inkjet machines.

<sup>2</sup> Up to 0.3 mm for MP Tray (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)

<sup>3</sup> Up to 220 gsm for MP Tray (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)

- Choose the Right Print Media
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Documents

# **Load Documents**

- Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
- Load Documents on the Scanner Glass
- Unscannable Area

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Documents > Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)

# Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)

The ADF can hold multiple pages and feeds each sheet individually.

Use paper that is within the sizes and weights shown in the table. Always fan the pages before placing them in the ADF.

# **Document Sizes and Weights**

Length <sup>1</sup> :	148 to 355.6 mm
Width:	105 to 215.9 mm
Paper Weight:	64 to 90 gsm

<sup>1</sup> Up to 900 mm when using the long paper function.

# **IMPORTANT**

- DO NOT pull on the document while it is feeding.
- DO NOT use paper that is curled, wrinkled, folded, ripped, stapled, paper clipped, pasted or taped.
- DO NOT use cardboard, newspaper or fabric.
- Make sure documents with correction fluid or written in ink are completely dry.

# (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)

Your 2-sided documents can be copied up to A4 size, and can be faxed or scanned up to Legal size using the ADF.

- 1. Fan the pages well.
- 2. Adjust the paper guides (1) to fit the document size.



3. Place your document *face up* in the ADF, as shown in the illustration, until you feel the document touch the feed rollers and the machine beeps.





If you loaded a small size document and cannot remove it, lift the ADF document support (1), and then remove the document.



# IMPORTANT

DO NOT leave any documents on the scanner glass. If you do this, the ADF may jam.

- Load Documents
- Copy a Document
- Error and Maintenance Messages
- Telephone and Fax problems
- Other Problems

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Documents > Load Documents on the Scanner Glass

# Load Documents on the Scanner Glass

Use the scanner glass to fax, copy, or scan one page at a time.

# **Document Sizes Supported**

Length:	Up to 297 mm
Width:	Up to 215.9 mm
Weight:	Up to 2 kg

To use the scanner glass, the ADF must be empty.

1. Lift the document cover.

Ø

2. Place the document face down in the upper left corner of the scanner glass as shown in the illustration.



3. Close the document cover.

# **IMPORTANT**

If you are scanning a book or thick document, DO NOT slam or press on the document cover.

- Load Documents
- · Copy a Document
- Telephone and Fax problems
- Other Problems

▲ Home > Paper Handling > Load Documents > Unscannable Area

# **Unscannable Area**

The unscannable area of a page depends on the settings in the application you are using. The figures below show the typical unscannable measurements.



Usage	Document Size	Top (1) Bottom (3)	Left (2) Right (4)
Fax	A4	3 mm	3 mm <sup>1</sup>
	Letter		4 mm
	Legal		
Сору	All paper sizes		3 mm
Scan		1 mm	1 mm

1 The unscannable area is 1 mm when using the ADF.



Load Documents

# Home > Print

# Print

- Print from Your Computer (Windows)
- Print from Your Computer (Mac)
- Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive

Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Windows)

# Print from Your Computer (Windows)

- Print a Photo (Windows)
- Print a Document (Windows)
- Cancel a Print Job (Windows)
- Print More Than One Page on a Single Sheet of Paper (N in 1) (Windows)
- Print as a Poster (Windows)
- Print on Both Sides of the Paper Automatically (Automatic 2-sided Printing) (Windows)
- Print as a Booklet Automatically (Windows)
- Print a Colour Document in Greyscale (Windows)
- Prevent Smudged Printouts and Paper Jams (Windows)
- Use a Preset Print Profile (Windows)
- Change the Default Print Settings (Windows)
- Print Settings (Windows)

Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Windows) > Print a Photo (Windows)

# Print a Photo (Windows)



- 1. Select the print command in your application.
- Select Brother MFC-XXXX Printer (where XXXX is the name of your model), and then click the printing properties or preferences button.

The printer driver window appears.

3. Make sure you have loaded the correct media in the paper tray.

# IMPORTANT

- For best results, use Brother paper.
- When you print on Brother photo paper, load one extra sheet of the same photo paper in the paper tray.
- 4. Click the Basic tab.
- 5. Click the **Media Type** drop-down list, and then select the type of paper you are using.

# **IMPORTANT**

To get the best print quality for the settings you have selected, always set the **Media Type** option to match the type of paper you load.

- 6. Click the Paper Size drop-down list, and then select your paper size.
- 7. Select the Borderless check box, if needed.
- 8. For Colour Mode, select the Natural or Vivid option.
- 9. In the Orientation field, select the Portrait or Landscape option to set the orientation of your printout.

If your application contains a similar setting, we recommend that you set the orientation using the application.

- 10. Type the number of copies (1-999) you want in the Copies field.
- 11. Change other printer settings, if needed.
- 12. Click OK.
- 13. Complete your print operation.



- Print from Your Computer (Windows)
- Print Settings (Windows)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Windows) > Print a Document (Windows)

# Print a Document (Windows)

- 1. Select the print command in your application.
- Select Brother MFC-XXXX Printer (where XXXX is the name of your model), and then click the printing properties or preferences button.

The printer driver window appears.

- 3. Make sure you have loaded the correct size paper in the paper tray.
- 4. Click the Basic tab.
- 5. Click the Media Type drop-down list, and then select the type of paper you are using.

# IMPORTANT

To get the best print quality for the settings you have selected, always set the **Media Type** option to match the type of paper you load.

- 6. Click the Paper Size drop-down list, and then select your paper size.
- 7. For Colour Mode, select the Natural or Vivid option.
- 8. In the Orientation field, select the Portrait or Landscape option to set the orientation of your printout.

If your application contains a similar setting, we recommend that you set the orientation using the application.

- 9. Type the number of copies (1-999) you want in the Copies field.
- 10. To print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper or print one page of your document on multiple sheets, click the **Multiple Page** drop-down list, and then select your options.
- 11. Change other printer settings, if needed.
- 12. Click OK.
- 13. Complete your print operation.

- Print from Your Computer (Windows)
- · Check the Ink Volume
- Print Settings (Windows)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Windows) > Cancel a Print Job (Windows)

# Cancel a Print Job (Windows)

If a print job was sent to the print queue and did not print, or was sent to the print queue in error, you may have to delete it to allow subsequent jobs to print.

- 1. Double-click the printer icon in the task tray.
- 2. Select the print job you want to cancel.
- 3. Click the **Document** menu.
- 4. Select Cancel.
- 5. Click Yes.

- Print from Your Computer (Windows)
- Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Windows)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Windows) > Print More Than One Page on a Single Sheet of Paper (N in 1) (Windows)

# Print More Than One Page on a Single Sheet of Paper (N in 1) (Windows)



- 1. Select the print command in your application.
- Select Brother MFC-XXXX Printer (where XXXX is the name of your model), and then click the printing properties or preferences button.

The printer driver window appears.

3. Click the **Basic** tab.

Ø

4. In the Orientation field, select the Portrait or Landscape option to set the orientation of your printout.

<sup>f</sup> If your application contains a similar setting, we recommend that you set the orientation using the application.

- 5. Click the Multiple Page drop-down list, and then select the 2 in 1, 4 in 1, 9 in 1, or 16 in 1 option.
- 6. Click the Page Order drop-down list, and then select your page order.
- 7. Click the Border Line drop-down list, and then select your border line type.
- 8. Change other printer settings, if needed.
- 9. Click **OK**, and then complete your print operation.

- Print from Your Computer (Windows)
- Print Settings (Windows)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Windows) > Print as a Poster (Windows)

# Print as a Poster (Windows)

Enlarge your print size and print the document in poster mode.



- 1. Select the print command in your application.
- 2. Select **Brother MFC-XXXX Printer** (where XXXX is the name of your model), and then click the printing properties or preferences button.

The printer driver window appears.

- 3. Click the **Basic** tab.
- 4. Click the Multiple Page drop-down list, and then select the 1 in 2x2 Pages or 1 in 3x3 Pages option.
- 5. Change other printer settings, if needed.
- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Complete your print operation.

- Print from Your Computer (Windows)
- Print Settings (Windows)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Windows) > Print on Both Sides of the Paper Automatically (Automatic 2-sided Printing) (Windows)

# Print on Both Sides of the Paper Automatically (Automatic 2-sided Printing) (Windows)



- Make sure the jam clear cover is closed.
- If paper is curled, straighten it and put it back in the paper tray.
- Use regular paper or thin paper. DO NOT use bond paper.
- If the paper is thin, it may wrinkle.
- 1. Select the print command in your application.
- 2. Select **Brother MFC-XXXX Printer** (where XXXX is the name of your model), and then click the printing properties or preferences button.

The printer driver window appears.

- 3. Click the **Basic** tab.
- 4. In the Orientation field, select the Portrait or Landscape option to set the orientation of your printout.

If your application contains a similar setting, we recommend that you set the orientation using the application.

- 5. Click the 2-sided / Booklet drop-down list, and then select 2-sided.
- 6. Click the 2-sided Settings button.
- 7. Select one of the options from the **2-sided Type** menu.

When 2-sided is selected, four types of 2-sided binding are available for each orientation:



# Option for Portrait Description Short Edge (Top) Image: Compare the second sec

Option for Landscape	Description
Long Edge (Top)	
Long Edge (Bottom)	
Short Edge (Right)	3 2
Short Edge (Left)	2 3

- 8. Select the **Binding Offset** check box if you want to specify the offset for binding in inches or millimetres.
- 9. Click  ${\bf OK}$  to return to the printer driver window.
- 10. Change other printer settings, if needed.

Ø

The Borderless feature is not available when using this option.

11. Click **OK** again, and then complete your print operation.

- Print from Your Computer (Windows)
- Print Settings (Windows)
- Print as a Booklet Automatically (Windows)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Windows) > Print as a Booklet Automatically (Windows)

# Print as a Booklet Automatically (Windows)

Use this option to print a document in booklet format using 2-sided printing. The document's pages will be arranged according to the correct page number and will allow you to fold at the centre of the print output without having to change the order of the printed pages.



- Make sure the jam clear cover is closed.
- If paper is curled, straighten it and put it back in the paper tray.
- Use regular paper or thin paper. DO NOT use bond paper.
- If the paper is thin, it may wrinkle.
- 1. Select the print command in your application.
- Select Brother MFC-XXXX Printer (where XXXX is the name of your model), and then click the printing properties or preferences button.

The printer driver window appears.

3. Click the **Basic** tab.

Ø

4. In the **Orientation** field, select the **Portrait** or **Landscape** option to set the orientation of your printout.

If your application contains a similar setting, we recommend that you set the orientation using the application.

- 5. Click the 2-sided / Booklet drop-down list, and then select the Booklet option.
- 6. Click the 2-sided Settings button.
- 7. Select the one of the options from the 2-sided Type menu.

There are two types of 2-sided binding directions available for each orientation:



Option for Landscape	Description
Top Binding	
Bottom Binding	

8. Select one of the options from the **Booklet Printing Method** menu.

Option	Description
All Pages at Once	Every page will be printed in booklet format (four pages to every piece of paper, two pages per side). Fold your printout in the middle to create the booklet.
Divide into Sets	This option prints the whole booklet in smaller individual booklet sets, allowing you to fold at the centre of the smaller individual booklet sets without having to change the order of the printed pages. You can specify the number of sheets in each smaller booklet set (from 1-15). This option can be helpful when folding a printed booklet that has a large number of pages.

- 9. Select the **Binding Offset** check box if you want to specify the offset for binding in inches or millimetres.
- 10. Click **OK** to return to the printer driver window.
- 11. Change other printer settings, if needed.

The Borderless feature is not available when using this option.

### 12. Click **OK**.

Ø

13. Complete your print operation.

- Print from Your Computer (Windows)
- Print Settings (Windows)
- Print on Both Sides of the Paper Automatically (Automatic 2-sided Printing) (Windows)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Windows) > Print a Colour Document in Greyscale (Windows)

# Print a Colour Document in Greyscale (Windows)

Greyscale mode makes the print processing speed faster than colour mode. If your document contains colour, selecting Greyscale mode prints your document in 256 levels of greyscale.



- 1. Select the print command in your application.
- 2. Select **Brother MFC-XXXX Printer** (where XXXX is the name of your model), and then click the printing properties or preferences button.

The printer driver window appears.

- 3. Click the **Advanced** tab.
- 4. For Colour / Greyscale, select Greyscale.
- 5. Change other printer settings, if needed.
- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Complete your print operation.

# Related Information

• Print from Your Computer (Windows)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Windows) > Prevent Smudged Printouts and Paper Jams (Windows)

# Prevent Smudged Printouts and Paper Jams (Windows)

Some types of print media may need more drying time. Change the **Reduce Smudge** option if you have problems with smudged printouts or paper jams.

- 1. Select the print command in your application.
- 2. Select **Brother MFC-XXXX Printer** (where XXXX is the name of your model), and then click the printing properties or preferences button.

The printer driver window appears.

- 3. Click the Advanced tab.
- 4. Click the **Other Print Options** button.
- 5. Select the **Reduce Smudge** option on the left side of the screen.
- 6. Select one of the following options:

Media Type	Option	Option	
Plain Paper	2-sided Printing or Simplex Printing	Off	Select this mode to print at normal speed, using a normal amount of ink.
		Low	Select this mode to print at a slower speed, using a normal amount of ink.
		High	Select this mode to print at the same speed as <b>Low</b> , but using less ink.
Glossy Paper	Off		Select this mode to print at normal speed, using a normal amount of ink.
	On		Select this mode to print at a slower speed, using less ink.

- 7. Click **OK** to return to the printer driver window.
- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Complete your print operation.

- Print from Your Computer (Windows)
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems
- Change the Print Setting Options When Having Printing Problems

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Windows) > Use a Preset Print Profile (Windows)

# **Use a Preset Print Profile (Windows)**

Print Profiles are presets designed to give you quick access to frequently-used printing configurations.

- 1. Select the print command in your application.
- Select Brother MFC-XXXX Printer (where XXXX is the name of your model), and then click the printing properties or preferences button.

The printer driver window appears.

3. Click the Print Profiles tab.

and Printing Preferences	? <mark>-×-</mark>
brother XXX-XXXX	SolutionsCenter
Image: Constraint of the constra	Basic       Advanced       Print Profiles       Maintenance         Image: Print Profiles are editable presets designed to give you quick access to the best settings for your print job.       Image: Print Profile         Image: Print       Image: Print       Image: Print         Image: Print       Image: Print       Image: Print       Image: Print         Image: Print       Image: Print       Image: Print       Image: Print         Im
<u>Print Preview</u> Add Profile(J)      Launch Status Monitor(V)      Support	Click "OK" to confirm your selection.  Delete Profile  Always show Print Profiles tab first.
Suppor	OK Cancel <u>H</u> elp

4. Select your profile from the print profile list.

The profile settings are shown on the left side of the printer driver window.

- 5. Do one of the following:
  - If the settings are correct for your print job, click **OK**.
  - To change the settings, go back to the **Basic** or **Advanced** tab, change settings, and then click **OK**.

To display the **Print Profiles** tab at the front of the window the next time you print, select the **Always show Print Profiles tab first.** check box.

- Print from Your Computer (Windows)
- Create or Delete Your Print Profile (Windows)
- Print Settings (Windows)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Windows) > Use a Preset Print Profile (Windows) > Create or Delete Your Print Profile (Windows)

# **Create or Delete Your Print Profile (Windows)**

Add up to 20 new print profiles with customised settings.

- 1. Select the print command in your application.
- 2. Select **Brother MFC-XXXX Printer** (where XXXX is the name of your model), and then click the printing properties or preferences button.

The printer driver window appears.

- 3. Click the **Basic** tab and the **Advanced** tab, and configure the print settings you want for the new Print Profile.
- 4. Click the **Print Profiles** tab.
- 5. Do one of the following:

# To create a new print profile:

a. Click Add Profile.

The Add Profile dialog box appears.

- b. Type the new profile name in the Name field.
- c. Click the icon you want to use to represent this profile from the icon list.
- d. Click OK.

The new Print Profile name is added to the list in the **Print Profiles** tab.

# To delete a print profile that you created:

a. Click Delete Profile.

The Delete Profile dialog box appears.

- b. Select the profile you want to delete.
- c. Click Delete.
- d. Click Yes.
- e. Click Close.

# Related Information

Use a Preset Print Profile (Windows)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Windows) > Change the Default Print Settings (Windows)

# Change the Default Print Settings (Windows)

When you change an application's print settings, the changes only apply to documents printed with that application. To change print settings for all Windows applications, you must configure the printer driver properties.

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - For Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008

Click (Start) > Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers.

• For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2

# Click (Start) > Devices and Printers.

• For Windows 8

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.

For Windows 10

Click **All apps > Windows System > Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.

• For Windows Server 2012

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware** group, click **View devices and printers**.

For Windows Server 2012 R2

Click Control Panel on the Start screen. In the Hardware group, click View devices and printers.

- 2. Right-click the **Brother MFC-XXXX Printer** icon (where XXXX is your model name), and then select **Printer properties**. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver.
- 3. Click the **General** tab, and then click the **Printing Preferences...** or **Preferences...** button.

The printer driver dialog box appears.

- 4. Select the print settings you want to use as defaults for all of your Windows programs.
- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Close the printer properties dialog box.

- Print from Your Computer (Windows)
- Print Settings (Windows)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Windows) > Print Settings (Windows)

# **Print Settings (Windows)**

### Basic Tab

🥪 Printing Preferences				? <mark>×</mark>
brother XXX-XXXX				SolutionsCenter
	Basic Advanced	Print Profiles	Maintenance	
	Media Type		Plain Paper	•
		(i)	Slow Drying P	aper
	Print <u>Q</u> uality		Normal	
	Paper Si <u>z</u> e		A4 (210 x 297 mm) 🔻	
		<b>i</b>	Borderless	
Plain Paper Print Quality : Normal	Colour Mode	<b>i</b>	Natural	○ Vivid
A4 210 x 297 mm			- Con	
Borderless : Off Colour Mode : Natural			1000	
Copies : 1	Orientation		Portrait	Landscape
Multiple Page : Normal 2-sided / Booklet : None	Copies		1	
Colour			Collate	
Scaling : Off Mirror Print : Off Reverse Print : Off Watermark : Off		2	✓ <u>R</u> everse Orde	r
	Multiple Page		Normal	▼
	Page <u>O</u> rder		Right, then Dow	n v
	<u>B</u> order Line		None	<b>*</b>
	2-sided / Booklet		None	▼
Print Preview				2-sided Settings(X)
Add Profile(J)	Pap <u>e</u> r Source		Auto Select	•
Launch Status Monitor(V)				Default
Support		ОК	Cance	el <u>H</u> elp

# 1. Media Type

Select the type of media you want to use. To achieve the best print results, the machine automatically adjusts its print settings according to the selected media type.

### **Slow Drying Paper**

Select this option if you use a type of plain paper on which ink dries slowly. This option may cause slight blurring of the text.

# 2. Print Quality

Select the print resolution you want. Because print quality and speed are related, the higher the quality, the longer it will take to print the document.

### 3. Paper Size

Select the size of the paper you want to use. You can either choose from standard paper sizes or create a custom paper size.

### Borderless

Select this option to print photos without borders. Because the image data is created slightly larger than the paper size you are using, this will cause some cropping of the photo edges.

You may not be able to select the Borderless option for some combinations of media type and quality, or from some applications.

# 4. Colour Mode

Select the colour mode to suit your preference.

# 5. Orientation

Select the orientation (portrait or landscape) of your printout.

If your application contains a similar setting, we recommend that you set the orientation using the application.

# 6. Copies

Type the number of copies (1-999) that you want to print in this field.

### Collate

Select this option to print sets of multi-page documents in the original page order. When this option is selected, one complete copy of your document will print, and then reprint according to the number of copies you choose. If this option is not selected, then each page will print according to the number of copies chosen before the next page of the document is printed.

# **Reverse Order**

Select this option to print your document in reverse order. The last page of your document will be printed first.

# 7. Multiple Page

Select this option to print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper or print one page of your document on multiple sheets.

# Page Order

Select the page order when printing multiple pages on a single sheet of paper.

### **Border Line**

Select the type of border to use when printing multiple pages on a single sheet of paper.

# 8. 2-sided / Booklet

Select this option to print on both sides of the paper or print a document in booklet format using 2-sided printing.

### 2-sided Settings button

Click this button to select the type of 2-sided binding. Four types of 2-sided bindings are available for each orientation.

### 9. Paper Source (available only for certain models)

Select the paper source setting according to your print conditions or purpose.

### Advanced Tab

🤝 Printing Preferences		? 💌			
brother XXX-XXXX		SolutionsCenter			
Plain Paper Print Quality : Normal Letter 215.9 x 279.4 mm	Basic Advanced Print Profiles Main	itenance			
		<u>Colour</u> <u>G</u> reyscale			
	Colour <u>E</u> nhancement	Settings			
	Scaling	Ott			
	0	◎ Fit to Paper Size			
		A4 (210 x 297 mm)			
Borderless : Off		© Free [ 25 - 400 % ]			
Colour Mode : Natural Copies : 1		100			
Multiple Page : Normal 2-sided / Booklet : None	Mirror Print				
Colour Scaling : Off Mirror Print : Off Reverse Print : Off Watermark : Off	Use <u>W</u> atermark	Settings			
	Header-Footer Print	Settings(B)			
	User Authentication	Settings			
	Other Print Options(Y)				
Print Preview					
Add Profile(J)					
Launch Status Monitor(V)		Default			
Support	ОК	Cancel <u>H</u> elp			

### 1. Colour / Greyscale

Select colour or greyscale printing. The print speed is faster in greyscale mode than it is in colour mode. If your document contains colour and you select greyscale mode, your document will be printed using 256 levels of greyscale.

### 2. Colour Enhancement

Select this option to use the Colour Enhancement feature. This feature analyses your image to improve its sharpness, white balance and colour density. This process may take several minutes depending on the image size and your computer's specifications.

### 3. Ink Save Mode

Select this option to print using lighter colours and emphasise image outlines. The amount of ink that is saved varies, depending on the type of documents printed. Ink Save Mode may make your printouts look different than they appear on your screen.

The Ink Save Mode feature is supported by technology from Reallusion, Inc.

Signal Reallusion

### 4. Scaling

Select these options to enlarge or reduce the size of the pages in your document.

### Fit to Paper Size

Select this option to enlarge or reduce the document pages to fit a specified paper size. When you select this option, select the paper size you want from the drop-down list.

# Free

Select this option to enlarge or reduce the document pages manually. When you select this option, type a value into the field.

### 5. Mirror Print

Select this option to reverse the printed image on the page horizontally from left to right.

### 6. Reverse Print

Select this option to rotate the printed image 180 degrees.

### 7. Use Watermark

Select this option to print a logo or text on your document as a watermark. Select one of the preset watermarks, add a new watermark, or use an image file you have created.

### 8. Header-Footer Print

Select this option to print the date, time and PC login user name on the document.

### 9. User Authentication

This feature allows you to confirm the restrictions for each user.

### **10. Other Print Options button**

### **Change Data Transfer Mode**

Select the print data transfer mode to improve print quality or print speed.

### **Advanced Colour Settings**

Select the method that the machine uses to arrange dots to express halftones.

The printout colour can be adjusted to achieve the closest match to what appears on your computer screen.

### **Reduce Smudge**

Some types of print media may need more drying time. Change this option if you have problems with smudged printouts or paper jams.

### **Retrieve Printer's Colour Data**

Select this option to optimise the print quality using the machine's factory settings, which are set specifically for your Brother machine. Use this option when you have replaced the machine or changed the machine's network address.

### **Print Archive**

Select this option to save the print data as a PDF file to your computer.

### **Reduce Uneven Lines**

Select this option to adjust the print alignment if your printed text becomes blurred or images become faded.

- Print from Your Computer (Windows)
- · Error and Maintenance Messages
- · Paper Handling and Printing Problems
- Print a Photo (Windows)
- Print a Document (Windows)
- Print More Than One Page on a Single Sheet of Paper (N in 1) (Windows)
- Print as a Poster (Windows)
- Print on Both Sides of the Paper Automatically (Automatic 2-sided Printing) (Windows)
- · Print as a Booklet Automatically (Windows)

- Use a Preset Print Profile (Windows)
- Change the Default Print Settings (Windows)
- Change the Print Setting Options When Having Printing Problems
▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Mac)

# **Print from Your Computer (Mac)**

- Print a Photo (Mac)
- Print a Document (Mac)
- Print on Both Sides of the Paper Automatically (Automatic 2-sided Printing) (Mac)
- Print More Than One Page on a Single Sheet of Paper (N in 1) (Mac)
- Print a Colour Document in Greyscale (Mac)
- Prevent Smudged Printouts and Paper Jams (Mac)
- Print Options (Mac)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Mac) > Print a Photo (Mac)

# Print a Photo (Mac)



1. Make sure you have loaded the correct media in the paper tray.

### **IMPORTANT**

- For best results, use Brother paper.
- When you print on Brother photo paper, load one extra sheet of the same photo paper in the paper tray.
- 2. From an application, such as Apple Preview, click the File menu, and then select Print.
- 3. Select Brother MFC-XXXX (where XXXX is your model name).

For more page setup options, click the **Show Details** button.

4. Click the Paper Size pop-up menu, and then select your paper size.

To print photographs without margins, select a borderless paper size option.

- 5. Click the Orientation button that matches the way you want the photo to print.
- Click the application pop-up menu, and then select **Print Settings**.
   The **Print Settings** options appear.
- 7. Click the Media Type pop-up menu, and then select the media type you want to use.

### IMPORTANT

To get the best print quality for the settings you have selected, always set the **Media Type** option to match the type of paper you load.

- 8. Change other printer settings, if needed.
- 9. Click Print.

(a)

Ø

- Print from Your Computer (Mac)
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems
- Print Options (Mac)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Mac) > Print a Document (Mac)

# Print a Document (Mac)

- 1. Make sure you have loaded the correct size paper in the paper tray.
- 2. From an application, such as Apple TextEdit, click the File menu, and then select Print.
- 3. Select Brother MFC-XXXX (where XXXX is your model name).

For more page setup options, click the **Show Details** button.

- 4. Click the **Paper Size** pop-up menu, and then select your paper size.
- 5. Select the Orientation option that matches the way you want the document to print.
- Click the application pop-up menu, and then select **Print Settings**.
   The **Print Settings** options appear.
- 7. Click the Media Type pop-up menu, and then select the media type you want to use.

### **IMPORTANT**

To get the best print quality for the settings you have selected, always set the **Media Type** option to match the type of paper you load.

- 8. Change other printer settings, if needed.
- 9. Click Print.

Ø

- Print from Your Computer (Mac)
- Check the Ink Volume
- Print Options (Mac)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Mac) > Print on Both Sides of the Paper Automatically (Automatic 2-sided Printing) (Mac)

# Print on Both Sides of the Paper Automatically (Automatic 2-sided Printing) (Mac)



- 1. From an application, such as Apple TextEdit, click the File menu, and then select Print.
- 2. Select Brother MFC-XXXX (where XXXX is your model name).

For more page setup options, click the **Show Details** button.

- 3. Select the Orientation option that matches the way you want the document to print.
- Click the application pop-up menu, and then select Layout.
   The Layout setting options appear.
- 5. In the Two-Sided section, select the Short-Edge binding or Long-Edge binding option.
- 6. Change other printer settings, if needed.

The Borderless feature is not available when using this option.

7. Click Print.

Ø

Ø



- Print from Your Computer (Mac)
- Print Options (Mac)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Mac) > Print More Than One Page on a Single Sheet of Paper (N in 1) (Mac)

# Print More Than One Page on a Single Sheet of Paper (N in 1) (Mac)



- 1. From an application, such as Apple TextEdit, click the File menu, and then select Print.
- 2. Select Brother MFC-XXXX (where XXXX is your model name).

### For more page setup options, click the **Show Details** button.

- 3. Click the application pop-up menu, and then select Layout.
  - The Layout setting options appear.
- 4. Click the **Pages per Sheet** pop-up menu, and then select the number of pages to print on each sheet.
- 5. Select the **Layout Direction** option.
- 6. Click the Border pop-up menu, and then select your border line type.
- 7. Change other printer settings, if needed.
- 8. Click Print.

Ø



- Print from Your Computer (Mac)
- Print Options (Mac)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Mac) > Print a Colour Document in Greyscale (Mac)

# Print a Colour Document in Greyscale (Mac)

Greyscale mode makes the print processing speed faster than colour mode. If your document contains colour, selecting Greyscale mode prints your document in 256 levels of greyscale.



- 1. From an application, such as Apple TextEdit, click the File menu, and then select Print.
- 2. Select Brother MFC-XXXX (where XXXX is your model name).

Ø

For more page setup options, click the **Show Details** button.

- Click the application pop-up menu, and then select Print Settings. The Print Settings options appear.
- 4. Click the Color/Grayscale pop-up menu, and then select the Grayscale option.
- 5. Change other printer settings, if needed.
- 6. Click Print.

### Related Information

• Print from Your Computer (Mac)

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Mac) > Prevent Smudged Printouts and Paper Jams (Mac)

# Prevent Smudged Printouts and Paper Jams (Mac)

Some types of print media may need more drying time. Change the **Reduce Smudge** option if you have problems with smudged printouts or paper jams.

- 1. From an application, such as Apple TextEdit, click the File menu, and then select Print.
- 2. Select Brother MFC-XXXX (where XXXX is your model name).

### For more page setup options, click the **Show Details** button.

- Click the application pop-up menu, and then select Print Settings. The Print Settings options appear.
- 4. Click the Advanced print settings list.
- 5. Click the Reduce Smudge menu.

Ø

6. Select one of the following options:

Media Type	Option	Option		
Plain Paper 2-sided Printing or Simplex Printing		Off	Select this mode to print at normal speed, using a normal amount of ink.	
		Low	Select this mode to print at a slower speed, using a normal amount of ink.	
		High	Select this mode to print at the same speed as <b>Low</b> , but using less ink.	
Glossy Paper	Off		Select this mode to print at normal speed, using a normal amount of ink.	
	On		Select this mode to print at a slower speed, using less ink.	

- 7. Change other printer settings, if needed.
- 8. Click Print.

- Print from Your Computer (Mac)
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems
- Change the Print Setting Options When Having Printing Problems

▲ Home > Print > Print from Your Computer (Mac) > Print Options (Mac)

# Print Options (Mac)

### Page Setup

Setting	s: Page Attributes
Format For:	Brother MFC-XXXX
	Brother MFC-XXXX CUPS
Paper Size:	A4 🗘
	210 by 297 mm
Orientation:	
Scale:	100 %
?)	Cancel OK

### 1. Paper Size

Select the size of the paper you want to use. You can either choose from standard paper sizes or create a custom paper size.

### 2. Orientation

Select the orientation (portrait or landscape) of your printout.

If your application contains a similar setting, we recommend that you set the orientation using the application.

### 3. Scale

Type a value into the field to enlarge or reduce the pages in your document to fit the selected paper size.

Printer: Brother MFC-XXXX
Presets: Default Settings
Presets: Default Settings
Copies: 1 🗌 🗌 Two-Sided
Pages: 💿 All
From: 1 to: 1
Paper Size: A4 210 by 297 mm
Orientation:
Layout ᅌ
Pages per Sheet: 1
 Layout Direction:
Border: None
Two-Sided: Off
Reverse page orientation
Flip horizontally

### 1. Pages per Sheet

Select the number of pages to print on a single sheet of paper.

### 2. Layout Direction

Select the page order when printing multiple pages on a single sheet of paper.

3. Border

Select the type of border to use when printing multiple pages on a single sheet of paper.

### 4. Two-Sided (available only for certain models)

Select whether to print on both sides of the paper.

### 5. Reverse page orientation

Select this option to rotate the printed image 180 degrees.

6. Flip horizontally

Select this option to reverse the printed image on the page horizontally from left to right.

	Printer: Brother MFC-XXXX
	Presets: Default Settings
	Copies: 1 Two-Sided
	Pages: O All From: 1 to: 1
	Paper Size: A4 210 by 297 mm
	Orientation:
	Paper Handling
	Collate pages
	Pages to Print: All pages
[₩4] < 1 of 1 > ▶▶	Page Order: Automatic
	Scale to fit paper size
	Destination Paper Size: Suggested Paper: A4 🗘
	Scale down only

### 1. Collate pages

. .

...

Select this option to print sets of multi-page documents in the original page order. When this option is selected, one complete copy of your document will print, and then reprint according to the number of copies you choose. If this option is not selected, then each page will print according to the number of copies chosen before the next page of the document is printed.

### 2. Page Order

Select the page order.

### 3. Scale to fit paper size

Select this option to enlarge or reduce the pages in your document to fit the selected paper size.

### 4. Destination Paper Size

Select the paper size to print on.

### 5. Scale down only

Select this option if you want to reduce the pages in your document when they are too large for the selected paper size. If this option is selected and the document is formatted for a paper size that is smaller than the paper size you are using, the document will be printed at its original size.

Print Settings			
Printer:	Brother MFC-XXX	xx ᅌ	
Presets:	Default Settings	\$	
Copies:	1 Two-S	Bided	
Pages:	All     From: 1	to: 1	
Paper Size:		210 by 297 mm	
Orientation:	1 i 1>		
	Print Settings	<b>\$</b>	
	Media Type:	Plain Paper ᅌ	
		Slow Drying Paper	
1 of 1 > I > I > I > I > I > I > I > I > I >	Print Quality:	Normal 🗘	
Co	lor / Grayscale:	Color	
	Paper Source:	Auto Select 🗘	
► Advanced			
? PDF V Hide Details		Cancel	int

### 1. Media Type

Select the type of media you want to use. To achieve the best print results, the machine automatically adjusts its print settings according to the selected media type.

### 2. Slow Drying Paper

Select this option if you use a type of plain paper on which ink dries slowly. This option may cause slight blurring of the text.

### 3. Print Quality

Select the print resolution you want. Because print quality and speed are related, the higher the quality, the longer it will take to print the document.

### 4. Color/Grayscale

Select colour or greyscale printing. The print speed is faster in greyscale mode than it is in colour mode. If your document contains colour and you select greyscale mode, your document will be printed using 256 levels of greyscale.

### 5. Paper Source (available only for certain models)

Select the paper source setting according to your print conditions or purpose.

### 6. Advanced

### **Change Data Transfer Mode**

Select the print data transfer mode to improve print quality or print speed.

#### **Reduce Uneven Lines**

Select this option to adjust the print alignment if your printed text becomes blurred or images become faded.

#### **Reduce Smudge**

Some types of print media may need more drying time. Change this option if you have problems with smudged printouts or paper jams.

#### **Other Print Options**

#### **Paper Thickness**

Select the appropriate paper thickness.

#### **Bi-Directional Printing**

Select this option to increase the print speed. When this option is selected, the print head prints in both directions. When this option is cleared, the print head prints in only one direction, resulting in higher quality printouts but causing slower print speeds.

Sometimes, the movement of the print head may vary due to environmental conditions. This may be seen when you print vertical lines and they do not align. If you encounter this problem, turn off the Bi-Directional Printing feature.

#### **Color Settings**

	Printer:	Brother MF	C-XXXX		\$	
	Presets:	Default Sett	tings		\$	
	Copies:		Two-Sideo	b		
	Pages:					
	B 0.	From: 1		to: 1		
	Paper Size:			\$	210 by 297	mm
	Orientation:	1 🛉 1 🕨	•			
		Color Settin	igs		\$	
1 of 1		Color Mode: ed Color Setting	Vivid None	al		
		olor Enhanceme				
			0			
	Co	ontrast	0		$\sim$	
	Re	ed	o	1	Q .	
	Gr	reen	o ,	1	Q ,	
	Bl	ue	0 ,		V .	
	Ha	Iftone Pattern:	Dither			0
? PDF V Hide Details				(	Cancel	Print

#### 1. Color Mode

Select the colour mode to suit your preference.

#### 2. Advanced Color Settings

Click the disclosure triangle to view the Advanced Colour Settings. Select the Colour Enhancement check box, and then set the options using the sliders. This process may take several minutes depending on the size of the image and the specifications of your computer.

- Print from Your Computer (Mac)
- Error and Maintenance Messages
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems

- Print a Photo (Mac)
- Print a Document (Mac)
- Print on Both Sides of the Paper Automatically (Automatic 2-sided Printing) (Mac)
- Print More Than One Page on a Single Sheet of Paper (N in 1) (Mac)
- Change the Print Setting Options When Having Printing Problems

▲ Home > Print > Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive

# Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive

- Compatible USB Flash Drives
- Print Photos Directly from a USB Flash Drive
- Print a PDF File Directly from a USB Flash Drive

▲ Home > Print > Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Compatible USB Flash Drives

# **Compatible USB Flash Drives**

### IMPORTANT

The USB direct interface supports only USB flash drives and digital cameras that use the USB mass storage standard. Other USB devices are not supported.

Compatible Memory Cards		Slot
USB flash drive	(A)	USB slot

Compatible USB Flash Drives		
USB Class	USB Mass Storage Class	
USB Mass Storage Sub Class	SCSI or SFF-8070i	
Transfer protocol	Bulk transfer Only	
Format <sup>1</sup>	FAT12/FAT16/FAT32/exFAT	
Sector size	Max. 4096 Byte	
Encryption	Encrypted devices are not supported.	

1 NTFS format is not supported.

- Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive
- Save Scanned Data to a USB Flash Drive

▲ Home > Print > Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos Directly from a USB Flash Drive

# Print Photos Directly from a USB Flash Drive

Even if your machine is *not* connected to your computer, you can print photos directly from a USB Flash memory drive, scan documents and save them directly to a USB flash drive.

- Important Information about Photo Printing
- Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine

▲ Home > Print > Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Important Information about Photo Printing

# **Important Information about Photo Printing**

Your machine is designed to be compatible with modern digital camera image files and USB flash drives. Read the points below to avoid errors:

- The image file extension must be .JPG (other image file extensions like .JPEG, .TIF, .GIF and so on will not be recognised).
- Direct photo printing must be performed separately from photo printing operations using the computer. (Simultaneous operation is not available.)
- The machine can read up to 999 files <sup>1</sup> on a USB flash drive.

Be aware of the following:

- When printing an index or image, the machine will print all the valid images, even if one or more images have been corrupted. Corrupted images will not be printed.
- Your machine supports USB flash drives that have been formatted by Windows.



· Print Photos Directly from a USB Flash Drive

<sup>1</sup> The folder inside USB flash drives is also counted.

▲ Home > Print > Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine

# Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine

- Preview and Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive
- Print a Photo Index Sheet (Thumbnails) from a USB Flash Drive
- Print Photos by Image Number
- Print Photos with Auto Cropping
- Print Borderless Photos from a USB Flash Drive
- Print the Date from Your Photo's Data
- Print Settings for Photos

▲ Home > Print > Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine > Preview and Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive

# **Preview and Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive**

Preview your photos on the LCD before you print them. Print images that are stored on a USB flash drive.

- If your photos are large files, there may be a delay before each photo is displayed.
- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Put a USB flash drive in the USB slot.



- 2. Press [JPEG Print] > [Select Files].
- 3. Press ◀ or ▶ to display the photo you want to print, and then press it.

To print all photos, press [Print All], and then press [Yes] to confirm.

- 4. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press × 01 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 5. Press [OK].
- 6. Repeat the last three steps until you have selected all the photos you want to print.
- 7. Press [OK].
- 8. Read and confirm the displayed list of options.
- To change the print settings, press [Print Settings].
   When finished, press [OK].
- 10. Press [Start].

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Put a USB flash drive in the USB slot.



2. Press [JPEG Print] > [Select Files].

3. Swipe left or right or press ◀ or ► to display the photo you want to print, and then press it.

To print all photos, press [Print All], and then press [Yes] to confirm.

- 4. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press × 01 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 5. Press [OK].

Ø

- 6. Repeat the last three steps until you have selected all the photos you want to print.
- 7. Press [OK].
- 8. Read and confirm the displayed list of options.
- To change the print settings, press [Print Settings].
   When finished, press [OK].

10. Press [Start].

- Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine
- Print Settings for Photos

▲ Home > Print > Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine > Print a Photo Index Sheet (Thumbnails) from a USB Flash Drive

# Print a Photo Index Sheet (Thumbnails) from a USB Flash Drive

Print a photo Index Sheet to see small preview versions of all pictures on your USB flash drive.

- The machine assigns numbers for images (such as No.1, No.2, No.3, and so on).
   The machine does not recognise any other numbers or file names that your digital camera or computer
  - has used to identify the pictures.
  - Only file names that are 20 characters or less will be printed correctly on the index sheet.
  - File names cannot be printed correctly if they contain non-alphanumeric characters, but nonalphanumeric characters do not affect photo print settings.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Put a USB flash drive in the USB slot.
- 2. Press [JPEG Print] > [Index Print] > [Print Index Sheet].
- 3. If you want to change the print settings, press [Print Settings].

When finished, press [OK].

Option	Description	
Paper Type	Select the paper type.	
Paper Size	Select the paper size.	

4. Press [Start].

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Put a USB flash drive in the USB slot.
- 2. Press [JPEG Print] > [Index Print].
- 3. Press [Print Index Sheet].
- If you want to change the print settings, press [Print Settings].
   When finished, press [OK].

Option	Description
Paper Type	Select the paper type.
Paper Size	Select the paper size.

5. Press [Start].



- · Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine
- Print Photos by Image Number

▲ Home > Print > Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine > Print Photos by Image Number

# **Print Photos by Image Number**

Before you can print an individual image, you must print the photo Index Sheet (thumbnails) to know the image number.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Put a USB flash drive in the USB slot.
- 2. Press [JPEG Print] > [Index Print] > [Print Photos].
- 3. Enter the image numbers you want to print using the photo Index Sheet. After you have selected the image numbers, press [OK].
  - Enter multiple numbers at one time using a comma or a hyphen. For example, enter 1, 3, 6 to print images No.1, No.3 and No.6. Print a range of images using a hyphen. For example, enter 1-5 to print images No.1 to No.5.
    - · Enter up to 12 characters (including commas and hyphens) for the image numbers you want to print.
- 4. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press × 01 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- To change the print settings, press [Print Settings].
   When finished, press [OK].
- 6. Press [Start].

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Put a USB flash drive in the USB slot.
- 2. Press [JPEG Print] > [Index Print].
- 3. Press [Print Photos Using Index No.].
- 4. Enter the image numbers you want to print using the photo Index Sheet. After you have selected the image numbers, press [OK].
  - Enter multiple numbers at one time using a comma or a hyphen. For example, enter **1**, **3**, **6** to print images No.1, No.3 and No.6. Print a range of images using a hyphen. For example, enter **1-5** to print images No.1 to No.5.
    - Enter up to 12 characters (including commas and hyphens) for the image numbers you want to print.
- 5. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press × 01 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- To change the print settings, press [Print Settings].
   When finished, press [OK].
- 7. Press [Start].

- Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine
- Print a Photo Index Sheet (Thumbnails) from a USB Flash Drive
- Print Settings for Photos

▲ Home > Print > Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine > Print Photos with Auto Cropping

# **Print Photos with Auto Cropping**

If your photo is too long or too wide to fit the space in your layout, part of the image will be cropped.

- The factory setting is On. To print the whole image, change this setting to Off.
- If you set the [Cropping] setting to Off, set the [Borderless] setting to Off, also.

#### **Cropping: On**



#### **Cropping: Off**



>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Put a USB flash drive in the USB slot.
- 2. Press [JPEG Print] > [Select Files].
- 3. Press ◄ or ► to display each photo. When the photo you want appears, press it, and then press [OK].
- 4. Press [OK].
- 5. **Press** [Print Settings] > [Cropping].
- 6. Press [On] (or [Off]).
- 7. When finished, press **S** or [OK].
- 8. Press [Start].

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Put a USB flash drive in the USB slot.
- 2. Press [JPEG Print] > [Select Files].
- Swipe left or right or press ◀ or ➤ to display each photo. When the photo you want appears, press it, and then press [OK].
- 4. Press [OK].
- 5. Press [Print Settings] > [Cropping].
- 6. Press [On] (or [Off]).
- 7. When finished, press **5** or [OK]. Press [Start].

- Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine
- Other Problems

▲ Home > Print > Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine > Print Borderless Photos from a USB Flash Drive

# Print Borderless Photos from a USB Flash Drive

This feature expands the printable area to the edges of the paper. Printing time will be slower.

```
>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW
```

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Put a USB flash drive in the USB slot.
- 2. Press [JPEG Print] > [Select Files].
- 3. Press ◄ or ► to display each photo. When the photo you want appears, press it, and then press [OK].
- 4. Press [OK].
- 5. **Press** [Print Settings] > [Borderless].
- 6. Press [On] (or [Off]).
- 7. When finished, press **5** or [OK].
- 8. Press [Start].

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Put a USB flash drive in the USB slot.
- 2. Press [JPEG Print] > [Select Files].
- 3. Swipe left or right or press ◀ or ► to display each photo. When the photo you want appears, press it, and then press [OK].
- 4. Press [OK].
- 5. **Press** [Print Settings] > [Borderless].
- 6. Press [On] (or [Off]).
- 7. When finished, press or [OK]. Press [Start].

- Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine
- Other Problems

▲ Home > Print > Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine > Print the Date from Your Photo's Data

# Print the Date from Your Photo's Data

Print the date if it is already in your photo's information. The date will be printed on the lower-right corner. To use this setting, the photo must include the date.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Put a USB flash drive in the USB slot.
- 2. Press [JPEG Print] > [Select Files].
- 3. Press < or ▶ to display each photo. When the photo you want appears, press it, and then press [OK].
- 4. Press [OK].
- 5. Press [Print Settings] > [Date Print].
- 6. Press [On] (or [Off]).
- 7. When finished, press **or** [OK].
- 8. Press [Start].

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Put a USB flash drive in the USB slot.
- 2. Press [JPEG Print] > [Select Files].
- Swipe left or right or press ◄ or ➤ to display each photo. When the photo you want appears, press it, and then press [OK].
- 4. Press [OK].
- 5. Press [Print Settings] > [Date Print].
- 6. Press [On] (or [Off]).
- 7. When finished, press **5** or [OK]. Press [Start].

### Related Information

Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine

▲ Home > Print > Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine > Print Settings for Photos

# **Print Settings for Photos**

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

Press the [Print Settings] option to display the settings shown in the table.

Option	Description
Print Quality	Select the print resolution for your type of document.
	When you select the Inkjet Paper option in the Paper Type setting, you can select only Fine.
Paper Type	Select the paper type.
Paper Size	Select the paper size.
Print Layout	Select the print layout.
Brightness	Adjust the brightness.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast.
	Increasing the contrast will make an image look sharper and more vivid.
Cropping	Crop the image around the margin to fit the paper size or print size. Turn this feature off when you want to print whole images or prevent unwanted cropping.
Borderless	Expand the printable area to fit the edges of the paper.
Date Print	Print the date on your photo.
Set New Default	Save the print settings you use most often by setting them as the defaults.
Factory Reset	Restore any changed print settings back to the factory settings.

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

Press the [Print Settings] button to display the settings shown in the table.

Option	Description
Print Quality	Select the print resolution for your type of document.
	When you select the Inkjet Paper option in the Paper Type option, you can select only Fine.
Paper Type	Select the paper type.
Paper Size	Select the paper size.
Tray Select	Select the tray.
Print Layout	Select the print layout.
Brightness	Adjust the brightness.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast.
	Increasing the contrast will make an image look sharper and more vivid.
Cropping	Crop the image around the margin to fit the paper size or print size. Turn this feature off when you want to print whole images or prevent unwanted cropping.
Borderless	Expand the printable area to fit the edges of the paper.
Date Print	Print the date on your photo.

Option	Description
Set New Default	Save the print settings you use most often by setting them as the defaults.
Factory Reset	Restore any changed print settings back to the factory settings.

- Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive on the Brother Machine
- Preview and Print Photos from a USB Flash Drive
- Print Photos by Image Number

▲ Home > Print > Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive > Print a PDF File Directly from a USB Flash Drive

# Print a PDF File Directly from a USB Flash Drive

Related Models: MFC-J5930DW

You can print a PDF file directly from a USB flash drive.

PDF files that are 2 GB or more cannot be printed.

### IMPORTANT

Ø

To prevent damage to your machine, DO NOT connect any device other than a USB flash drive to the USB direct interface.

1. Put a USB flash drive in the USB slot.



2. Press [PDF Print].

Ø

If your machine has been set to Secure Function Lock On, you may not be able to access Direct Print.

- 3. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the PDF file you want to print, and then press it.
- 4. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press ×001 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 5. Read and confirm the displayed list of options.
- 6. To change the print settings, press [Print Settings].

When finished, pre	ess [OK].	
--------------------	-----------	--

Option	Description
Print Quality	Select the print resolution for your type of document.
Paper Size	Select the paper size.
Tray Select	Select the tray.
Multiple Page	Set this option to print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper or print one page of your document on multiple sheets.
2-sided	Select the type of 2-sided binding.
Collate	Set this option to On to print sets of multi-page documents in the original page order.

Option	Description
PDF Option	Select this option to print a PDF file with the markups or stamps.

7. Press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start].

### **IMPORTANT**

DO NOT remove the USB flash drive from the USB direct interface until the machine has finished printing.



• Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive

### Home > Scan

# Scan

- Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine
- Scan from Your Computer (Windows)
- Scan from Your Computer (Mac)
- Configure Scan Settings Using Web Based Management

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine

# Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine

- Scan Photos and Graphics
- Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File
- Save Scanned Data to a USB Flash Drive
- Scan Multiple Business Cards and Photos (Auto Crop)
- Scan to an Editable Text File Using OCR
- Scan to Email Attachment
- Send Scanned Data to an Email Server
- Scan to FTP
- Scan to Network (Windows)
- Web Services for Scanning on Your Network (Windows Vista SP2 or greater, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10)
- Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter4 (Windows)
- Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter2 (Mac)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Scan Photos and Graphics

# **Scan Photos and Graphics**

Send scanned photos or graphics directly to your computer.



Use the Scan button on the machine to make temporary changes to the scan settings. To make permanent changes, use Brother's ControlCenter software.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Scan] > [to PC] > [to Image].
- 3. If the machine is connected over the network, press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send data, and then press the computer name.

If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN, use the LCD to enter the four-digit PIN for the computer, and then press [OK].

4. Do one of the following:

- To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
- Press [Start] to start scanning without changing additional settings.

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

5. Press the [Scan Settings] option, and then press [Set at Device].

To use the [Scan Settings] option, a computer with the ControlCenter software installed must be connected to the machine.

6. Select the scan settings you want to change, and then press [OK].

Option	Description
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.
File Type	Select the file format for your document.
Document Size	Select your document size.
Brightness	Select the brightness level.

Option	Description
Contrast	Select the contrast level.
ADF Auto Deskew (Available only for certain models)	Correct any skewed documents when they are scanned using the ADF.
Skip Blank Page (Available only for certain models)	When On is selected, blank pages are skipped.
Remove Background Colour	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.

- To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.
- 7. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press 👧 [Scan].
- 3. Swipe left or right or press < or ► to display [to PC].

The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.

- 4. Press [10 PC].
- 5. Press [to Image].
- 6. If the machine is connected over the network, swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send the data, and then press the computer name.

If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN, use the LCD to enter the four-digit PIN for the computer, and then press [OK].

### 7. Do one of the following:

- To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
- Press [Start] to start scanning without changing additional settings.

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

8. To scan both sides of the document, press [2-sided Scan], and then select the document type.

Option	Description
2-sided Scan: Long Edge	Scan the document so that the pages are read by flipping them on the long edge.



Scan the document so that the pages are read by flipping them on the short edge.

 Option
 Description

9. Press the [Scan Settings] option, and then press [Set at Device].

To use the [Scan Settings] option, a computer with the ControlCenter software installed must be connected to the machine.

10. Select the scan settings you want to change, and then press [OK].

Option	Description
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.
File Type	Select the file format for your document.
Document Size	Select your document size.
Brightness	Select the brightness level.
Contrast	Select the contrast level.
ADF Auto Deskew	Correct any skewed documents when they are scanned using the ADF
(Available only for certain models)	
Skip Blank Page	When On is selected, blank pages are skipped.
(Available only for certain models)	
Remove Background Colour	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.

• To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.

11. Press [Start].

Ø

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

### Related Information

· Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File

# Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File

Scan documents and save them to a folder on your computer as PDF files.



Use the Scan button on the machine to make temporary changes to the scan settings. To make permanent changes, use Brother's ControlCenter software.

#### >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

# MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Scan] > [to PC] > [to File].
- 3. If the machine is connected over the network, press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send data, and then press the computer name.

<sup>\*</sup> If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN, use the LCD to enter the four-digit PIN for the computer, and then press [OK].

### 4. Do one of the following:

Ø

- To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
- Press [Start] to start scanning without changing additional settings.

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

5. Select the scan settings you want to change, and then press [OK].

Option	Description
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.
File Type	Select the file format for your document.
Document Size	Select your document size.
Brightness	Select the brightness level.
Contrast	Select the contrast level.
ADF Auto Deskew	Correct any skewed documents when they are scanned using the ADF.
Option	Description
-------------------------------------	---
(Available only for certain models)	
Skip Blank Page	When On is selected, blank pages are skipped.
(Available only for certain models)	
Remove Background Colour	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.

- To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.
- 6. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press 📷 [Scan].
- 3. Swipe left or right or press < or ► to display [to PC].

The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.

- 4. Press [10 PC].
- 5. Press [to File].

Ø

Edge

6. If the machine is connected over the network, swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send the data, and then press the computer name.

If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN, use the LCD to enter the four-digit PIN for the computer, and then press [OK].

- 7. Do one of the following:
  - To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
  - Press [Start] to start scanning without changing additional settings.

edge.

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

8. To scan both sides of the document, press [2-sided Scan], and then select the document type.

Option	Description
2-sided Scan: Long Edge	Scan the document so that the pages are read by flipping them on the long edge.
2-sided Scan: Short	Scan the document so that the pages are read by flipping them on the short

Option

Des	cri	pti	on
	-		

9	<u> </u>	
	2	
	3_	

9. Select the scan settings you want to change, and then press [OK].

Option	Description
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.
File Type	Select the file format for your document.
Document Size	Select your document size.
Brightness	Select the brightness level.
Contrast	Select the contrast level.
ADF Auto Deskew	Correct any skewed documents when they are scanned using the ADF.
(Available only for certain models)	
Skip Blank Page	When On is selected, blank pages are skipped.
(Available only for certain models)	
Remove Background Colour	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.

To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.

10. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.



Ø

## **Related Information**

Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Save Scanned Data to a USB Flash Drive

# Save Scanned Data to a USB Flash Drive

Scan documents and save them directly to a USB flash drive without using a computer.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Insert a USB flash drive into your machine.

The LCD screen automatically changes.

- 3. Press [Scan to Media].
- 4. Do one of the following:

Ø

• To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.

- To set your own default settings: after making changes to settings, press the [Set New Default] option, and then press [Yes].

- To restore the factory settings: press the [Factory Reset] option, and then press [Yes].
- Press [Start] to start scanning without changing additional settings.

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

Option	Description
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.
File Type	Select the file format for your document.
Document Size	Select your document size.
Scan Long Paper (ADF) (Available only for certain models)	Scan a long document using the ADF.
File Name	Rename the file.
File Name Style	Select the order in which the date, counter number, and other items appear in the file names.
Brightness	Select the brightness level.
Contrast	Select the contrast level.
Auto Crop (Available only for certain models)	Scan multiple documents placed on the scanner glass to a USB flash drive. The machine will scan each document and create separate files or a single multi-page file.
ADF Auto Deskew (Available only for certain models)	Correct any skewed documents when they are scanned using the ADF.
Skip Blank Page (Available only for certain models)	When On is selected, blank pages are skipped.

Option	Description
Skip Blank Page Sensitivity (Available only for certain models)	Select the sensitivity level for detecting blank pages in the scanned data. The higher the sensitivity, the easier it is for the machine to detect blank pages.
Remove Background Colour	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.

• To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.

#### 6. Press [Start].

7. If you are using the scanner glass, set the next page and then press [Continue]. If there are no more pages to scan, press [Finish]. After you finish scanning, make sure you choose [Finish] before removing the USB flash drive from the machine.

## IMPORTANT

The LCD displays a message while reading the data. DO NOT unplug the power cord or remove the USB flash drive from the machine while it is reading the data. You could lose your data or damage the USB flash drive.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Insert a USB Flash memory drive into your machine.

The LCD automatically changes.

- 3. Press [Scan to Media].
- 4. Do one of the following:
  - To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
  - To set your own default settings: after making changes to settings, press the [Set New Default] option, and then press [Yes].
    - To restore the factory settings: press [Factory Reset], and then press [Yes].
    - Press [Start] to start scanning without changing additional settings.

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

- 5. To scan both sides of the document (for MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW only), press [2-sided Scan], and then select the document type.
- 6. Select the scan settings you want to change, and then press [OK].

Option	Description
2-sided Scan	Select the 2-sided scan mode.
(Available only for certain models)	
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.
File Type	Select the file format for your document.
Document Size	Select your document size.
Scan Long Paper (ADF)	Scan a long document using the ADF.

Option	Description
(Available only for certain models)	
File Name	Rename the file.
File Name Style	Select the order in which the date, counter number, and other items appear in the file names.
Brightness	Select the brightness level.
Contrast	Select the contrast level.
Auto Crop (Available only for certain models)	Scan multiple documents placed on the scanner glass to a USB flash drive. The machine will scan each document and create separate files or a single multi-page file.
ADF Auto Deskew (Available only for certain models)	Correct any skewed documents when they are scanned using the ADF.
Skip Blank Page (Available only for certain models)	When On is selected, blank pages are skipped.
Skip Blank Page Sensitivity (Available only for certain models)	Select the sensitivity level for detecting blank pages in the scanned data. The higher the sensitivity, the easier it is for the machine to detect blank pages.
Remove Background Colour	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.

• To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.

#### 7. Press [Start].

8. If you are using the scanner glass, set the next page and then press [Continue]. If there are no more pages to scan, press [Finish]. After you finish scanning, make sure you choose [Finish] before removing the USB flash drive from the machine.

## **IMPORTANT**

The LCD displays a message while reading the data. DO NOT unplug the power cord or remove the USB flash drive from the machine while it is reading the data. You could lose your data or damage the USB flash drive.

## Related Information

- Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine
- Compatible USB Flash Drives
- Important Note

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Save Scanned Data to a USB Flash Drive > Compatible USB Flash Drives

# **Compatible USB Flash Drives**

## IMPORTANT

The USB direct interface supports only USB flash drives and digital cameras that use the USB mass storage standard. Other USB devices are not supported.

Compatible Memory Cards		Slot
USB flash drive	(H)	USB slot

Compatible USB Flash Drives		
USB Class	USB Mass Storage Class	
USB Mass Storage Sub Class	SCSI or SFF-8070i	
Transfer protocol	Bulk transfer Only	
Format <sup>1</sup>	FAT12/FAT16/FAT32/exFAT	
Sector size	Max. 4096 Byte	
Encryption	Encrypted devices are not supported.	

<sup>1</sup> NTFS format is not supported.

## Related Information

- Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive
- Save Scanned Data to a USB Flash Drive

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Scan Multiple Business Cards and Photos (Auto Crop)

# Scan Multiple Business Cards and Photos (Auto Crop)

You can scan multiple documents placed on the scanner glass. The machine will scan each document and use the Auto Crop feature to create separate files or a single multi-page file.

#### **Guidelines for Auto Crop**



- 1. 10 mm or greater
- 2. 20 mm or greater (bottom)
- · This setting is available only for documents that are rectangular or square.
- If your document is too long or wide, this feature will not work as described here.
- You must place the documents away from the edges of the scanner glass as shown in the illustration.
- You must place the documents at least 10 mm away from each other.
- Auto Crop adjusts the skew of the document on the scanner glass; however, if your document is skewed more than 10 degrees, this feature will not work.
- The ADF must be empty to use Auto Crop.
- The Auto Crop feature is available for a maximum of 16 documents, depending on the size of the documents.
- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Load documents on the scanner glass.

• To scan documents using the Auto Crop feature, you must put the documents on the scanner glass.

• The Auto Crop feature is supported by technology from Reallusion, Inc.

# 🥪 REALLUSION

2. Insert a USB flash drive into your machine.

The LCD screen automatically changes.

- 3. Press [Scan to Media] > [Options] > [Auto Crop].
- 4. Press [On].

Ø

- 5. Press [OK].
- 6. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. Follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load documents on the scanner glass.
  - To scan documents using the Auto Crop feature, you need to put the documents on the scanner glass.
  - The Auto Crop feature is supported by technology from Reallusion, Inc.

🥪 REALLUSION

- Insert a USB Flash memory drive into your machine. The LCD automatically changes.
- 3. Press [Scan to Media] > [Options] > [Auto Crop].
- 4. Press [On].

Ø

- 5. Press [OK].
- 6. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. Follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.



- · Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine
- Important Note

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Scan to an Editable Text File Using OCR

# Scan to an Editable Text File Using OCR

Your machine can convert characters in a scanned document to text using optical character recognition (OCR) technology. You can edit this text using your preferred text-editing application.



- The Scan to OCR feature is available for certain languages.
- Use the Scan button on the machine to make temporary changes to the scan settings. To make permanent changes, use Brother's ControlCenter software.
- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Scan] > [to PC] > [to OCR].
- 3. If the machine is connected over the network, press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send data, and then press the computer name.

If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN, use the LCD to enter the four-digit PIN for the computer, and then press [OK].

4. Do one of the following:

Ø

Ø

- To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
- Press [Start] to start scanning without changing additional settings.

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

5. Press the [Scan Settings] option, and then press [Set at Device].

To use the [Scan Settings] option, a computer with the ControlCenter software installed must be connected to the machine.

Option	Description
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.
File Type	Select the file format for your document.

Option		Description	
	Document Size	Select your document size.	
	Brightness	Select the brightness level.	
	Contrast	Select the contrast level.	
	ADF Auto Deskew	Correct any skewed documents when they are scanned using the ADF.	
	(Available only for certain mode	ls)	
	Skip Blank Page	When On is selected, blank pages are skipped.	
	(Available only for certain mode	ls)	
	Remove Background Colou	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.	
1	»		
Ø		hortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to prtcut. Follow the LCD instructions.	
7.	Press [Start].		
	The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.		
N	IFC-J2730DW/MFC-J573	DDW/MFC-J5930DW	
1			
	Load your document.		
	Press [Scan].		
3.	Swipe left or right or press < or ▶ to display [to PC].		
	The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.		
4.	Press [to PC].		
5.	Press [to OCR].		
	. If the machine is connected over the network, swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send the data, and then press the computer name.		
Ø	If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN, use the LCD to enter the four-digit PIN for the computer, and then press [OK].		
7.	Do one of the following:		
• To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.		s [Options], and then go to the next step.	
	Press [Start] to start scanning without changing additional settings.		
The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD complete the scanning job.		. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to	
3.		ent, press [2-sided Scan], and then select the document type.	
	Option E	escription	
2-sided Scan: Long Scan the document so that the pages are read by flipping them			

Edge

Scan the document so that the pages are read by flipping them on the long edge.



#### Option

#### Description

2-sided Scan: Short Edge Scan the document so that the pages are read by flipping them on the short edge.

Ē	1	
	2	
	3-	5

9. Press the [Scan Settings] option, and then press [Set at Device].

To use the [Scan Settings] option, a computer with the ControlCenter software installed must be connected to the machine.

10. Select the scan settings you want to change, and then press [OK].

Option	Description
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.
File Type	Select the file format for your document.
Document Size	Select your document size.
Brightness	Select the brightness level.
Contrast	Select the contrast level.
ADF Auto Deskew	Correct any skewed documents when they are scanned using the ADF.
(Available only for certain models)	
Skip Blank Page	When On is selected, blank pages are skipped.
(Available only for certain models)	
Remove Background Colour	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.

• To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.

11. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.



Ø

#### **Related Information**

Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Scan to Email Attachment

## Scan to Email Attachment

Send a scanned document as an email attachment.



- Use the Scan button on the machine to make temporary changes to the scan settings. To make permanent changes, use Brother's ControlCenter software.
- The Scan to Email feature does not support Webmail services. Use the Scan to Image or Scan to File feature to scan a document or a picture, and then attach the scanned file to an email message.

#### >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Scan] > [to PC] > [to E-mail].
- 3. If the machine is connected over the network, press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send data, and then press the computer name.

If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN, use the LCD to enter the four-digit PIN for the computer, and then press [OK].

- 4. Do one of the following:
  - To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
  - Press [Start] to start scanning without changing additional settings.

The machine scans the document and saves it as a file attachment. It then launches your email application and opens a new, blank email message with the scanned file attached.

5. Press the [Scan Settings] option, and then press [Set at Device].

To use the [Scan Settings] option, a computer with the ControlCenter software installed must be connected to the machine.

Option	Description
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.

Option	Description
File Type	Select the file format for your document.
Document Size	Select your document size.
Brightness	Select the brightness level.
Contrast	Select the contrast level.
ADF Auto Deskew (Available only for certain models)	Correct any skewed documents when they are scanned using the ADF
Skip Blank Page (Available only for certain models)	When On is selected, blank pages are skipped.
Remove Background Colour	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.

- To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.
- 7. Press [Start].

The machine scans the document and saves it as a file attachment. It then launches your email application and opens a new, blank email message with the scanned file attached.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press 👧 [Scan].
- 3. Swipe left or right or press < or ► to display [to PC].

The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.

- 4. Press [[to PC].
- 5. Press [to E-mail].
- 6. If the machine is connected over the network, swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send the data, and then press the computer name.

If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN, use the LCD to enter the four-digit PIN for the computer, and then press [OK].

- 7. Do one of the following:
  - To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
  - Press [Start] to start scanning without changing additional settings.

The machine scans the document and saves it as a file attachment. It then launches your email application and opens a new, blank email message with the scanned file attached.

8. To scan both sides of the document, press [2-sided Scan], and then select the document type.

Option	Description
2-sided Scan: Long Edge	Scan the document so that the pages are read by flipping them on the long edge.

#### Option

#### Description

	Ē		
<u>uuu</u>	2	   3	
1			

2-sided Scan: Short Scan the document so that the pages are read by flipping them on the short edge.



9. Press the [Scan Settings] option, and then press [Set at Device].

To use the [Scan Settings] option, a computer with the ControlCenter software installed must be connected to the machine.

10. Select the scan settings you want to change, and then press [OK].

Option	Description
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.
File Type	Select the file format for your document.
Document Size	Select your document size.
Brightness	Select the brightness level.
Contrast	Select the contrast level.
ADF Auto Deskew	Correct any skewed documents when they are scanned using the ADF.
(Available only for certain models)	
Skip Blank Page	When On is selected, blank pages are skipped.
(Available only for certain models)	
Remove Background Colour	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.

Ø

Ø

To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.

11. Press [Start].

The machine scans the document and saves it as a file attachment. It then launches your email application and opens a new, blank email message with the scanned file attached.



▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Send Scanned Data to an Email Server

# Send Scanned Data to an Email Server

Send scanned data from your Brother machine directly to your email server for delivery to an email recipient without using a computer.

- To use this feature, go to the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u>, click **Downloads** on your model page and download the Internet Fax Install Tool.
- To send scanned data to an email server, you must configure your machine to communicate with your network and mail server. You can configure these items from the machine's control panel, Web Based Management, Remote Setup, or BRAdmin Professional.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Scan] > [to E-mail Server].
- 3. Do one of the following to enter the destination email address:
  - To enter the email address manually, press [Manual], and then enter the email address using the character buttons on the LCD. When finished, press [OK].
  - If the email address is stored in the machine's address book, press [Address Book], and then select the email address.

Press [OK].

- 4. Confirm the email address, and then press [Next].
- 5. Do one of the following:
  - To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
- To set your own default settings: after making changes to settings, press the [Set New Default] option, and then press [Yes].
  - To restore the factory settings: press the [Factory Reset] option, and then press [Yes].
  - Press [Start] to start scanning without changing additional settings.

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

Option	Description
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.
File Type	Select the file format for your document.
Document Size	Select your document size.
Scan Long Paper (ADF)	Scan a long document using the ADF.
(Available only for certain models)	
Brightness	Select the brightness level.
Contrast	Select the contrast level.



- To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.
- 7. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press 💽 [Scan].
- 3. Swipe left or right to display [to E-mail Server], and press it.

The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.

- 4. Press [to E-mail Server].
- 5. Do one of the following to enter the destination email address:
  - To enter the email address manually, press [Manual], and then enter the email address using the character buttons on the LCD. When finished, press [OK].
  - If the email address is stored in the machine's address book, press [Address Book], and then select the email address.

Press [OK].

- 6. Confirm the email address, and then press [Next].
- 7. Do one of the following:
  - To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
  - To set your own default settings: after making changes to settings, press the [Set New Default] option, and then press [Yes].
  - To restore the factory settings: press [Factory Reset], and then press [Yes].
  - Press [Start] to start scanning without changing additional settings.
    - The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.
- 8. Select the scan settings you want to change, and then press [OK].

Option	Description
2-sided Scan	Select the 2-sided scan mode.
(Available only for certain models)	
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.
File Type	Select the file format for your document.
Document Size	Select your document size.
Scan Long Paper (ADF)	Scan a long document using the ADF.
(Available only for certain models)	
Brightness	Select the brightness level.
Contrast	Select the contrast level.

• To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.

9. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If using the machine's scanner glass, follow the LCD instructions to complete the scanning job.



• Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Scan to FTP

# Scan to FTP

Scan documents directly to an FTP server when you need to share the scanned information. For added convenience, configure different profiles to save your favourite Scan to FTP destinations.



- Set up a Scan to FTP Profile
- · Upload Scanned Data to an FTP Server

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Scan to FTP > Set up a Scan to FTP Profile

# Set up a Scan to FTP Profile

Set up a Scan to FTP Profile to scan and upload the scanned data directly to an FTP location.

We recommend Microsoft Internet Explorer 8/11 and Microsoft Edge for Windows, and Safari 9 for Mac. Please also make sure that JavaScript and Cookies are always enabled in whichever browser you use. If a different web browser is used, make sure it is compatible with HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1.

1. Start your web browser.

Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the IP address of the machine or the print server name). For example: http://192.168.1.2

No password is required by default. If you have previously set a password, type it, and then click  $\rightarrow$ .

- 2. Click the Scan tab.
- 3. Click the Scan to FTP/Network menu in the left navigation bar.
- 4. Select the **FTP** option, and then click **Submit**.

Profile 1	● FTP ○ Network
Profile 2	● FTP ○ Network
Profile 3	● FTP ○ Network
Profile 4	● FTP ○ Network
Profile 5	● FTP ○ Network

- 5. Click the **Scan to FTP/Network Profile** menu in the left navigation bar.
- 6. Select the profile you want to set up or change.
- 7. In the **Profile Name** field, type a name for this server profile (up to 15 alphanumeric characters). The machine will display this name on the LCD.
- 8. In the **Host Address** field, type the Host Address (for example: ftp.example.com; up to 64 characters) or the IP address (for example: 192.23.56.189).

- 9. Change the **Port Number** setting used to access the FTP server. The default for this setting is port 21. In most cases this setting does not need to be changed.
- 10. In the **Username** field, type a user name (up to 32 characters) that has permission to write data to the FTP server.
- 11. In the **Password** field, type the password (up to 32 characters) associated with the user name you entered in the **Username** field. Type the password again in the **Retype password** field.
- To scan securely using SSL/TLS communication, set the SSL/TLS option. Change the CA Certificate setting, if needed.
- 13. In the **Store Directory** field, type the path (up to 60 characters) to the folder on the FTP server where you want to send your scanned data. Do not type a slash mark at the beginning of the path (see example).

```
Store Directory
```

brother/abc

- 14. Click the **File Name** drop-down list, and then select a file name from the preset names provided, or from user-defined names. You can set the user-defined names and file name style in the **Scan File Name** menu in the left navigation bar.
- 15. Click the **Quality** drop-down list, and then select a quality setting. If you choose the **User Select** option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
- 16. Click the **File Type** drop-down list, and then select the file type you want to use for the scanned document. If you choose the **User Select** option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
- 17. Click the **Document Size** drop-down list, and then select your document size from the list. This is necessary to make sure the scanned file is the correct size.
- 18. If you want to scan a document printed on long paper using the ADF, select the **On** option from the **Scan Long Paper (ADF)** option. (Available only for certain models)
- 19. Select **Auto** from the **ADF Auto Deskew** option, to set the machine to correct document skewing automatically as the pages are scanned from the ADF. (Available only for certain models)
- 20. If you want to remove blank pages of the document from the scanning results, select the **On** option from the **Skip Blank Page** option. (Available only for certain models)
- 21. Click the **Remove Background Color** drop-down list, and then select the level from the list. You can use this feature to remove the background colour of documents to make the scanned data more legible.
- 22. Set the **Passive Mode** option to off or on depending on your FTP server and network firewall configuration. The default setting is on. In most cases this setting does not need to be changed.
- 23. Click Submit.

Using the following characters: ?, /, \, ", :, <, >, | or \* may cause a sending error.



Scan to FTP

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Scan to FTP > Upload Scanned Data to an FTP Server

# **Upload Scanned Data to an FTP Server**

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Scan] > [to FTP].
- 3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select one of the FTP server profiles listed.
- 4. Do one of the following:
  - To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
  - If the profile is not complete (for example, if the logon account name and password are missing or if the quality or file type is not specified), you will be prompted to enter any missing information. When you finish the settings, press [Start].
  - If the profile is complete, press [Start].

After you press [Start], the LCD shows the message [Connecting]. When the connection to the FTP server is successful, the machine starts scanning. If you are using the scanner glass, set the next page and then press [Continue]. If there are no more pages to scan, press [Finish].

Option	Description	
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.	
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.	
File Type	Select the file format for your document.	
Document Size	Select your document size.	
Scan Long Paper (ADF)	Scan a long document using the ADF.	
(Available only for certain models)		
File Name	Rename the file.	
File Name Style	Select the order in which the date, counter number, and other items appear in the file names.	
Brightness	Select the brightness level.	
Contrast	Select the contrast level.	
ADF Auto Deskew	Correct any skewed documents when they are scanned using the	
(Available only for certain models)	ADF.	
Skip Blank Page	When On is selected, blank pages are skipped.	
(Available only for certain models)		
Skip Blank Page Sensitivity	Select the sensitivity level for detecting blank pages in the scanned	
(Available only for certain models)	data. The higher the sensitivity, the easier it is for the machine to detect blank pages.	
Remove Background Colour	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.	
User Name	Enter the user name.	

• To save the profile as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.

6. Press [Start] to start scanning.

The LCD shows the message [Connecting]. When the connection to the FTP server is successful, the machine starts scanning. If you are using the scanner glass, set the next page and then press [Continue]. If there are no more pages to scan, press [Finish].

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press 💽 [Scan].
- 3. Swipe left or right to display [to FTP], and press it.

The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.

- 4. Press [] [to FTP].
- 5. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to select one of the FTP server profiles listed.
- 6. Do one of the following:
  - To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
  - If the profile is not complete (for example, if the logon account name and password are missing or if the quality or file type is not specified), you will be prompted to enter any missing information.

When you finish the settings, press [Start].

• If the profile is complete, press [Start].

After you press [Start], the LCD shows the message [Connecting]. When the connection to the FTP server is successful, the machine starts scanning. If you are using the scanner glass, set the next page and then press [Continue]. If there are no more pages to scan, press [Finish].

Option	Description
2-sided Scan	Select the 2-sided scan mode.
(Available only for certain models)	
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.
File Type	Select the file format for your document.
Document Size	Select your document size.
Scan Long Paper (ADF)	Scan a long document using the ADF.
(Available only for certain models)	
File Name	Rename the file.
File Name Style	Select the order in which the date, counter number, and other items appear in the file names.
Brightness	Select the brightness level.
Contrast	Select the contrast level.
ADF Auto Deskew	Correct any skewed documents when they are scanned using the
(Available only for certain models)	ADF.
Skip Blank Page	When On is selected, blank pages are skipped.

Option	Description
(Available only for certain models)	
Skip Blank Page Sensitivity (Available only for certain models)	Select the sensitivity level for detecting blank pages in the scanned data. The higher the sensitivity, the easier it is for the machine to detect blank pages.
Remove Background Colour	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.
User Name	Enter the user name.

 To save the profile as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.

8. Press [Start] to start scanning.

The LCD shows the message [Connecting]. When the connection to the FTP server is successful, the machine starts scanning. If you are using the scanner glass, set the next page and then press [Continue]. If there are no more pages to scan, press [Finish].

Related Information
---------------------

· Scan to FTP

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Scan to Network (Windows)

# Scan to Network (Windows)

Scan documents directly to a CIFS server on your local network. For added convenience, you can configure different profiles to save your favourite Scan to Network destinations.

- Set up a Scan to Network Profile
- Upload Scanned Data to a CIFS Server

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Scan to Network (Windows) > Set up a Scan to Network Profile

# Set up a Scan to Network Profile

Set up a Scan to Network Profile to scan and upload scanned data directly to a folder on a CIFS server.

- We recommend Microsoft Internet Explorer 8/11 and Microsoft Edge for Windows. Make sure JavaScript and Cookies are always enabled in whichever browser you use. If a different web browser is used, make sure it is compatible with HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1.
- 1. Start your web browser.

Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the IP address of the machine or the print server name). For example: http://192.168.1.2

No password is required by default. If you have previously set a password, type it, and then click  $\rightarrow$ .

- 2. Click the Scan tab.
- 3. Click the Scan to FTP/Network menu in the left navigation bar.
- 4. Select the **Network** option, and then click **Submit**.

Profile 1	○ FTP      ● Network	
Profile 2	○ FTP   ● Network	
Profile 3	○ FTP      ● Network	
Profile 4	○ FTP ● Network	
Profile 5	○ FTP      ● Network	

- 5. Click the Scan to FTP/Network Profile menu in the left navigation bar.
- 6. Select the profile you want to set up or change.
- 7. In the **Profile Name** field, type a name for this server profile (up to 15 alphanumeric characters). The machine will display this name on the LCD.
- 8. In the **Network Folder Path** field, type the path to the folder on the CIFS server where you want to send your scanned data.
- Click the File Name drop-down list, and then select a file name from the preset names provided, or from user-defined names. You can set the user-defined names and file name style in the Scan File Name menu in the left navigation bar.
- 10. Click the **Quality** drop-down list, and then select a quality setting. If you choose the **User Select** option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.

- 11. Click the **File Type** drop-down list, and then select the file type you want to use for the scanned document. If you choose the **User Select** option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
- 12. Click the **Document Size** drop-down list, and then select your document size from the list. This is necessary to make sure the scanned file is the correct size.
- 13. If you want to scan a document printed on long paper using the ADF, select the **On** option from the **Scan Long Paper (ADF)** option. (Available only for certain models)
- 14. Select **Auto** from the **ADF Auto Deskew** option, to set the machine to correct document skewing automatically as the pages are scanned from the ADF. (Available only for certain models)
- 15. If you want to remove blank pages of the document from the scanning results, select the **On** option from the **Skip Blank Page** option. (Available only for certain models)
- 16. Click the **Remove Background Color** drop-down list, and then select the level from the list. You can use this feature to remove the background colour of documents to make the scanned data more legible.
- 17. To PIN-protect this profile, in the Use PIN for Authentication field, select On.
- 18. If you selected On for the Use PIN for Authentication field, type a four-digit PIN in the PIN Code field.
- 19. To set your authentication method, select the authentication method you want from the Auth. Method option.
- 20. In the **Username** field, type a user name (up to 96 characters) that has permission to write data to the folder specified in the **Network Folder Path** field. If the user name is part of a domain, type the user name in one of the following styles:

#### user@domain

#### domain\user

- 21. In the **Password** field, type the password (up to 32 characters) associated with the user name you entered in the **Username** field. Type the password again in the **Retype password** field.
- 22. To set the Kerberos Server Address manually, in the **Kerberos Server Address** field, type the Kerberos Server Address (for example: kerberos.example.com; up to 64 characters).
- 23. Click Submit.

Using the following characters: ?, /, \, ", :, <, >, | or \* may cause a sending error.

24. You must configure the SNTP (network time server) or you must set the date, time and time zone correctly on the control panel. The time must match the time used by the Kerberos Server and CIFS Server.

## Related Information

- Scan to Network (Windows)
- · Set the Date and Time Using Web Based Management

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Scan to Network (Windows) > Set up a Scan to Network Profile > Set the Date and Time Using Web Based Management

# Set the Date and Time Using Web Based Management

Make sure the date and time and the time zone settings are set correctly using Web Based Management or the control panel, so the machine's time matches the time being used by the server providing authentication.

Start with Step 2 if you already have a Web Based Management window open.

1. Start your web browser.

Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the IP address of the machine or the print server name). For example: http://192.168.1.2

No password is required by default. If you have previously set a password, type it, and then click

- 2. Click the Administrator tab.
- 3. Click the Date&Time menu in the left navigation bar.

Time       xx       :xx       (24 hr.)         Time Zone       UTC          Auto Daylight       Off On          Synchronize with SNTP server       Off On          To synchronize the "Date&Time" with your SNTP server you must configure the SNTP server settings.          SNTP>>	Date	xx / xx / 20xx
Auto Daylight     O Off I On       Synchronize with SNTP server       To synchronize the "Date&Time" with your SNTP server you must configure the SNTP server settings.	ïme	xx : xx (24 hr.)
Synchronize with SNTP server To synchronize the "Date&Time" with your SNTP server you must configure the SNTP server settings.	ime Zone	UTC 🗸
To synchronize the "Date&Time" with your SNTP server you must configure the SNTP server settings.	uto Daylight	⊖ Off
	you must configure the SNT	
	SNIFZZ	

- 4. In the **Date** fields, enter the date.
- 5. Select either 12h Clock or 24h Clock as your Clock Type (available only for certain countries).
- 6. In the **Time** fields, enter the time.
- 7. Select the time difference between your location and UTC from the **Time Zone** drop-down list, for example, the time zone for Eastern time in the USA and Canada is UTC-05:00.
- Click the On option for Auto Daylight to set the machine to change automatically for daylight saving time. It will reset itself forward one hour in the spring, and back one hour in the fall/autumn (available only for certain countries).
- 9. Click Submit.

## **Related Information**

 $\checkmark$ 

• Set up a Scan to Network Profile

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Scan to Network (Windows) > Upload Scanned Data to a CIFS Server

## **Upload Scanned Data to a CIFS Server**

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Scan] > [to Network].
- 3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select one of the Scan to Network profiles listed.

If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN, use the LCD to enter the four-digit PIN for the computer, and then press [OK].

4. Do one of the following:

Ø

- To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
- If the profile is not complete (for example, if the logon account name and password are missing or if the quality or file type is not specified), you will be prompted to enter any missing information.

When you finish the settings, press [Start].

• If the profile is complete, press [Start].

After you press [Start], the LCD shows the message [Connecting]. When the connection to the CIFS server is successful, the machine starts scanning. If you are using the scanner glass, set the next page and then press [Continue]. If there are no more pages to scan, press [Finish].

Option	Description
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.
File Type	Select the file format for your document.
Document Size	Select your document size.
Scan Long Paper (ADF)	Scan a long document using the ADF.
(Available only for certain models)	
File Name	Rename the file.
File Name Style	Select the order in which the date, counter number, and other items appear in the file names.
Brightness	Select the brightness level.
Contrast	Select the contrast level.
ADF Auto Deskew (Available only for certain models)	Correct any skewed documents when they are scanned using the ADF.
Skip Blank Page (Available only for certain models)	When On is selected, blank pages are skipped.
Skip Blank Page Sensitivity (Available only for certain models)	Select the sensitivity level for detecting blank pages in the scanned data. The higher the sensitivity, the easier it is for the machine to detect blank pages.

Option	Description
Remove Background Colour	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.
User Name	Enter the user name.

- To save the profile as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.
- 6. Press [Start] to start scanning.

The LCD shows the message [Connecting]. When the connection to the CIFS server is successful, the machine starts scanning. If you are using the scanner glass, set the next page and then press [Continue]. If there are no more pages to scan, press [Finish].

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press 💽 [Scan].
- 3. Swipe left or right to display [to Network], and press it.

The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.

- 4. Press [10 Network].
- 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select one of the Scan to Network profiles listed.

If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN, use the LCD to enter the four-digit PIN for the computer, and then press [OK].

- 6. Do one of the following:
  - To change the settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
  - If the profile is not complete (for example, if the logon account name and password are missing or if the quality or file type is not specified), you will be prompted to enter any missing information.

When you finish the settings, press [Start].

• If the profile is complete, press [Start].

After you press [Start], the LCD shows the message [Connecting]. When the connection to the CIFS server is successful, the machine starts scanning. If you are using the scanner glass, set the next page and then press [Continue]. If there are no more pages to scan, press [Finish].

Option	Description
2-sided Scan	Select the 2-sided scan mode.
(Available only for certain models)	
Scan Type	Select the scan type for your document.
Resolution	Select the scan resolution for your document.
File Type	Select the file format for your document.
Document Size	Select your document size.
Scan Long Paper (ADF)	Scan a long document using the ADF.
(Available only for certain models)	
File Name	Rename the file.

Option	Description
File Name Style	Select the order in which the date, counter number, and other items appear in the file names.
Brightness	Select the brightness level.
Contrast	Select the contrast level.
ADF Auto Deskew (Available only for certain models)	Correct any skewed documents when they are scanned using the ADF.
Skip Blank Page (Available only for certain models)	When On is selected, blank pages are skipped.
Skip Blank Page Sensitivity (Available only for certain models)	Select the sensitivity level for detecting blank pages in the scanned data. The higher the sensitivity, the easier it is for the machine to detect blank pages.
Remove Background Colour	Change the amount of background colour that is removed.
User Name	Enter the user name.

To save the profile as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut]. You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.

8. Press [Start] to start scanning.

The LCD shows the message [Connecting]. When the connection to the CIFS server is successful, the machine starts scanning. If you are using the scanner glass, set the next page and then press [Continue]. If there are no more pages to scan, press [Finish].

## Related Information

• Scan to Network (Windows)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Web Services for Scanning on Your Network (Windows Vista SP2 or greater, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10)

# Web Services for Scanning on Your Network (Windows Vista SP2 or greater, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10)

The Web Services protocol enables Windows Vista (SP2 or greater), Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10 users to scan using a Brother machine on the network. You must install the driver via Web Services.

- Use Web Services to Install Drivers Used for Scanning (Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10)
- Scan Using Web Services from the Brother Machine (Windows Vista SP2 or greater, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10)
- Configure Scan Settings for Web Services

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Web Services for Scanning on Your Network (Windows Vista SP2 or greater, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10) > Use Web Services to Install Drivers Used for Scanning (Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10)

# Use Web Services to Install Drivers Used for Scanning (Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10)

Use Web Services to monitor printers on the network.

- Make sure you have installed the Brother software and drivers.
- Verify that the host computer and the Brother machine are on the same subnet, or that the router is correctly configured to pass data between the two devices.
- You must configure the IP address on your Brother machine before you configure this setting.
- For Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2, you must install Print Services.
- 1. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista

#### Click 🌅 (Start) > Network.

The machine's Web Services Name appears with the printer icon.

Right-click the machine you want to install.

Windows 7

#### Click (Start) > Control Panel > Network and Internet > View network computers and devices.

The machine's Web Services Name appears with the printer icon.

Right-click the machine you want to install.

• Windows 8

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings** > **Change PC settings** > **Devices** > **Add a device**.

The machine's Web Services Name appears.

Windows 8.1

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings** > **Change PC settings** > **PC and devices** > **Devices** > **Add a device**.

The machine's Web Services Name appears.

Windows 10

Click **H** > All apps > Windows System > Control Panel. In the Hardware and Sound group, click Add a device.

- The Web Services Name for the Brother machine is your model name and the MAC Address (Ethernet Address) of your machine (for example, Brother MFC-XXXX (model name) [XXXXXXXXXX] (MAC Address / Ethernet Address)).
  - Windows 8/Windows 10

Move your mouse over the machine name to display the machine's information.

- 2. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista/Windows 7

Click Install in the displayed menu.

Windows 8/Windows 10
 Select the machine you want to install.

To uninstall drivers, click **Uninstall** or  $\bigcirc$  (**Remove device**).

## **Related Information**

 Web Services for Scanning on Your Network (Windows Vista SP2 or greater, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10) ▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Web Services for Scanning on Your Network (Windows Vista SP2 or greater, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10) > Scan Using Web Services from the Brother Machine (Windows Vista SP2 or greater, Windows 7, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10)

# Scan Using Web Services from the Brother Machine (Windows Vista SP2 or greater, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10)

If you have installed the driver for scanning via Web Services, you can access the Web Services scanning menu on your Brother machine's LCD.

- Certain characters in the messages displayed on the LCD may be replaced with spaces if the language settings of your OS and your Brother machine are different.
- If the LCD displays an insufficient memory error message, choose a smaller size in the **Paper size** setting or a lower resolution in the **Resolution (DPI)** setting.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Scan] > [WS Scan].
- 3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of scan you want, and then press it.
- 4. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send data, and then press the computer name.
- 5. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press 🛃 [Scan].
- 3. Swipe left or right to display [WS Scan], and press it.

The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.

- 4. Press [WS Scan].
- 5. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the scan options, and then press the type of scan.
- 6. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer name where you want to send the data, and then press the computer name.
- 7. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning.

#### Related Information

 Web Services for Scanning on Your Network (Windows Vista SP2 or greater, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10) ▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Web Services for Scanning on Your Network (Windows Vista SP2 or greater, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10) > Configure Scan Settings for Web Services

# **Configure Scan Settings for Web Services**

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista

Click (Start) > Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Scanners and Cameras.

• Windows 7

Click (Start) > Devices and Printers.

• Windows 8

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.

Windows 10

Click **Solution** All apps > Windows System > Control Panel. In the Hardware and Sound group, click View devices and printers.

- 2. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista

Click your machine, and then click the Scan Profiles button. The Scan Profiles dialog box appears.

Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10

Right-click the machine icon, and then select **Scan profiles...**. The **Scan Profiles** dialog box appears.

- 3. Select the scan profile you want to use.
- 4. Make sure the scanner selected in the **Scanner** list is a Brother machine that supports Web Services for scanning, and then click the **Set as Default** button.
- 5. Click Edit....

The Edit Default Profile dialog box appears.

- 6. Select the Source, Paper size, Color format, File type, Resolution (DPI), Brightness and Contrast settings.
- 7. Click the Save Profile button.

These settings will be applied when you scan using the Web Services protocol.

If you are requested to select a scanning application, select Windows Fax and Scan or Windows Photo Gallery from the list.



## **Related Information**

 Web Services for Scanning on Your Network (Windows Vista SP2 or greater, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10)
▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter4 (Windows)

# Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter4 (Windows)

- 1. Click the **CC4** (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
- 2. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
- 3. Click the **Device Scan Settings** button.

The Device Scan Settings dialog box appears.

Device Scan Settings	×
Image OCR E-mail File	
File Type JPEG (*.jpg) Target Application Windows Photo Viewer File Name CCI_000001.jpg Change	File Size Priority Small Large (Speed) (Quality)
Destination Folder C:\Users\User\Pictures\ControlCenter4\Scan	
Resolution 300 x 300 dpi Scan Type 24bit Colour	Brightness
24bit Colour ▼ Document Size A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 in) ▼	
	ID Card Scan
Default	Advanced Settings
ОК	Cancel Apply Help

- 4. Click the tab for the Scan to action you want to change (Image, OCR, E-mail, or File).
- 5. Change the settings as needed.
- 6. Click OK.

Each tab corresponds to a scan feature, as described below.

These settings can be changed.

Click the tabs, and then change the settings.

Tab Name	Corresponding Feature
Image	Scan to Image
OCR	Scan to OCR
E-mail	Scan to Email
File	Scan to File

Settings	Applicable Features					
	Image	OCR	E-mail	File		
File Type	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
Target Application	Yes	Yes	-	-		
OCR Language (Available only for certain models)	-	Yes	-	-		
File Name	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
Destination Folder	Yes	Yes	Yes	-		
Scan Location	-	-	-	Yes		
File Size Priority	Yes	-	Yes	Yes		
Resolution	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
Scan Type	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
Document Size	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
Brightness	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
Contrast	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
Auto Crop	Yes	-	Yes	Yes		
ID Card Scan	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
Advanced Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
Default	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		

#### File Type

Select the file type you want to use for the scanned data.

#### **Target Application**

Select the destination application from the drop-down list.

#### **OCR Language**

Set the optical character recognition (OCR) language to match the language of the scanned document's text (Available only for certain models).

#### File Name

Type a prefix for your file name, if needed.

#### **Destination Folder**

Click the folder icon to browse and select the folder where you want to save your scanned documents.

#### Scan Location

Select the **Folder** or **SharePoint** radio button to specify the destination where you want to save your scanned documents.

#### **File Size Priority**

Adjust the data compression ratio of the scanned image. Change the file size by moving the **File Size Priority** slider to the right or left.

#### Resolution

Select a scanning resolution from the **Resolution** drop-down list. Higher resolutions take more memory and transfer time, but produce a finer scanned image.

#### Scan Type

Select from a range of scan colour depths.

Auto

Use for any type of document. This mode automatically picks an appropriate colour depth for the document.

Black & White

Use for text or line art images.

• Grey (Error Diffusion)

Use for photographic images or graphics. (Error Diffusion is a method for creating simulated grey images without using true grey dots. Black dots are put in a specific pattern to give a grey appearance.)

True Grey

Use for photographic images or graphics. This mode is more accurate because it uses up to 256 shades of grey.

24bit Colour

Use to create an image with the most accurate colour reproduction. This mode uses up to 16.8 million colours to scan the image, but it requires the most memory and has the longest transfer time.

#### **Document Size**

Select the exact size of your document from the Document Size drop-down list.

• If you select the 1 to 2 (A4) option, the scanned image will be divided into two A5-size documents.

#### **Brightness**

Set the **Brightness** level by dragging the slider to the right or left to lighten or darken the image. If the scanned image is too light, set a lower brightness level and scan the document again. If the image is too dark, set a higher brightness level and scan the document again. You can also type a value into the field to set the **Brightness** level.

#### Contrast

Increase or decrease the **Contrast** level by moving the slider to the right or left. An increase emphasises dark and light areas of the image, while a decrease reveals more details in grey areas. You can also type a value into the field to set the **Contrast** level.

#### Auto Crop

Scan multiple documents placed on the scanner glass. The machine will scan each document and create separate files or a single multi-page file.

#### **ID Card Scan**

Select this check box to scan both sides of an identification card onto one page.

#### **Advanced Settings**

Click the Advanced Settings button in the scan settings dialog box to configure advanced settings.

#### Remove Bleed-through / Pattern

- Remove Background Colour

Remove the base colour of documents to make the scanned data more legible.

Rotate Image

Rotate the scanned image.

Skip Blank Page

Remove the document's blank pages from the scanning results. (Available only for certain models)

#### Display Scanning Results

Show the numbers of total pages saved and blank pages skipped on your computer screen. (Available only for certain models)

#### ADF Auto Deskew

When scanning the document from the ADF, the machine corrects skewing of the document automatically. (Available only for certain models)

#### Default

Select this option to restore all settings to their factory setting values.

## Related Information

- Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine
- Important Note

▲ Home > Scan > Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine > Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter2 (Mac)

## Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter2 (Mac)

 In the Finder menu bar, click Go > Applications > Brother, and then double-click the (ControlCenter) icon.

The ControlCenter2 screen appears.

- 2. Hold the control key on your keyboard and click the scan destination (**Image**, **OCR**, **E-mail**, or **File**) whose settings you want to change.
- 3. Click the **Device Button** tab.

The settings for the scan destination that you selected appear.

The following example shows the Scan to Image settings.

	Scan to	Image	
(	Software Button	Device Button	
Target Application			
Preview	4	Add Delete	
File Type		File size	
PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)	0		
Destination File Path		Small Large	
Pictures/CCI06062016.pdf		Change	
Scan Type 24bit Color	0		
Document Size			
A4 210 x 297 mm	0	D Card Scan	
Restore Defaults		Advanced Settings	5
		Cancel	ЭК

Settings	Applicable Features						
	Image	OCR	E-mail	File			
Target Application /E-mail Application	Yes	Yes	Yes	-			
File Type	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes			
File size	Yes	-	Yes	Yes			

OCR Language (only available for certain models)	-	Yes	-	-
Destination File Path	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
File Name	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Insert Date in File Name	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Destination Folder	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Resolution	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Scan Type	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Document Size	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
ID Card Scan	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Advanced Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Restore Defaults	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

#### **Target Application/E-mail Application**

Select which application is used to open scanned data. Only applications installed on your computer can be selected.

#### Add

Add an application to the pop-up menu.

Type the application name in the **Application Name** field (up to 30 characters) and select your preferred application by clicking the **Browse** button. Select the **File Type** option from the pop-up menu.

#### Delete

Delete an application you have added to the pop-up menu.

Select the application from the Application Name pop-up menu, and then click Delete.

#### File Type

Select the file type you want to use for the scanned data.

#### File size

Change the file size by moving the File size slider to the right or left.

#### OCR Language

Set the optical character recognition (OCR) language to match the language of the scanned document's text (available only for certain models).

#### **Destination File Path**

Click the **Change** button to change the prefix of the file name and the path of the destination folder.

#### **File Name**

Type a prefix for your file name, if needed. To change the prefix for the **Image**, **OCR** and **E-mail** features, click **Change**.

#### Insert Date in File Name

Automatically inserts the date in the file name of the scanned image. To insert the date in the file name for the **Image**, **OCR** and **E-mail** features, click **Change**.

#### **Destination Folder**

To change the folder for the **Image**, **OCR** and **E-mail** features, click **Change**. Click **Browse** to select the folder where you want to save your scanned document. Select the **Show Folder** option to automatically display the destination folder after scanning to a **File**.

#### Resolution

Select a scanning resolution from the **Resolution** pop-up menu. Higher resolutions take more memory and transfer time, but produce a finer scanned image.

#### Scan Type

Select from a range of scan colour depths.

#### Black & White

Use for text or line art images.

#### • Gray (Error Diffusion)

Use for photographic images or graphics. (Error Diffusion is a method for creating simulated grey images without using true grey dots. Black dots are put in a specific pattern to give a grey appearance.)

#### True Gray

Use for photographic images or graphics. This mode is more accurate because it uses up to 256 shades of grey.

#### 24bit Color

Use to create an image with the most accurate colour reproduction. This mode uses up to 16.8 million colours to scan the image, but it requires the most memory and has the longest transfer time.

Auto

Use for any type of document. This mode automatically picks an appropriate colour depth for the document.

#### **Document Size**

Select the exact size of your document from the **Document Size** pop-up menu.

• If you select the 1 to 2 (A4) option, the scanned image will be divided into two A5-size documents.

#### **ID Card Scan**

Select this check box to scan both sides of an identification card onto one page.

#### **Advanced Settings**

Click the Advanced Settings button in the scan settings dialog box to configure advanced settings.

Brightness

Set the **Brightness** level by dragging the slider to the right or left to lighten or darken the image. If the scanned image is too light, set a lower brightness level and scan the document again. If the image is too dark, set a higher brightness level and scan the document again.

Contrast

Increase or decrease the **Contrast** level by moving the slider to the right or left. An increase emphasise dark and light areas of the image, while a decrease reveals more details in grey areas.

#### ADF Auto Deskew

When scanning the document from the ADF, the machine corrects skewing of the document automatically. (Available only for certain models)

#### Remove Background Color

Remove the base colour of documents to make the scanned data more recognisable. When you use this feature, select from three settings: High, Medium and Low.

#### Skip Blank Page

Remove blank pages of the document from the scanning results. (Available only for certain models)

#### Display Scanning Results

Show the numbers of total pages saved and blank pages skipped on your computer screen. (Available only for certain models)

#### Rotate Image

Rotate the scanned image.

#### **Restore Defaults**

Select this option to restore all settings to their factory setting values.

## **Related Information**

 $\checkmark$ 

Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows)

# Scan from Your Computer (Windows)

There are several ways you can use your computer to scan photos and documents on your Brother machine. Use the software applications provided by Brother, or use your favourite scanning application.

- Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Scan Using Nuance<sup>™</sup> PaperPort<sup>™</sup> 14 or Other Windows Applications
- Scan Using Windows Photo Gallery or Windows Fax and Scan
- Install BookScan Enhancer and Whiteboard Enhancer (Windows)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

## Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

Use ControlCenter4 Home Mode to access your machine's main features.

- Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Scan Settings for ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Change the Operation Mode in ControlCenter4 (Windows)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

## Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

Select Home Mode as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Click the **CCA** (ControlCenter4) icon in the task tray, and then click Open.
- 3. Click the Scan tab.

Control Cente	er 4			Mo	del MFC	-XXXX		•	Configurat	ion ? H	Help $\square \times$
Photo 峇	Scan	(3	PC-FAX		TI Device	Settings	i	Support			
Document Type	5	K N N	÷	Q	Ċ	<b>_</b> ,	/0				
<ul> <li>Text and Graph</li> <li>Monochrome Text</li> <li>Custom</li> <li>300 x 300 dpi</li> <li>24bit Colour</li> <li>Custom Settings</li> <li>Scan Size</li> <li>A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7)</li> <li>Scan</li> <li>Clear</li> </ul>											Save Save Print Open with an Application Send E-mail OCR
Sleep	ВК										brother //

- 4. Select the Document Type.
- 5. Change the document's Scan Size, if needed.
- 6. Click **|** (Scan).

The machine starts scanning, and the scanned image appears in the image viewer.

- 7. If you scanned multiple pages using the ADF, click the left or right arrow buttons to preview each scanned page.
- 8. Crop the scanned image, if needed.
- 9. Do one of the following:
  - Click (Save) to save scanned data.
  - Click I (Print) to print scanned data.
  - Click [] (Open with an Application) to open scanned data in another application.
  - Click (Send E-mail) to attach scanned data to an email.
  - Click (OCR) to convert your scanned document to an editable text file. (available only for certain models)

## Related Information

- Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Select Document Type Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Change Scan Size Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Crop a Scanned Image Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Print Scanned Data Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Open with an Application Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Select Document Type Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

# Select Document Type Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

• Select the **Document Type** option that matches the type of original you want to scan.

<b>Control</b> Cent	er 4		Model	MFC-XXXX	•	Configuration	? Hel	P = □ ×
Photo 合	Scan	PC-FAX	TX o	evice Settings	Support			
Document Type		×, +	Q		/0			
<ul> <li>Text and Graph</li> <li>Monochrome Text</li> <li>Custom</li> <li>300 x 300 dpi</li> <li>24bit Colour</li> <li>Custom Settings</li> <li>Scan Size</li> <li>A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7) </li> <li>Scan</li> <li>Clear</li> </ul>								Save Save Print Open with an Application Send E-mail OCR
Sleep	с 🔽 вк						b	rother //.

Option	Description
Photo	600 x 600 dpi 24bit Colour
Text and Graph	300 x 300 dpi 24bit Colour
Monochrome Text	200 x 200 dpi Black & White
Custom	<b>300 x 300 dpi (24bit Colour</b> as default) Select the scan settings you want from the <b>Custom Settings</b> button.

## **Related Information**

- Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Custom Scan Settings (Windows)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Select Document Type Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Custom Scan Settings (Windows)

# **Custom Scan Settings (Windows)**

Select Custom in the Document Type list to change advanced scan settings.

Select **Custom**, and then click the **Custom Settings** button.

The Custom Scan Settings dialog box appears.

Custom Scan Settings	
Resolution 300 x 300 dpi	Brightness
Scan Type 24bit Colour	Contrast
Continuous Scanning	
2-sided Scanning	
Long-edge binding	ID Card Scan
Short-edge binding	
Default Advanced Settings	OK Cancel Help

You can change the following settings:

#### Resolution

Select a scanning resolution from the **Resolution** drop-down list. Higher resolutions take more memory and transfer time, but produce a finer scanned image.

#### Scan Type

Select from a range of scan colour depths.

- Auto

Use for any type of document. This mode automatically picks an appropriate colour depth for the document.

- Black & White

Use for text or line art images.

Grey (Error Diffusion)

Use for photographic images or graphics. (Error Diffusion is a method for creating simulated grey images without using true grey dots. Black dots are put in a specific pattern to give a grey appearance.)

- True Grey

Use for photographic images or graphics. This mode is more accurate because it uses up to 256 shades of grey.

- 24bit Colour

Use to create an image with the most accurate colour reproduction. This mode uses up to 16.8 million colours to scan the image, but it requires the most memory and has the longest transfer time.

#### **Brightness**

Set the **Brightness** level by dragging the slider to the right or left to lighten or darken the image. If the scanned image is too light, set a lower brightness level and scan the document again. If the image is too dark, set a higher brightness level and scan the document again. You can also type a value into the field to set the **Brightness** level.

#### Contrast

Increase or decrease the **Contrast** level by moving the slider to the right or left. An increase emphasises dark and light areas of the image, while a decrease reveals more details in grey areas. You can also type a value into the field to set the **Contrast** level.

#### Auto Crop

Scan multiple documents placed on the scanner glass. The machine will scan each document and create separate files or a single multi-page file.

#### **Continuous Scanning**

Select this option to scan multiple pages. After a page is scanned, select either continue scanning or finish.

#### 2-sided Scanning

Select this check box to scan both sides of the document. When using the Automatic 2-sided Scan feature, you must select the **Long-edge binding** or **Short-edge binding** option, depending on the layout of your original, to make sure the data file you create appears correctly. (Available only for certain models)

#### **ID Card Scan**

Select this check box to scan both sides of an identification card onto one page.

#### **Advanced Settings**

Configure advanced settings by clicking the Advanced Settings button in the Scan Settings dialog box.

Remove Bleed-through / Pattern

#### Remove Background Colour

Remove the base colour of documents to make the scanned data more legible. (Available only for certain models)

#### - Rotate Image

Rotate the scanned image.

#### - Skip Blank Page

Remove the document's blank pages from the scanning results. (Available only for certain models)

#### - Display Scanning Results

Show the numbers of total pages saved and blank pages skipped on your computer screen. (Available only for certain models)

#### - ADF Auto Deskew

When scanning the document from the ADF, the machine corrects skewing of the document automatically. (Available only for certain models)

### **Related Information**

- Select Document Type Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Important Note

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Change Scan Size Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

# Change Scan Size Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

Algo         Scon         PCFAX         TX         Device Settings         Support           Document Type         Image: Constant Con	Control Center 4	Model MFC-XXXX   Configuration ? Help	×
Image: Control       Image: Control         Image: Control       Image: Con	Photo 峇 Scan	PC-FAX TX Device Settings Support	
Image: Photo       Image: Photo			
2 in 1(A4) 2 in 1(Letter) 2 in 1(B5) 2 in 1(A5) Related Information	<ul> <li>Text and Graph</li> <li>Monochrome Text</li> <li>Custom</li> <li>300 x 300 dpi</li> <li>24bit Colour</li> <li>Custom Settings</li> </ul> Scan Size A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 • A3 297 x 420 mm (11.7 x 16.5 in) Ledger 279.4 x 431.8 mm (11 x 17 in) JIS B4 257 x 364 mm (10.1 x 14.3 in) A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 in) JIS B5 182 x 257 mm (7.2 x 10.1 in) Letter 215.9 x 379.4 mm (8 1/2 x 11 in) Legal 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8 1/2 x 11 in) Legal 215.9 x 330.2 mm (8 1/2 x 11 in) Legal 215.9 x 330.2 mm (8 46 x 13.58 in) Robit 215.9 x 330.2 mm (8 46 x 13.58 in) A5 148 x 210 mm (5.8 x 8.3 in) JIS B6 128 x 182 mm (7 1/4 x 10 1/2 in) Business Card 90 x 60 mm (7 1/4 x 10 1/2 in) Business Card 90 x 60 mm (7 1/4 x 10 1/2 in) Business Card 90 x 60 mm (7 1/4 x 10 1/2 in) Business Card 90 x 60 mm (7 1/4 x 10 1/2 in) Business Card 90 x 60 mm (7 1/4 x 10 1/2 in) Business Card 90 x 60 mm (7 1/4 x 10 1/2 in) Business Card 90 x 60 mm (7 1/4 x 10 1/2 in) Business Card 90 x 60 mm (7 1/4 x 10 1/2 in) Business Card 90 x 60 mm (5.8 x 7.9 in) 10 x 15 cm (4 x 6 in) S 9 x 13 cm (3.5 x 5 in) 13 x 18 cm (5 x 7 in) Postcard 1 100 x 148 mm (3.9 x 5.8 in) Postcard 2 (Double) 148 x 200 mm (5.8 x 7.9 in) 11 to 2 ((Ad) 11 to 2 ((Ad) 11 (Ad) 21 n ((Af) 21		Save Print Print Open with an Application Send E-mail OCR

For faster scan speeds, select the exact size of your document from the Scan Size drop-down menu.

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Crop a Scanned Image Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

# Crop a Scanned Image Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

The crop tool on the Image Editing Toolbar lets you trim unwanted areas from your scanned image. Use the **Zoom In** and **Zoom Out** tools to help view the image to be cropped.

#### Image Editing Toolbar



#### 1. Restart

Cancels all the edits applied to the selected image. The edited image returns to its original state.

#### 2. Fit to Window

Displays the scanned image so that the entire image fits in the window.

#### 3. Zoom In

Zooms in on the scanned image.

#### 4. Zoom Out

Zooms out of the scanned image.

#### 5. Crop and Edit

Removes the outer parts of the image. Click the **Crop and Edit** button, and then change the frame to contain the area you want to keep after cropping.

#### 6. Page Counter

Ø

Indicates the page number of the scanned page currently shown in the image viewer. To display a different page, select the desired page number from the drop-down page number list.

If you have scanned multiple pages, you can see the next or previous scanned page by clicking the left or right arrow buttons in the preview window.

- 1. Scan a document.
- 2. Click Crop and Edit) to edit the scanned image.

The Crop and Edit - ControlCenter4 window appears.



- a. Expands the scanned image so that the entire image fits in the window.
- b. Zooms in on the image.
- c. Zooms out of the image.
- d. Rotates the image counter-clockwise 90 degrees.
- e. Rotates the image clockwise 90 degrees.
- f. Click and drag the frame to adjust the area to be cropped.
- 3. Click OK.

The edited image appears in the image viewer.

## Related Information

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Print Scanned Data Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

# Print Scanned Data Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

Scan a document on your Brother machine, and then print copies using the printer driver features that are available in ControlCenter4.

- 1. Scan a document.
- 2. Click Print.



- a. Shows which images are currently selected, and how many copies of each image will print.
- b. Click the Properties button to change specific printer settings.
- c. Select the **Paper Size**, **Media Type** and **Layout** options. The current settings are enclosed in a blue square.
- 3. Configure the print settings, and then click the Start Printing button.

#### Related Information

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Open with an Application Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

# **Open with an Application Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)**

The Open with an Application button lets you scan an image directly into your graphics application for editing.

- 1. Click the **Open with an Application** button.
- Select the application from the drop-down list, and then click OK. The image will be opened in the application you have selected.

## Related Information

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

## Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

Select Home Mode as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Click the **CC4** (ControlCenter4) icon in the task tray, and then click Open.
- 3. Click the Scan tab.

Control Cen	ter 4			M	odel MF	C-XXXX		•	Configuration	n ? Hel	p ×
Photo 🖴	Scan	đ	PC-FAX		TI Device	Settings		Support			
Document Type	5	R N K N	÷	Q	Ċ		/0				
<ul> <li>Text and Graph</li> <li>Monochrome Text</li> <li>Custom</li> <li>Custom</li> <li>24bit Colour</li> </ul> Custom Settings           Scan Size           A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7)           Scan           Clear											Save Save Print Open with an Application Send E-mail OCR
Sleep	С 🔽 вк									b	rother //

- 4. Select the Document Type.
- 5. Change the size of your document, if needed.
- 6. Click 📫 (Scan).

The machine starts scanning, and the scanned image appears in the image viewer.

- 7. Click the left or right arrow buttons to preview each scanned page.
- 8. Click Save.

The Save dialog box appears.

9. Click the File Type drop-down list, and then select a PDF file.

File Type			File Size Pi	
PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)		<b>•</b>	Small (Speed)	Large (Quality)
File Name			(opeed)	(Quality)
CCF_000001.pdf		Change		
Scan Location				
Folder	SharePoint			
C:\Users\User\Pictures\	ControlCenter4\Scan	6	Show F	older

To save the document as a password-protected PDF, select **Secure PDF Single-Page (\*.pdf)** or **Secure PDF Multi-Page (\*.pdf)** from the **File Type** drop-down list, click **1**, and then type the password.

- 10. To change the file name, click the **Change** button, if needed.
- 11. Click the folder icon to browse and select the folder where you want to save your scanned documents.
- 12. Click OK.

Ø

The scanned document is saved to the destination folder as a PDF.

### Related Information

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

## Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

Related Models: MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

Select Home Mode as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

1. Load documents in the ADF.

To scan both sides of a document automatically, you must use the ADF, not the flatbed scanner glass.

- 2. Click the **CCA** (ControlCenter4) icon in the task tray, and then click Open.
- 3. Click the Scan tab.

Ø

Control Cente	er 4			Mod	lel MFC	C-XXXX		•	Configuration	n ?	Help _ 🗆 🗙
Photo 🖴	Scan	c i	PC-FAX		TI Device	Settings	i	Support			
Document Type	5	K N	÷	Q	<u>C</u>	<b>_</b>	/0				
<ul> <li>Text and Graph</li> <li>Monochrome Text</li> <li>Custom</li> <li>300 x 300 dpi</li> <li>24bit Colour</li> <li>Custom Settings</li> <li>Scan Size</li> <li>A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7) </li> <li>Scan</li> <li>Clear</li> </ul>											Save Save Print Open with an Application Send E-mail OCR
Sleep	ВК										brother //

- Under Document Type, select Custom, and then click the Custom Settings button. The Custom Scan Settings dialog box appears.
- 5. Select the 2-sided Scanning check box.
- 6. Select the Long-edge binding or Short-edge binding option, depending on the Original layout.
- 7. Configure other Custom Scan Settings, if needed.
- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Click 📫 (Scan).

The machine starts scanning, and the scanned image appears in the image viewer.

- 10. Click the left or right arrow buttons to preview each scanned page.
- 11. Do one of the following:
  - Click (Save) to save scanned data.

- Click [] (Print) to print scanned data.
- Click (Open with an Application) to open scanned data in another application.
- Click (Send E-mail) to attach scanned data to an email.
- Click (OCR) to convert your scanned document to an editable text file. (available only for certain models)

## Related Information

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Scan Settings for ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

# Scan Settings for ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

Settings	Applicable Features						
	Open with an Applicati on	OCR	Send E- mail	Save			
File Type	-	Yes	Yes	Yes			
Target Application	Yes	Yes	-	-			
OCR Language (Available only for certain models)	-	Yes	-	-			
File Name	-	-	-	Yes			
Scan Location	-	-	-	Yes			
Show Folder	-	-	-	Yes			
File Size Priority	-	-	Yes	Yes			

### File Type

Select the file type you want to use for the scanned data.

For Send E-mail and Save:

- Windows Bitmap (\*.bmp)
- JPEG (\*.jpg) (recommended for most users when scanning pictures)
- TIFF Single-Page (\*.tif)
- TIFF Multi-Page (\*.tif)
- Portable Network Graphics (\*.png)
- PDF Single-Page (\*.pdf) (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- PDF Multi-Page (\*.pdf) (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- PDF/A Single-Page (\*.pdf) (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- PDF/A Multi-Page (\*.pdf) (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- High Compression PDF Single-Page (\*.pdf)
- High Compression PDF Multi-Page (\*.pdf)
- Secure PDF Single-Page (\*.pdf)
- Secure PDF Multi-Page (\*.pdf)
- Searchable PDF Single-Page (\*.pdf)
- Searchable PDF Multi-Page (\*.pdf)
- **XML Paper Specification (\*.xps)** (the XML Paper Specification is available for Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10, or when using applications that support XML Paper Specification files)
- Microsoft Office Word (\*.docx) (Available only for certain models)
- Microsoft Office PowerPoint (\*.pptx) (Available only for certain models)
- Microsoft Office Excel (\*.xlsx) (Available only for certain models)

For OCR:

- Text (\*.txt)
- HTML 3.2 (\*.htm)
- HTML 4.0 (\*.htm)
- Searchable PDF Single-Page (\*.pdf)
- Searchable PDF Multi-Page (\*.pdf)
- WordPad (\*.rtf)

- RTF Word 2000 (\*.rtf)
- WordPerfect 9, 10 (\*.wpd)
- Microsoft Excel 2003, XP (\*.xls)

#### **Target Application**

Select the destination application from the drop-down list.

#### **OCR Language**

Set the optical character recognition (OCR) language to match the language of the scanned document's text (Available only for certain models).

#### File Name

Click Change to change the file name's prefix.

#### **Scan Location**

Select the **Folder** or **SharePoint** radio button to specify the destination where you want to save your scanned documents.

#### **Show Folder**

Select this option to automatically display the destination folder after scanning.

#### **File Size Priority**

Adjust the data compression ratio of the scanned image. Change the file size by moving the **File Size Priority** slider to the right or left.

#### **Custom Settings**

Select the Custom option, click the Custom Settings button, and then change settings.

#### Scan Size

Select the exact size of your document from the Scan Size drop-down menu.



## **Related Information**

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

## Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode gives you more control over the details of your machine's features and allows you to customise one-button scan actions.

- Scan Photos and Graphics Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Scan Both Sides of an ID Card Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Scan to Email Attachment Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Scan to an Editable Text File (OCR) Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Scan to an Office File Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Scan Settings for ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Change the Operation Mode in ControlCenter4 (Windows)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows) > Scan Photos and Graphics Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

# Scan Photos and Graphics Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

Send scanned photos or graphics directly to your computer.



Select Advanced Mode as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Click the **cc4** (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
- 3. Click the Scan tab.



4. Click the **Image** button.

The scan settings dialog box appears.

mage - ControlCenter4	×
File Type	File Size Priority
JPEG (*.jpg)	. Small Large (Speed) (Quality)
Target Application	
Windows Photo Viewer 🗸	
File Name	
CCI_000001.jpg Chan	ge
Destination Folder	
C:\Users\User\Pictures\ControlCenter4\Scan	<b>a</b>
PreScan	
Resolution	Brightness
300 x 300 dpi 🔹	
Scan Type	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
24bit Colour 🔹	Contrast
Document Size	
A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 in)	0
	Continuous Scanning
💼 💷 2-sided Scanning	
Long-edge binding	
Short-edge binding	
	ID Card Scan
Don't show me again.	
Default Advanced Settings	Scan Cancel Help

- 5. Change the scan settings, such as file format, file name, destination folder, resolution and colour, if needed.
  - To change the file name, click **Change**.
  - To change **Destination Folder**, click the folder icon.
  - To preview and configure the scanned image, select the **PreScan** check box.
- 6. Click Scan.

Ø

The machine starts scanning. The image opens in the application you have selected.



Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows) > Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

## Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

Scan documents and save them to a folder on your computer as PDF files.



Select Advanced Mode as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Click the **CCA** (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
- 3. Click the Scan tab.



#### 4. Click the File button.

The scan settings dialog box appears.

File - ControlCenter4	×
File Type	File Size Priority
PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)	✓ Small Large (Gased) (Quelity)
File Name	(Speed) (Quality)
CCF_000003.pdf	Change
Scan Location	
Folder SharePoint	Show Save As Window
C:\Users\User\Pictures\ControlCenter4\Scan	🔄 🗹 Show Folder
PreScan	
Resolution	Brightness
300 x 300 dpi	
Scan Type	0
24bit Colour	<ul> <li>Contrast</li> </ul>
Document Size	
A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 in)	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	Continuous Scanning
Cong-edge binding	
Short-edge binding	ID Card Scan
Don't show me again.	
Default Advanced Settings	Scan Cancel Help

5. Click the File Type drop-down list, and then select a PDF file.

To save the document as a password-protected PDF, select **Secure PDF Single-Page (\*.pdf)** or **Secure PDF Multi-Page (\*.pdf)** from the **File Type** drop-down list, click **1**, and then type the password.

- 6. Click the folder icon to browse and select the folder where you want to save your scanned documents.
- 7. Change the scan settings, such as file format, file name, resolution and colour, if needed.

To preview and configure the scanned image, select the **PreScan** check box.

8. Click Scan.

Ø

The machine starts scanning. The file is saved in the folder you selected.

<ul> <li>Image: A start of the start of</li></ul>	Re	lated	l Info	ormat	tion	
	-		-			

Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows) > Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

# Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

Related Models: MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

Select Advanced Mode as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

1. Load documents in the ADF.

To scan both sides of a document automatically, you must use the ADF, not the flatbed scanner glass.

- 2. Click the **CC** (ControlCenter4) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
- 3. Click the Scan tab.

Ø



- Click the button for the setting you want to change (Image, OCR, E-mail, or File). The scan settings dialog box appears.
- 5. Select the 2-sided Scanning check box.
- 6. Select the Long-edge binding or Short-edge binding option, depending on the Original layout.
- 7. Change the scan settings, such as file format, file name, destination folder, resolution and colour, if needed.

To change the file name, click Change.

- To change **Destination Folder**, click the folder icon.
- 8. Click Scan.

The machine starts scanning.

You have now changed the default settings for your selected Scan to action. These settings will be used the next time one of the scan options (Image, OCR, E-mail, or File) is selected for this action.



Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows) > Scan Both Sides of an ID Card Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

# Scan Both Sides of an ID Card Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

Select Advanced Mode as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

- 1. Place an ID card on the scanner glass.
- 3. Click the Scan tab.

Con	<b>trol</b> Center 4	Model MFC-XXXX	-	X
		11   👗		Configuration ?
— Scan				
Settings	Choose from the vario settings and set new	ous Scan options. By right clickir defaults.	ng on a button you can cor	nfigure the advanced scan
	Image	OCR	E-mail	File
Ready	МСУВК			brother

#### 4. Click the File button.

The scan settings dialog box appears.

File - ControlCenter4	
File Type	File Size Priority
PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)	✓ Small Large
File Name	(Speed) (Quality)
CCF_000003.pdf	Change
Scan Location	
Folder SharePoint	Show Save As Window
C:\Users\User\Pictures\ControlCenter4\Scan	🔄 🔽 Show Folder
PreScan	
Resolution	Brightness
300 x 300 dpi	▼
Scan Type	0
24bit Colour	▼ Contrast
Document Size	
A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 in)	- O
	Continuous Scanning
2-sided Scanning	
Long-edge binding	
Short-edge binding	
	ID Card Scan
Don't show me again.	
Default Advanced Settings	Scan Cancel Help

5. Select the **ID Card Scan** check box.

The instruction dialog box appears.

- 6. Read the instructions on the screen, and then press **OK**.
- 7. Change the scan settings, such as file format, file name, scan location, resolution and colour, if needed.
- 8. Click Scan.

The machine starts scanning one side of the identification card.

- 9. After the machine has scanned one side, turn over the identification card, and then click **Continue** to scan the other side.
- 10. Click Finish.

#### Related Information

Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows) > Scan to Email Attachment Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

# Scan to Email Attachment Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

Send a scanned document as an email attachment.



• Select Advanced Mode as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

• The Scan to Email feature does not support Webmail services. Use the Scan to Image or Scan to File feature to scan a document or a picture, and then attach the scanned file to an email message.

The machine scans to your default email client.

1. Load your document.

Ø

- 2. Click the **CCA** (ControlCenter4) icon in the task tray, and then click Open.
- 3. Click the Scan tab.



4. Click the **E-mail** button.

The scan settings dialog box appears.

-mail - ControlCenter4	
File Type	File Size Priority
PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)	Small Large
File Name	(Speed) (Quality)
CCE_000001.pdf	Change
Destination Folder	
C:\Users\User\Pictures\ControlCenter4\Email	
PreScan	
Resolution	Brightness
200 x 200 dpi	·
Scan Type	
24bit Colour	<ul> <li>Contrast</li> </ul>
Document Size	
A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 in)	• • • • • •
·	Continuous Scanning
	Continuous Scanning
💓 🔄 🗌 2-sided Scanning	
Long-edge binding	
Short-edge binding	ID Card Scan
Don't show me again.	
Default Advanced Settings	Scan Cancel Help

- 5. Change the scan settings, such as file format, file name, destination folder, resolution and colour, if needed.
  - To change the file name, click Change.
  - To change **Destination Folder**, click the folder icon.
  - To preview and configure the scanned image, select the **PreScan** check box.
- 6. Click Scan.

Ø

The machine starts scanning. Your default email application opens and the scanned image is attached to a new, blank email message.



Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows) > Scan to an Editable Text File (OCR) Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

# Scan to an Editable Text File (OCR) Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

Your machine can convert characters in a scanned document to text using optical character recognition (OCR) technology. You can edit this text using your preferred text-editing application.



- Select Advanced Mode as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.
- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Click the **CCA** (ControlCenter4) icon in the task tray, and then click Open.
- 3. Click the Scan tab.



4. Click the **OCR** button.

The scan settings dialog box appears.

OCR - ControlCenter4	
File Type	OCR Language
Text (*.txt)	▼ English ▼
Target Application	
Notepad	<b>•</b>
File Name	
CCO_000001.txt	Change
Destination Folder	
C:\Users\User\Pictures\ControlCenter4\OCR	
PreScan	
Resolution	Brightness
300 x 300 dpi	▼
Scan Type	0
Black & White	▼ Contrast
Document Size	
A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 in)	
	Continuous Scanning
📷 🔄 2-sided Scanning	
Long-edge binding	
Short-edge binding	ID Card Scan
Don't show me again.	
Default Advanced Settings	Scan Cancel Help

- 5. Change the scan settings, such as file format, file name, destination folder, resolution and colour, if needed.
  - To change the file name, click **Change**.
  - To change **Destination Folder**, click the folder icon.
  - To preview and configure the scanned image, select the PreScan check box.
- 6. Click Scan.

Ø

The machine scans the document, converts it to editable text, and then sends it to your default word processing application.



Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows) > Scan to an Office File Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

# Scan to an Office File Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

Your machine can convert scanned data to a Microsoft Word, Microsoft PowerPoint, or Microsoft Excel file.

- Select Advanced Mode as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.
- To use this feature, your computer must be connected to the Internet.
- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Click the **CCA** (ControlCenter4) icon in the task tray, and then click Open.
- 3. Click the Scan tab.

Contr	ol Center 4 Model	MFC-XXXX	-		X
				Configuration	?
<u> </u>					
Settings	Choose from the various Scan settings and set new defaults.		ng on a button you can cor	figure the advanced scan	
		$[\mathbf{T}]$			
	Image	OCR	E-mail	File	
Ready	🕺 😋 🍸 ВК			brothe	<b>x</b>

- Click the E-mail or File button. The scan settings dialog box appears.
- 5. Click the File Type drop-down list, and then select the Microsoft Office Word (\*.docx), Microsoft Office PowerPoint (\*.pptx), or Microsoft Office Excel (\*.xlsx) option.
- 6. Change the scan settings, if needed.
- 7. Click the Scan button.

If a message dialog box regarding the Internet connection appears, read the information and click OK.

# Related Information

Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows) > Scan Settings for ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

# Scan Settings for ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

Settings	Applicable Features			
	Image	OCR	E-mail	File
File Type	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Target Application	Yes	Yes	-	-
OCR Language (Available only for certain models)	-	Yes	-	-
File Name	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Destination Folder	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
Scan Location	-	-	-	Yes
Show Folder	-	-	-	Yes
Show Save As Window	-	-	-	Yes
File Size Priority	Yes	-	Yes	Yes
PreScan	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Resolution	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Scan Type	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Document Size	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Brightness	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Contrast	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Continuous Scanning	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
2-sided Scanning (Available only for certain models)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Auto Crop	Yes	-	Yes	Yes
ID Card Scan	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Advanced Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Default	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

## File Type

Select the file type you want to use for the scanned data.

For Image, E-mail and File:

- Windows Bitmap (\*.bmp)
- JPEG (\*.jpg) (recommended for most users when scanning pictures)
- TIFF Single-Page (\*.tif)
- TIFF Multi-Page (\*.tif)
- Portable Network Graphics (\*.png)
- PDF Single-Page (\*.pdf) (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- **PDF Multi-Page (\*.pdf)** (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- PDF/A Single-Page (\*.pdf) (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- PDF/A Multi-Page (\*.pdf) (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- High Compression PDF Single-Page (\*.pdf)
- High Compression PDF Multi-Page (\*.pdf)
- Secure PDF Single-Page (\*.pdf)
- Secure PDF Multi-Page (\*.pdf)
- Searchable PDF Single-Page (\*.pdf)

#### • Searchable PDF Multi-Page (\*.pdf)

XML Paper Specification (\*.xps) (the XML Paper Specification is available for Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10, or when using applications that support XML Paper Specification files)
 For OCR:

• Text (\*.txt)

- HTML 3.2 (\*.htm)
- HTML 4.0 (\*.htm)
- Searchable PDF Single-Page (\*.pdf)
- Searchable PDF Multi-Page (\*.pdf)
- WordPad (\*.rtf)
- RTF Word 2000 (\*.rtf)
- WordPerfect 9, 10 (\*.wpd)
- Microsoft Excel 2003, XP (\*.xls)

For E-mail and File:

- Microsoft Office Word (\*.docx) (Available only for certain models)
- Microsoft Office PowerPoint (\*.pptx) (Available only for certain models)
- Microsoft Office Excel (\*.xlsx) (Available only for certain models)

#### **Target Application**

Select the destination application from the drop-down list.

#### **OCR Language**

Set the optical character recognition (OCR) language to match the language of the scanned document's text (Available only for certain models).

#### File Name

Click Change to change the file name's prefix.

#### **Destination Folder**

Click the folder icon to browse and select the folder where you want to save your scanned documents.

#### **Scan Location**

Select the **Folder** or **SharePoint** radio button to specify the destination where you want to save your scanned documents.

#### **Show Folder**

Select this option to automatically display the destination folder after scanning.

#### Show Save As Window

Select this option to specify the scanned image's destination every time you scan.

#### **File Size Priority**

Adjust the data compression ratio of the scanned image. Change the file size by moving the **File Size Priority** slider to the right or left.

#### PreScan

Select PreScan to preview your image and crop unwanted portions before scanning.

#### Resolution

Select a scanning resolution from the **Resolution** drop-down list. Higher resolutions take more memory and transfer time, but produce a finer scanned image.

#### Scan Type

Select from a range of scan colour depths.

#### Auto

Use for any type of document. This mode automatically picks an appropriate colour depth for the document.

#### Black & White

Use for text or line art images.

#### • Grey (Error Diffusion)

Use for photographic images or graphics. (Error Diffusion is a method for creating simulated grey images without using true grey dots. Black dots are put in a specific pattern to give a grey appearance.)

#### True Grey

Use for photographic images or graphics. This mode is more accurate because it uses up to 256 shades of grey.

#### 24bit Colour

Use to create an image with the most accurate colour reproduction. This mode uses up to 16.8 million colours to scan the image, but it requires the most memory and has the longest transfer time.

#### **Document Size**

Select the exact size of your document from the Document Size drop-down list.

• If you select the 1 to 2 (A4) option, the scanned image will be divided into two A5-size documents.

#### **Brightness**

Set the **Brightness** level by dragging the slider to the right or left to lighten or darken the image. If the scanned image is too light, set a lower brightness level and scan the document again. If the image is too dark, set a higher brightness level and scan the document again. You can also type a value into the field to set the **Brightness** level.

#### Contrast

Increase or decrease the **Contrast** level by moving the slider to the right or left. An increase emphasises dark and light areas of the image, while a decrease reveals more details in grey areas. You can also type a value into the field to set the **Contrast** level.

#### **Continuous Scanning**

Select this option to scan multiple pages. After a page is scanned, select either continue scanning or finish.

#### 2-sided Scanning

Select this check box to scan both sides of the document. When using the Automatic 2-sided Scan feature, you must select the **Long-edge binding** or **Short-edge binding** option, depending on the layout of your original, to make sure the data file you create appears correctly. (Available only for certain models)

#### **Auto Crop**

Scan multiple documents placed on the scanner glass. The machine will scan each document and create separate files or a single multi-page file.

#### **ID Card Scan**

Select this check box to scan both sides of an identification card onto one page.

# **Advanced Settings**

Configure advanced settings by clicking the Advanced Settings button in the scan settings dialog box.

# Remove Bleed-through / Pattern

# - Remove Background Colour

Remove the base colour of documents to make the scanned data more legible.

# Rotate Image

Rotate the scanned image.

# Skip Blank Page

Remove the document's blank pages from the scanning results. (Available only for certain models)

#### Display Scanning Results

Show the numbers of total pages saved and blank pages skipped on your computer screen. (Available only for certain models)

## **ADF Auto Deskew**

When scanning the document from the ADF, the machine corrects skewing of the document automatically. (Available only for certain models)

#### Default

Select this option to restore all settings to their factory setting values.

# Related Information

- Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Important Note

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using Nuance<sup>™</sup> PaperPort<sup>™</sup> 14 or Other Windows Applications

# Scan Using Nuance<sup>™</sup> PaperPort<sup>™</sup> 14 or Other Windows Applications

You can use the Nuance<sup>™</sup> PaperPort<sup>™</sup> 14 application for scanning.

- To download the Nuance<sup>™</sup> PaperPort<sup>™</sup> 14 application, click (Brother Utilities), select Do More in the left navigation bar, and then click PaperPort.
- Nuance<sup>™</sup> PaperPort<sup>™</sup> 14 supports Windows Vista (SP2 or greater), Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows 10 Home, Windows 10 Pro, Windows 10 Education and Windows 10 Enterprise.
- For detailed instructions on using each application, click the application's **Help** menu, and then click **Getting Started Guide** in the **Help** ribbon.

The instructions for scanning in these steps are for PaperPort<sup>™</sup> 14. For other Windows applications, the steps will be similar. PaperPort<sup>™</sup> 14 supports both TWAIN and WIA drivers; the TWAIN driver (recommended) is used in these steps.

- Depending on the model of your machine, Nuance<sup>™</sup> PaperPort<sup>™</sup> 14 may not be included. If it is not included, you can use other software applications that support scanning.
- 1. Load your document.

Ø

2. Start PaperPort<sup>™</sup> 14.

Do one of the following:

Windows Vista and Windows 7

Using your computer, click ( ( ( ) Start) > All Programs > Nuance PaperPort 14 > PaperPort.

• Windows 8

Click [[] (PaperPort).

Windows 10

Click E > All apps > Nuance PaperPort 14 > PaperPort.

3. Click the **Desktop** menu, and then click **Scan Settings** in the **Desktop** ribbon.

The Scan or Get Photo panel appears on the left side of the screen.

- 4. Click Select.
- From the available Scanners list, select TWAIN: TW-Brother MFC-XXXX or TWAIN: TW-Brother MFC-XXXX LAN (where MFC-XXXX is the model name of your machine). To use the WIA driver, select the Brother driver that has "WIA" as the prefix.
- 6. Select the Display scanner dialog box check box in the Scan or Get Photo panel.
- 7. Click Scan.

The Scanner Setup dialog box appears.

TW-Brother MFC-XXXX ?				
Photo	Photo			
Web	Resolution	300 x 300 dpi 🔹		
	Scan Type	24bit Colour 🔹		
Text	Document Size	A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 in)		
	Brightness	0		
	Contrast	0		
	2-sided Scanning	Off		
		Advanced Settings		
	Default	Save as new profile		
+ –	PreScan	Start		

- 8. Adjust the settings in the Scanner Setup dialog box, if needed.
- 9. Click the **Document Size** drop-down list, and then select your document size.

To scan both sides of the document (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW): Automatic 2-sided scan is available only when using the ADF. You cannot use PreScan to preview an image.

- 10. Click PreScan if you want to preview your image and crop unwanted portions before scanning.
- 11. Click Start.

The machine starts scanning.

# Related Information

- Scan from Your Computer (Windows)
- TWAIN Driver Settings (Windows)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using Nuance<sup>™</sup> PaperPort<sup>™</sup> 14 or Other Windows Applications > TWAIN Driver Settings (Windows)

IV-Brother MFC-X	xxx	~
Photo	Photo	
Web	Resolution	300 x 300 dpi 🔹
Text	Scan Type	24bit Colour 🔹
TEXT	Document Size	A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 in)
	Brightness	• 0
	Contrast	0
	2-sided Scanning	Off
		Advanced Settings
	Default	Save as new profile
+ –	PreScan	Start

# **TWAIN Driver Settings (Windows)**

• Note that the item names and assignable values will vary depending on the machine.

- The Brightness option is available only when selecting the Black & White, Grey (Error Diffusion), True Grey, or 24bit Colour options from the Scan Type settings.
- The Contrast option is available only when selecting the Grey (Error Diffusion), True Grey, or 24bit Colour options from the Scan Type settings.

#### 1. Scan

Ø

Select the Photo, Web, or Text option depending on the type of document you want to scan.

Scan (Image Type)		Resolution	Scan Type
Photo	Use for scanning photo images.	300 x 300 dpi	24bit Colour
Web	Use for attaching the scanned image to web pages.	100 x 100 dpi	24bit Colour
Text	Use for scanning text documents.	200 x 200 dpi	Black & White

#### 2. Resolution

Select a scanning resolution from the **Resolution** drop-down list. Higher resolutions take more memory and transfer time, but produce a finer scanned image.

#### 3. Scan Type

Select from a range of scan colour depths.

#### Black & White

Use for text or line art images.

#### Grey (Error Diffusion)

Use for photographic images or graphics. (Error Diffusion is a method for creating simulated grey images without using true grey dots. Black dots are put in a specific pattern to give a grey appearance.)

#### • True Grey

Use for photographic images or graphics. This mode is more accurate because it uses up to 256 shades of grey.

#### 24bit Colour

Use to create an image with the most accurate colour reproduction. This mode uses up to 16.8 million colours to scan the image, but it requires the most memory and has the longest transfer time.

#### 4. Document Size

Select the exact size of your document from a selection of preset scan sizes.

If you select **Custom**, the **Custom Document Size** dialog box appears and you can specify the document size.



#### 5. Brightness

Set the **Brightness** level by dragging the slider to the right or left to lighten or darken the image. If the scanned image is too light, set a lower brightness level and scan the document again. If the image is too dark, set a higher brightness level and scan the document again. You can also type a value in the field to set the brightness level.

#### 6. Contrast

Increase or decrease the **Contrast** level by moving the slider to the right or left. An increase emphasises dark and light areas of the image, while a decrease reveals more details in grey areas. You can also type a value in the field to set the contrast level.

#### 7. 2-sided Scanning

Scan both sides of the document. When using the Automatic 2-sided Scan feature, you must select the **Long-edge binding** or **Short-edge binding** option from the **2-sided Scanning** drop-down list, so when you turn the pages, they are facing the way you want. (Available only for certain models)

#### 8. Auto Crop

Scan multiple documents placed on the scanner glass. The machine will scan each document and create separate files or a single multi-page file.

## 9. Advanced Settings

Configure advanced settings by clicking the Advanced Settings button in the Scanner Setup dialog box.

- Paper
  - Auto Deskew
    - Set the machine to correct document skewing automatically as the pages are scanned from the ADF.
  - Rotate Image
    - Rotate the scanned image.
- Enhancement
  - Background Processing
    - Remove Bleed-through / Pattern
       Prevent bleed-through.
    - Remove Background Colour

Remove the base colour of documents to make the scanned data more legible.

- Colour Drop

Select a colour to remove from the scanned image.

#### - Boldface Formatting

Emphasise the characters of the original by making them bold.

- Blurred Character Correction

Correct the broken or incomplete characters of the original to make them easier to read.

- Edge Emphasis

Make the characters of the original sharper.

- Reduce Noise

Improve and enhance the quality of your scanned images with this selection. The **Reduce Noise** option is available when selecting the **24bit Colour** option and the **300 x 300 dpi**, **400 x 400 dpi**, or **600 x 600 dpi** scan resolution.

#### • Paper Handling

- Edge Fill

Fill in the edges on four sides of the scanned image using the selected colour and range.

- Skip Blank Page

Remove the document's blank pages from the scanning results. (Available only for certain models)

- Continuous Scan

Select this option to scan multiple pages. After a page is scanned, select either continue scanning or finish.



# **Related Information**

- Scan Using Nuance<sup>™</sup> PaperPort<sup>™</sup> 14 or Other Windows Applications
- Important Note

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using Windows Photo Gallery or Windows Fax and Scan

# Scan Using Windows Photo Gallery or Windows Fax and Scan

Windows Photo Gallery or Windows Fax and Scan applications are other options that you can use for scanning.

- These applications use the WIA scanner driver.
- If you want to crop a portion of a page after pre-scanning the document, you must scan using the scanner glass (also called the flatbed).
- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Launch your scanning application. Do one of the following:
  - (Windows Photo Gallery)

Click File > Import from Camera or Scanner.

- (Windows Fax and Scan)
   Click File > New > Scan.
- 3. Select the scanner you want to use.
- 4. Click Import or OK.

#### The New Scan dialog box appears.

New Scan		<b>×</b>
Scanner: Brother M	FC-XXXX Change	
Prof <u>i</u> le:	Photo (Default)	
So <u>u</u> rce:	Flatbed 💌	
Pap <u>e</u> r size:	<b></b>	
C <u>o</u> lor format:	Color 👻	
<u>F</u> ile type:	JPG (JPEG image)	
<u>R</u> esolution (DPI):	200	
<u>B</u> rightness:	0	
<u>C</u> ontrast:	0	
Preview or scan	images as separa <u>t</u> e files	
		<u>P</u> review <u>S</u> can Cancel

5. Adjust the settings in the Scanner Setup dialog box, if needed.

The scanner resolution can be set to a maximum of 1200 dpi. If you want to scan at higher resolutions, use the **Scanner Utility** software of **Brother Utilities**.

If your machine supports 2-sided Scan and you want to scan both sides of your document, select **Feeder** (Scan both sides) as Source.

6. Click Scan.

The machine starts scanning the document.

# Related Information

- Scan from Your Computer (Windows)
- WIA Driver Settings (Windows)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using Windows Photo Gallery or Windows Fax and Scan > WIA Driver Settings (Windows)

WIA Driver Settings (Windows)

Scan using Brother MFC-XXXX	<b>—</b>
What do you want to scan? Paper source Flatbed	
Select an option below for the type of picture you want to scan.	
Color picture	
Grayscale picture	
Black and white picture or text	
Custom Settings	
You can also: Adjust the quality of the scanned picture	
Page size: (A3 297 x 420 mm (11.7 x 16.5 in) 💌	Preview Scan Cancel

#### Paper source

Select the Document Feeder or Flatbed option from the drop-down list.

#### Picture Type (Image Type)

Select Color picture, Grayscale picture, Black and white picture or text, or Custom Settings for the type of document you want to scan.

To change advanced settings, click the Adjust the quality of the scanned picture link.

#### Page size

The Page size option is available if you select the Document Feeder as the Paper source option.

Advanced Properties	<b>—</b>
Advanced Properties	
Appearance	Brightness: Contrast: 0
Resolution (DPI):	Picture type: Color picture
	OK Cancel

#### **Brightness**

Set the **Brightness** level by dragging the slider to the right or left to lighten or darken the image. If the scanned image is too light, set a lower brightness level and scan the document again. If the image is too dark, set a higher brightness level and scan the document again.

#### Contrast

Increase or decrease the **Contrast** level by moving the slider to the right or left. An increase emphasises dark and light areas of the image, while a decrease reveals more details in grey areas. You can also type a value in the field to set the contrast level.

#### **Resolution (DPI)**

Select a scanning resolution from the **Resolution (DPI)** list. Higher resolutions take more memory and transfer time, but produce a finer scanned image.

## Related Information

Scan Using Windows Photo Gallery or Windows Fax and Scan

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Install BookScan Enhancer and Whiteboard Enhancer (Windows)

# Install BookScan Enhancer and Whiteboard Enhancer (Windows)

BookScan Enhancer and Whiteboard Enhancer are image processing applications. BookScan Enhancer can automatically correct images scanned from books. Whiteboard Enhancer can clean up and enhance text and images in photos taken of a whiteboard.

These applications are not available for Windows Server series.

- The machine must be turned on and connected to the computer.
- The computer must be connected to the Internet.
- You must be logged on with Administrator access privileges.
- 1. Click **[]** (Brother Utilities).
- 2. Select your machine from the drop-down list.
- 3. Select Do More in the left navigation bar.
- 4. Click BookScan&WhiteBoard Suite and follow the on-screen instructions to install.

# Related Information

Scan from Your Computer (Windows)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Mac)

# Scan from Your Computer (Mac)

There are several ways you can use your Mac to scan photos and documents on your Brother machine. Use the software applications provided by Brother or your favourite scanning application.

- Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Scan Using TWAIN-Compliant Applications (Mac)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Mac) > Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

# Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

Use Brother's ControlCenter software to scan photos and save them as JPEGs, PDFs, or other file formats.

- Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Scan Both Sides of an ID Card Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Scan to Email Attachment Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Scan to an Editable Text File (OCR) Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Scan to an Office File Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Scan Settings for ControlCenter2 (Mac)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Mac) > Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac) > Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

# Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

Send scanned photos or graphics directly to your computer.

- 1. Load your document.
- In the Finder menu bar, click Go > Applications > Brother, and then double-click the (ControlCenter) icon.

The ControlCenter2 screen appears.

3. Click the SCAN tab.



4. Click the **Image** button.

The scan settings dialog box appears.

Target Application	
Preview	Add Delete
File Type	File size
PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)	<b>`</b>
Destination File Path	Small Large
Pictures/CCI02062016.pdf	Change
Resolution 300 x 300 dpi Scan Type 24bit Color Document Size A4 210 x 297 mm	<ul> <li>2-sided Scanning</li> <li>Long-edge binding</li> <li>Short-edge binding</li> <li>Continuous Scanning</li> <li>ID Card Scan</li> </ul>
Don't show me again.	

5. Change the scan settings, such as file format, file name, destination file path, resolution and colour, if needed.

To change the file name or destination file path, click Change.

6. Click the Start Scanning button.

Ø

The machine starts scanning. The scanned image opens in the application you have selected.



Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Mac) > Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac) > Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

# Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

- 1. Load your document.
- In the Finder menu bar, click Go > Applications > Brother, and then double-click the (ControlCenter) icon. The ControlCenter2 screen appears.
- 3. Click the SCAN tab.



4. Click the File button.

The scan settings dialog box appears.

	Scan to	o File
oftware Button		
File Name	(Date)	
CCF	02062016.pdf	Insert Date in File Name
File Type		File size
PDF Multi-Page (	'.pdf)	
		Small Large
Destination Folder		Show Save As window
Pictures	Browse	
		Show Folder
Show Scanner I Resolution	-	2-sided Scanning
300 x 300 dpi		Long-edge binding
Scan Type 24bit Color		Short-edge binding
Document Size		Continuous Scanning
A4 210 x 297 mm	0	ID Card Scan
THE TO A LOT MIN		
Don't show me a	gain.	
Restore Defaults	)	Advanced Settings
Hostore Delauts		

5. Click the File Type pop-up menu, and then select a PDF file.

To save the document as a password-protected PDF, select **Secure PDF (\*.pdf)** from the **File Type** pop-up menu, type your password in the **Password** and **Re-type Password** fields, and then click **OK**.

- 6. Change the scan settings, such as file name, destination folder, resolution and colour, if needed.
- 7. Click the **Start Scanning** button.

The machine starts scanning. The file will be saved in the folder you selected.

#### Related Information

• Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Mac) > Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac) > Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

# Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

Related Models: MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Load documents in the ADF.

To scan both sides of a document automatically, you must use the ADF, not the flatbed scanner glass.

 In the Finder menu bar, click Go > Applications > Brother, and then double-click the (ControlCenter) icon.

The ControlCenter2 screen appears.

3. Click the **SCAN** tab.



- 4. Click the scan type button (**Image**, **OCR**, **E-mail**, or **File**) you want to use. The scan settings dialog box appears.
- 5. Select the 2-sided Scanning check box.
- 6. Select the Long-edge binding or Short-edge binding option, depending on the Original layout.
- 7. Configure other settings, if needed.
- 8. Click the **Start Scanning** button.

The machine starts scanning.

You have now changed the default settings for your selected Scan to action. These settings will be used the next time this scan type (Image, OCR, E-mail, or File) is clicked for this action.

## Related Information

Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Mac) > Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac) > Scan Both Sides of an ID Card Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

# Scan Both Sides of an ID Card Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

- 1. Place an ID card on the scanner glass.
- In the Finder menu bar, click Go > Applications > Brother, and then double-click the (ControlCenter) icon.

The ControlCenter2 screen appears.

3. Click the SCAN tab.



4. Click the File button.

The scan settings dialog box appears.

	Sca	an to File
Software Button		
File Name	(Date)	
CCF	02062016.pdf	Insert Date in File Name
File Type		File size
PDF Multi-Page	(*.pdf)	<b>•</b>
		Small Large
Destination Folder		Show Save As window
Pictures	Browse	Show Folder
Show Scanner	Interface	
Resolution		2-sided Scanning
300 x 300 dpi	<u></u>	Long-edge binding
Scan Type	_	Short-edge binding
24bit Color	0	Continuous Scanning
Document Size	_	ID Card Scan
A4 210 x 297 mm	n ᅌ	ID Card Scan
Don't show me a	igain.	
Restore Defaults		Advanced Settings
		Close Start Scanning

5. Select the ID Card Scan check box.

The instruction dialog box appears.

- 6. Read the instructions on the screen, and then click  ${\bf OK}.$
- 7. Configure other settings, if needed.
- 8. Click the Start Scanning button.

The machine starts scanning one side of the identification card.

- 9. After the machine has scanned one side, turn over the identification card, and then click **Continue** to scan the other side.
- 10. Click Finish.

# Related Information

Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Mac) > Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac) > Scan to Email Attachment Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

# Scan to Email Attachment Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

Send a scanned document as an email attachment.



The Scan to Email feature does not support Webmail services. Use the Scan to Image or Scan to File feature to scan a document or a picture, and then attach the scanned file to an email message.

- 1. Load your document.
- In the Finder menu bar, click Go > Applications > Brother, and then double-click the (ControlCenter) icon.
- The ControlCenter2 screen appears.
- 3. Click the **SCAN** tab.



4. Click the E-mail button.

The scan settings dialog box appears.

E-mail Application	
Apple Mail	Add Delete
File Type	File size
PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)	
Destination File Path	Small Large
Pictures/CCE02062016.pdf	Change
<ul> <li>Show Scanner Interface</li> <li>Resolution</li> <li>200 x 200 dpi</li> <li>Scan Type</li> <li>24bit Color</li> <li>Document Size</li> <li>A4 210 x 297 mm</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>2-sided Scanning</li> <li>Long-edge binding</li> <li>Short-edge binding</li> <li>Continuous Scanning</li> <li>ID Card Scan</li> </ul>
Don't show me again.	
Restore Defaults	Advanced Settings

5. Change the scan settings, such as file format, file name, destination file path, resolution and colour, if needed.

To change the file name or destination file path, click **Change**.

6. Click the Start Scanning button.

Ø

The machine starts scanning. Your default email application opens and the scanned image is attached to a new, blank email.



Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Mac) > Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac) > Scan to an Editable Text File (OCR) Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

# Scan to an Editable Text File (OCR) Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

Your machine can convert characters in a scanned document to text using optical character recognition (OCR) technology. You can edit this text using your preferred text-editing application.



The Scan to OCR feature is available for certain languages.

- 1. Load your document.
- In the Finder menu bar, click Go > Applications > Brother, and then double-click the (ControlCenter) icon.

The **ControlCenter2** screen appears.

3. Click the SCAN tab.



4. Click the OCR button.

The scan settings dialog box appears.

Software Button	
Target Application	
Apple TextEdit	Add Delete
File Type	OCR Language
Text (*.txt)	English
Destination File Path	
Pictures/CCO02062016.txt	Change
Show Scanner Interface	
Resolution	2-sided Scanning
400 x 400 dpi 🗘	Long-edge binding
Scan Type	Short-edge binding
Black & White	0
	Continuous Scanning
Document Size	ID Card Scan
A4 210 x 297 mm	
Don't show me again.	
Restore Defaults	Advanced Settings

5. Change the scan settings, such as file format, file name, destination file path, resolution and colour, if needed.

To change the file name or destination file path, click Change.

6. Click the Start Scanning button.

Ø

The machine scans the document, converts it to editable text, and then sends it to your default word processing application.



Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Mac) > Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac) > Scan to an Office File Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

# Scan to an Office File Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

Your machine can convert scanned data to a Microsoft Word file or a Microsoft PowerPoint file.

In order to use this feature, your computer must be connected to the Internet. 1. Load your document. 2. In the Finder menu bar, click Go > Applications > Brother, and then double-click the (ControlCenter) icon. The ControlCenter2 screen appears. 3. Click the SCAN tab. 000 ControlCenter2 brother Model MFC-XXXX ۵ Configuration • Choose from the Scan options: Image, OCR, E-mail or File or configure the devices SCAN "Scan" key setting or default application settings. CUSTOM SCAN DEVICE SETTINGS OCR File Image E-mail **Control** Center

4. Click the E-mail or File button.

The scan settings dialog box appears.

5. Click the File Type pop-up menu, and then select the Microsoft Office Word (\*.docx) or Microsoft Office PowerPoint (\*.pptx) option.

If a message dialog box regarding the Internet connection appears, read the information and click OK.

- 6. Change the scan settings, if needed.
- 7. Click the Start Scanning button.

# Related Information

Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Mac) > Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac) > Scan Settings for ControlCenter2 (Mac)

# Scan Settings for ControlCenter2 (Mac)

Settings	Applicable Features			
	Image	OCR	E-mail	File
Target Application/E-mail Application	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
File Type	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
File size	Yes	-	Yes	Yes
OCR Language	-	Yes	-	-
(only available for certain models)				
Destination File Path	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
File Name	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Insert Date in File Name	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Destination Folder	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Show Save As window	-	-	-	Yes
Resolution	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Scan Type	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Document Size	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Continuous Scanning	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
2-sided Scanning	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
(available only for certain models)				
ID Card Scan	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Show Scanner Interface	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Advanced Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Restore Defaults	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

## Target Application/E-mail Application

Select which application is used to open scanned data. Only applications installed on your computer can be selected.

• Add

Add an application to the pop-up menu.

Type the application name in the **Application Name** field (up to 30 characters) and select your preferred application by clicking the **Browse** button. Select the **File Type** option from the pop-up menu.

Delete

Delete an application you have added to the pop-up menu.

Select the application from the Application Name pop-up menu, and then click Delete.

#### File Type

Select the file type you want to use for the scanned data.

## File size

Change the file size by moving the File size slider to the right or left.

## **OCR Language**

Set the optical character recognition (OCR) language to match the language of the scanned document's text (available only for certain models).

#### **Destination File Path**

Click the Change button to change the prefix of the file name and the path of the destination folder.

#### **File Name**

Type a prefix for your file name, if needed. To change the prefix for the **Image**, **OCR**, and **E-mail** features, click **Change**.

#### Insert Date in File Name

Automatically inserts the date in the file name of the scanned image. To insert the date in the file name for the **Image**, **OCR** and **E-mail** features, click **Change**.

#### **Destination Folder**

To change the folder for the **Image**, **OCR** and **E-mail** features, click **Change**. Click **Browse** to select the folder where you want to save your scanned document. Select the **Show Folder** option to automatically display the destination folder after scanning to a **File**.

#### Show Save As window

Select this option to specify the scanned image's destination every time you scan.

#### Resolution

Select a scanning resolution from the **Resolution** pop-up menu. Higher resolutions take more memory and transfer time, but produce a finer scanned image.

#### Scan Type

Select from a range of scan colour depths.

#### Black & White

Use for text or line art images.

• Gray (Error Diffusion)

Use for photographic images or graphics. (Error Diffusion is a method for creating simulated grey images without using true grey dots. Black dots are put in a specific pattern to give a grey appearance.)

True Gray

Use for photographic images or graphics. This mode is more accurate because it uses up to 256 shades of grey.

24bit Color

Use to create an image with the most accurate colour reproduction. This mode uses up to 16.8 million colours to scan the image, but it requires the most memory and has the longest transfer time.

Auto

Use for any type of document. This mode automatically picks an appropriate colour depth for the document.

#### **Document Size**

Select the exact size of your document from the Document Size pop-up menu.

• If you select the 1 to 2 (A4) option, the scanned image will be divided into two A5-size documents.

#### **Continuous Scanning**

Select this option to scan multiple pages. After a page is scanned, select either continue scanning or finish.

#### 2-sided Scanning

Select this check box to scan both sides of the document. When using the Automatic 2-sided Scan feature, you must select the **Long-edge binding** or **Short-edge binding** option, depending on the layout of your original, to make sure the created data file appears correctly. (Available only for certain models)

#### **ID Card Scan**

Select this check box to scan both sides of an identification card onto one page.

#### **Show Scanner Interface**

Select this check box to crop a portion of a scanned page after pre-scanning the document.

#### **Advanced Settings**

Configure advanced settings by clicking the Advanced Settings button in the scan settings dialog box.

#### Brightness

Set the **Brightness** level by dragging the slider to the right or left to lighten or darken the image. If the scanned image is too light, set a lower brightness level and scan the document again. If the image is too dark, set a higher brightness level and scan the document again.

#### Contrast

Increase or decrease the **Contrast** level by moving the slider to the right or left. An increase emphasise dark and light areas of the image, while a decrease reveals more details in grey areas.

#### ADF Auto Deskew

When scanning the document from the ADF, the machine corrects skewing of the document automatically. (Available only for certain models)

#### Remove Background Color

Select this option to remove the base colour of documents to make the scanned data more recognisable. When you use this feature, select from three settings: high, medium and low.

#### Skip Blank Page

Remove blank pages of the document from the scanning results. (Available only for certain models)

#### Display Scanning Results

Show the numbers of total pages saved and blank pages skipped on your computer screen. (Available only for certain models)

#### Rotate Image

Rotate the scanned image.

#### **Restore Defaults**

Select this option to restore all settings to their factory setting values.



Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Mac) > Scan Using TWAIN-Compliant Applications (Mac)

# Scan Using TWAIN-Compliant Applications (Mac)

You can also scan using TWAIN-compliant applications. For more information about the scanning procedure, see the manual for your application.

1. Start your graphics application, and then select the scan operation.

The scanner setup dialog box appears.

	Brothe	er TWAIN
Resolution 200 x 200 dpi	4.1.0	Scanning Area
Scan Type 24bit Color	٥	
Document Size A4 210 x 297 mm	0	
Width: 210 Unit: Height: 297 inch Adjust Image		
<ul> <li>2-sided Scanning</li> <li>Long-edge binding</li> <li>Short-edge binding</li> </ul>		
Rotate Image Off	٢	
? Default		Cancel Start PreScan

- 2. Change the scan settings, such as Resolution, Scan Type, or Adjust Image, if needed.
- 3. Click the Document Size pop-up menu, and then select your document size.
- 4. Click the PreScan option to preview your image and crop unwanted portions before scanning.
  - After you select a document size, adjust the scanning area by holding down the mouse button and dragging your mouse pointer over the portion you want to scan.
    - To scan both sides of the document (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW):

Automatic 2-sided scan is available only when using the ADF.

You cannot adjust the scanning area.

You cannot use PreScan to preview an image.

5. Click Start.

Ø

The machine starts scanning.

# **Related Information**

- Scan from Your Computer (Mac)
- TWAIN Driver Settings (Mac)

▲ Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Mac) > Scan Using TWAIN-Compliant Applications (Mac) > TWAIN Driver Settings (Mac)

**TWAIN Driver Settings (Mac)** 



• Item names and assignable values will vary depending on the machine.

 The Contrast setting is available only when selecting Gray (Error Diffusion), True Gray, or 24bit Color from the Scan Type options.

## 1. Resolution

Select a scanning resolution from the **Resolution** pop-up menu. Higher resolutions take more memory and transfer time, but produce a finer scanned image.

## 2. Scan Type

Select from a range of scan colour depths.

#### Black & White

Use for text or line art images.

#### • Gray (Error Diffusion)

Use for photographic images or graphics. (Error Diffusion is a method for creating simulated grey images without using true grey dots. Black dots are put in a specific pattern to give a grey appearance.)

#### True Gray

Use for photographic images or graphics. This mode is more accurate because it uses up to 256 shades of grey.

#### 24bit Color

Use to create an image with the most accurate colour reproduction. This mode uses up to 16.8 million colours to scan the image, but it requires the most memory and has the longest transfer time.

#### 3. Document Size

Select the exact size of your document from a selection of preset scan sizes.

• If you select **Custom**, you can specify the document size.

Width:	210	Unit:		
Height:	297	• mm inch		
#### 4. Adjust Image

Click the Adjust Image button to adjust other image qualities.

<ul> <li>Custom</li> <li>Brightness</li> <li>Contrast</li> </ul>	Ō
	0
ColorSync	
Intent	
Perceptual (Images)	
Scanner Profile	
Brother sRGB Scanner 🗘	
Reduce Noise	
Cancel	ОК

#### Brightness

Set the **Brightness** level by dragging the slider to the right or left to lighten or darken the image. If the scanned image is too light, set a lower brightness level and scan the document again. If the image is too dark, set a higher brightness level and scan the document again. You can also type a value in the box to set the brightness.

#### Contrast

Increase or decrease the **Contrast** level by moving the slider to the right or left. An increase emphasises dark and light areas of the image, while a decrease reveals more details in grey areas. You can also type a value in the box to set the contrast.

#### **Reduce Noise**

Improve and enhance the quality of your scanned images with this selection. The **Reduce Noise** option is available when selecting the **24bit Color** option and the **300 x 300 dpi**, **400 x 400 dpi**, or **600 x 600 dpi** scan resolutions.

#### 5. 2-sided Scanning

If you select this check box, the machine scans both sides of the document. When using the Automatic 2sided Scan feature, you must select the **Long-edge binding** or **Short-edge binding** option, depending on the layout of your original, to make sure the created data file appears correctly.

(Available only for certain models)

#### 6. Rotate Image

Rotate the scanned image.

### Related Information

Scan Using TWAIN-Compliant Applications (Mac)

▲ Home > Scan > Configure Scan Settings Using Web Based Management

## **Configure Scan Settings Using Web Based Management**

• Set the Scan Job Email Report Using Web Based Management

▲ Home > Scan > Configure Scan Settings Using Web Based Management > Set the Scan Job Email Report Using Web Based Management

## Set the Scan Job Email Report Using Web Based Management

When you scan a document, the machine will send a scan job email report automatically to the registered email address.

1. Start your web browser.

Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the IP address of the machine or the print server name). For example: http://192.168.1.2

No password is required by default. If you have previously set a password, type it, and then click →.

- 2. Click the Scan tab.
- 3. Click the Scan Job e-mail report menu in the left navigation bar.
- 4. In the Administrator Address field, type the email address.
- 5. For the scan functions you want, select **On** to send a scan job email report.
- 6. Click Submit.

### Related Information

Configure Scan Settings Using Web Based Management

#### ▲ Home > Copy

## Сору

- Copy a Document
- Enlarge or Reduce Copied Images
- Sort Copies
- Make Page Layout Copies (N in 1 or Poster)
- Copy on Both Sides of the Paper (2-sided Copy)
- Copy an ID Card
- Use the A3 Copy Shortcuts
- Copy in Ink Save Mode
- Copy Options
- Use Preset Copy Settings

## **Copy a Document**

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Make sure you have loaded the correct size paper in the paper tray.
- 2. Load your document.
- 3. Press [[Copy].

The touchscreen displays:



4. Change the copy settings, if needed.

Ø

When you load paper other than A4 size Plain Paper, you must change the [Paper Size] and [Paper Type] settings by pressing [Options].

Option	Description
×0 <u>1</u> (No. of Copies)	<ul> <li>Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:</li> <li>Press - or + on the touchscreen.</li> <li>Press x01 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press OK.</li> <li>Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.</li> </ul>
Options	Press Options to change the copy settings for the next copy only. When you have finished changing settings, press OK.
Current setting indications	<ul> <li>Press the area indicated on the screen in the previous step to change these settings for the next copy only.</li> <li>Enlarge/Reduce</li> <li>2-sided Copy</li> <li>Paper Size</li> <li>Quality</li> <li>When you have finished changing settings, press OK.</li> </ul>

After you have finished choosing new options, you can save them by pressing the [Save as Shortcut] button.

5. Press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start].

To stop copying, press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Make sure you have loaded the correct size paper in the paper tray.
- 2. Load your document.

Ø

Ø

3. Press [Copy].

The touchscreen displays:



4. Change the copy settings, if needed.

When you load paper other than A4 size Plain Paper, you must change the [Paper Size] and [Paper Type] settings by pressing [Options].

Option	Description
×0 <u>1</u> (No. of Copies)	<ul> <li>Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:</li> <li>Press - or + on the touchscreen.</li> <li>Press x01 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press OK.</li> <li>Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.</li> </ul>
Copy preset settings	<ul> <li>You can copy with a variety of settings by pressing the buttons that are already set up in the machine.</li> <li>To select these settings, press &gt;, and then swipe left or right or press &lt; or ►.</li> </ul>
Options	Press Options to change the copy settings for the next copy only. When you have finished changing settings, press OK.
Current setting indications	<ul> <li>Press the following icons to change these settings for the next copy only:</li> <li>Enlarge/Reduce</li> <li>2-sided Copy</li> </ul>

Option	Description
	• 🔳 Tray Select
	• 👰 Quality
After you have button.	finished selecting new options, you can save them by pressing the [Save as Shortcut]
5. Press [Mono St	tart] <b>or</b> [Colour Start].
To stop copying	g, press 🗙.
Related Inf	formation
<ul> <li>Copy</li> </ul>	

- Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
- Load Documents on the Scanner Glass
- Use Preset Copy Settings
- Copy Options

Home > Copy > Enlarge or Reduce Copied Images

## **Enlarge or Reduce Copied Images**

Select an enlargement or reduction ratio to resize your copied data.



>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Copy].
- 3. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press x 01 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 4. **Press** [Options] > [Enlarge/Reduce].
- 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the available options, and then press the option you want to change.
- 6. Do one of the following:
  - If you selected the [Enlarge] or [Reduce] option, press the enlargement or reduction ratio you want to use.

Press [OK].

Ø

- If you selected [100%] or the [Fit to Page] option, go to the next step.
- 7. Read and confirm the displayed list of options you have selected, and then press [OK].
- 8. When you have finished changing settings, press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start].

If you selected the [Fit to Page] option, your machine adjusts the copy size to fit the paper size set in the machine.

- The [Fit to Page] option does not work correctly when the document on the scanner glass is skewed more than three degrees. Using the document guidelines on the left and top, place your document in the upper-left corner, with the document face down on the scanner glass.
- The [Fit to Page] option is not available when using the ADF.
- The [Fit to Page] option is not available for Legal size documents.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Copy].
- 3. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press × 01 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 4. **Press** [Options] > [Enlarge/Reduce].
- 5. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the available options, and then press the option you want to change.
- 6. Do one of the following:
  - If you selected the [Enlarge] or [Reduce] option, press the enlargement or reduction ratio you want.
  - If you selected the [Custom(25-400%)] option, press (backspace) to erase the displayed percentage, or press < to move the cursor, and then enter an enlargement or reduction ratio from [25%] to [400%].</li>
    - Press [OK].
  - If you selected [100%] or the [Fit to Page] option, go to the next step.
- 7. Read and confirm the displayed list of options you have selected, and then press [OK].
- 8. When you have finished changing settings, press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start].

If you selected the [Fit to Page] option, your machine adjusts the copy size to fit the paper size set in the machine.

- The [Fit to Page] option does not work correctly when the document on the scanner glass is skewed more than three degrees. Using the document guidelines on the left and top, place your document in the upper-left corner, with the document face down on the scanner glass.
- The [Fit to Page] option is not available when using the ADF.
- The [Fit to Page] option is not available for Legal size documents.

### Related Information

Copy

Ø

Important Note

#### Home > Copy > Sort Copies

## **Sort Copies**

Sort multiple copies. Pages will be stacked in the order they are fed, that is: 1, 2, 3, and so on.

```
>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
```

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Copy].
- 3. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press  $\times 01$  to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 4. Press [Options] > [Stack/Sort] > [Sort].
- 5. Read and confirm the displayed list of settings you have selected, and then press [OK].
- 6. When you have finished changing settings, press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start]. If you placed the document in the ADF, the machine scans the document and starts printing.
- 7. If you are using the scanner glass, repeat the following steps for each page of the document:
  - Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [Continue] to scan the page.
  - After scanning all the pages, press [Finish].

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Copy].
- 3. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press x 01 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 4. To sort multiple copies, press [Options] > [Stack/Sort] > [Sort].
- 5. Read and confirm the displayed list of settings you have selected, and then press [OK].
- 6. When you have finished changing settings, press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start]. If you placed the document in the ADF, the machine scans the pages and starts printing.
- 7. If you are using the scanner glass, repeat the following steps for each page of the document:
  - Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [Continue] to scan the page.
  - After scanning all the pages, press [Finish].

Related Information

• Copy

Home > Copy > Make Page Layout Copies ( N in 1 or Poster)

# Make Page Layout Copies (N in 1 or Poster)

The N in 1 copy feature saves paper by copying two or four pages of your document onto one page of the copy. The poster feature divides your document into sections, then enlarges the sections so you can assemble them into a poster. To print a poster, use the scanner glass.



- Make sure the paper size is set to A4, A3, Letter, or Ledger.
- You can make only one Poster copy at a time.
- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Copy].
- 3. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press × 01 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 4. Press [Options] > [Page Layout].
- 5. Press  $\blacktriangle$  or  $\blacksquare$  to display the options, and then press the option you want.

Option	Description
Off(lin1)	



- 6. Read and confirm the displayed list of settings you have selected, and then press [OK].
- 7. When you have finished changing settings, press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start]. If you placed the document in the ADF or are making a poster, the machine scans the pages and starts printing.
- 8. If you are using the scanner glass, repeat the following steps for each page of the document:
  - Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [Continue] to scan the page.
  - After scanning all the pages, press [Finish].

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Copy].
- 3. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press  $\times 01$  to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 4. Press [Options] > [Page Layout].
- 5. Swipe up or down or press  $\blacktriangle$  or  $\blacksquare$  to display the options, and then press the option you want.





- 6. Read and confirm the displayed list of settings you have selected, and then press [OK].
- 7. When you have finished changing settings, press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start]. If you placed the document in the ADF or are making a poster, the machine scans the pages and starts printing.
- 8. If you are using the scanner glass, repeat the following steps for each page of the document:
  - Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [Continue] to scan the page.
  - After scanning all the pages, press [Finish].



• Copy

▲ Home > Copy > Copy on Both Sides of the Paper (2-sided Copy)

## Copy on Both Sides of the Paper (2-sided Copy)

Reduce the amount of paper you use by copying onto both sides of the paper.

- You must choose a 2-sided copy layout from the following options before you can start 2-sided copying.
- The layout of your original document determines which 2-sided copy layout you should choose.
- We recommend loading single-sided documents in the ADF for 2-sided copying.
- (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)
   You can copy 2-sided documents automatically up to A4 size using the ADF.
- (MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW)
   When you manually make 2 sided copies from a 2-sided document, use the scanner glass.
- You can use only A4, A5, or Letter size plain paper.

#### Portrait

#### 1-sided to 2-sided (Long Edge Flip)



1-sided to 2-sided (Short Edge Flip)



2-sided to 2-sided



2-sided to 1-sided (Long Edge Flip)



2-sided to 1-sided (Short Edge Flip)



Landscape

1-sided to 2-sided (Long Edge Flip)



1-sided to 2-sided (Short Edge Flip)







### 2-sided to 1-sided (Long Edge Flip)



2-sided to 1-sided (Short Edge Flip)



>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Copy].
- 3. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press × 01 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 4. To sort multiple copies, press [Options] > [Stack/Sort] > [Sort].
- 5. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [2-sided Copy] option, and then press it.
- 6. Do one of the following:
  - To make 2-sided copies from a 1-sided document, follow these steps:
    - a. To change the layout options, press [Layout], and then press [Long Edge Flip] or [Short Edge Flip].
    - b. Press [1-sided⇒2-sided].
  - To make 2-sided copies of a 2-sided document manually, press [2-sided⇒2-sided].

Use the scanner glass to make 2-sided copies of a 2-sided document manually.

- 7. Review your settings on the touchscreen, and then press [OK].
- 8. Press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start]. If you placed the document in the ADF, the machine scans the pages and starts printing.
- 9. If you are using the scanner glass, repeat the following steps for each page of the document:
  - Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [Continue] to scan the page.
  - After scanning all the pages, press [Finish].

DO NOT touch the printed page until it is ejected the second time. The machine will print the first side and eject the paper, and then pull the paper in to print the second side.

If you experience smudged printouts or paper jams, press [Settings] > [Maintenance] > [Print Setting Options] > [Reduce Smudging], and then change settings.

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Copy].

Ø

3. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:

- Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
- Press  $\times 01$  to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
- Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 4. To sort multiple copies, press [Options] > [Stack/Sort] > [Sort].
- 5. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [2-sided Copy] option, and then press it.
- 6. Do one of the following:
  - To make 2-sided copies from a 1-sided document, follow these steps:
    - a. To change the layout options, press [Layout], and then press [Long Edge Flip] or [Short Edge Flip].
    - b. Press [1-sided $\Rightarrow$ 2-sided].
  - To make 2-sided copies of a 2-sided document automatically, press [2-sided⇒2-sided].

Load your document in the ADF to use the automatic 2-sided copy feature.

- To make 1-sided copies from a 2-sided document, follow these steps:
  - a. To change the layout options, press [Layout], and then press [Long Edge Flip] or [Short Edge Flip].
  - b. Press [2-sided⇒1-sided].

Load your document in the ADF to use the automatic 2-sided copy feature.

- 7. Review your settings on the touchscreen, and then press [OK].
- 8. Press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start]. If you placed the document in the ADF, the machine scans the pages and starts printing.
- 9. If you are using the scanner glass, repeat the following steps for each page of the document:
  - Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [Continue] to scan the page.
  - After scanning all the pages, press [Finish].

DO NOT touch the printed page until it is ejected the second time. The machine will print the first side and eject the paper, and then pull the paper in to print the second side.





- Copy
- Change the Print Setting Options When Having Printing Problems

## Copy an ID Card

Use the [2in1(ID)] feature to copy both sides of an identification card onto one page, keeping the original card size.



- Make sure the paper size is set to A4 or Letter.
- You may copy an identification card to the extent permitted under applicable laws. For more detailed information, see the *Product Safety Guide*.
- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Place your identification card face down near the upper-left corner of the scanner glass.



- a. 3 mm or greater (top, left)
- b. 207 mm
- c. 145 mm
- d. scannable area
- 2. Press [Copy].
- 3. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press × 01 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 4. Press [Options] > [Page Layout] > [2in1(ID)].
- 5. Read and confirm the displayed list of settings you have selected. When you have finished changing settings, press [OK].
- 6. Press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start].

The machine starts scanning one side of the identification card.

7. After the machine has scanned the first side, turn over the identification card and press [Continue] to scan the other side.

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Place your identification card face down near the upper-left corner of the scanner glass.



- a. 3 mm or greater (top, left)
- b. 207 mm
- c. 145 mm
- d. scannable area
- 2. Press [[Copy].
- 3. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press  $\times 01$  to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 4. Press [Options] > [Page Layout] > [2in1(ID)].
- 5. Read and confirm the displayed list of settings you have selected. When you have finished changing settings, press [OK].
- 6. Press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start].

The machine starts scanning one side of the identification card.

7. After the machine has scanned the first side, turn over the identification card and press [Continue] to scan the other side.



• Copy

# **Use the A3 Copy Shortcuts**

You can copy your document in A3 or Ledger size paper with a format, such as Note style. Also you can make 2 in 1 and enlarged copies.

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press < or ▶ to display the [A3 Copy Shortcuts] option, and then press it.
- 3. If information appears on the touchscreen, read it, and then press [OK] to confirm.
- 4. Press ◀ or ▶ to display options, and then press the option you want.



- 5. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press  $\times 01$  to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 6. Do one of the following:
  - To change more settings, go to the next step.
  - When you have finished changing settings, press the [Mono Start] or [Colour Start] option to start copying.

- 7. Press [Options].
- 8. Press the setting you want to change.
- 9. Press your new option.
- 10. Repeat the last two steps to change other settings if needed.
- 11. When you have finished changing settings, press [OK].
- 12. Press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start].
- 13. If you are using the scanner glass when choosing the [A3 2in1] option, repeat the following steps for each page of the document:
  - Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [Continue] to scan the page.
  - After scanning all the pages, press [Finish].

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Swipe left or right or press < or ▶ to display [A3 Copy Shortcuts], and then press it.
- 3. If information appears on the touchscreen, read it, and then press [OK] to confirm.
- 4. Swipe left or right or press ◀ or ► to display options, and then press the option you want.



- 5. Press [OK].
- 6. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press x 01 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].

- Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 7. Do one of the following:
  - To change more settings, go to the next step.
  - When you have finished changing settings, press the [Mono Start] or [Colour Start] button to start copying.
- 8. Press [Options].
- 9. Press the setting you want to change.
- 10. Press your new option. Repeat the previous step and this step to change other settings as needed.
- 11. When you have finished changing settings, press [OK].
- 12. Press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start].
- 13. If you are using the scanner glass when choosing the [A3 2in1] option, repeat the following steps for each page of the document:
  - Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [Continue] to scan the page.
  - After scanning all the pages, press [Finish].

## Related Information

- Copy
- Touchscreen LCD Overview

Home > Copy > Copy in Ink Save Mode

## Copy in Ink Save Mode

When you select Ink Save Mode, the machine prints the colours lighter and emphasises the outlines of the images.



- The amount of ink that is saved varies depending on the type of documents printed.
- Ink Save Mode may make your printouts look different from your original document.
- The Ink Save Mode feature is supported by technology from Reallusion, Inc.

🥪 REALLUSION

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [Copy].
- 3. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press × 01 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 4. Press [Options] > [Advanced Settings] > [Ink Save Mode].
- 5. Read and confirm the displayed list of settings you have selected, and then press [OK].
- 6. When you have finished changing settings, press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start].

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press [[Copy].
- 3. Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:
  - Press [-] or [+] on the touchscreen.
  - Press x 01 to display the keyboard on the touchscreen, and then enter the number of copies using the touchscreen keyboard. Press [OK].
  - Enter the number of copies using the dial pad.
- 4. Press [Options] > [Advanced Settings] > [Ink Save Mode].
- 5. Read and confirm the displayed list of settings you have selected, and then press [OK].
- 6. When you have finished changing settings, press [Mono Start] or [Colour Start].

### Related Information

• Copy

• Important Note

# **Copy Options**

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

To change copy settings, press the  $\ensuremath{\left[ \ensuremath{\mathsf{Options}} \ensuremath{\right]}}$  button.

Option	Description	
Quality	Select the Copy resolution for your typ	be of document.
Paper Type	Select a paper type. If copying on special paper, set the ma the best print quality.	achine for the type of paper you are using to get
Paper Size	Select a paper size. If copying on paper other than A4 size	e, you must change the Paper Size setting.
Enlarge/Reduce	100%	-
	Enlarge	Select an enlargement ratio for the next copy.
	Reduce	Select a reduction ratio for the next copy.
	Fit to Page	Adjusts the copy size to fit on the paper size you have set.
	Custom(25-400%)	Enter an enlargement or reduction ratio.
Density	Increase the density to make the text Decrease the density to make the text	
Stack/Sort	Select to stack or sort multiple copies.	
	Stack	Sort
Page Layout	Make N in 1, 2 in 1 ID, or Poster copie	28.
2-sided Copy	Select to copy on both sides of the pa	per.
	1-sided $\rightarrow$ 2-sided $1 \rightarrow 1 \rightarrow 1 \rightarrow 2 \rightarrow 2$ -sided $2$ -sided $1 \rightarrow 1 \rightarrow 1 \rightarrow 1 \rightarrow 2$	

Option	Description	
Advanced Settings	Ink Save Mode	
	Prints colours lighter and emphasises the outlines of images.	
	Thin Paper Copy	
	Avoids bleeding through thin paper when copying.	
	Book Copy	
	Corrects dark borders and skew when copying from the scanner glass.	
	Watermark Copy	
	Places text in your document as a watermark.	
	Remove Background Colour	
	Removes the document's background colour in copies. The white background becomes	
	more apparent. This saves some ink and may make certain copies easier to read.	
Set New Default	Saves the copy settings that you use most often by setting them as the default settings.	
Factory Reset	Restores any changed copy settings to the factory settings.	

You can save the current settings by pressing [Save as Shortcut].

• The Ink Save Mode, Thin Paper Copy, Book Copy and Watermark Copy features are supported by technology from Reallusion, Inc.

S REALLUSION

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

To change copy settings, press the [Options] button.

Option	Description		
Quality	Select a copy resolution for your type	of document.	
Paper Type	Select a paper type. If copying on special paper, set the ma the best print quality.	If copying on special paper, set the machine for the type of paper you are using to get	
Paper Size	Select a paper size. If copying on paper other than A4 size	e, you must change the Paper Size setting.	
Tray Select	Select the tray with the best paper typ	e and size for your document.	
Enlarge/Reduce	100%	-	
	Enlarge	Select an enlargement ratio for the next copy.	
	Reduce	Select a reduction ratio for the next copy.	
	Fit to Page	Adjusts the copy size to fit on the paper size you have set.	
	Custom(25-400%)	Enter an enlargement or reduction ratio.	
Density		Increase the density to make the text darker. Decrease the density to make the text lighter.	
Stack/Sort	Select to stack or sort multiple copies.		
	Stack	Sort	
Page Layout	Make N in 1, 2 in 1 ID, or Poster copie	28.	
		Poster	
2-sided Copy	Select to copy on both sides of the pa	per.	
	1-sided -> 2-sided $1 \rightarrow 1 \rightarrow 1 \qquad 2 \rightarrow 2$		



Option	Description	
	Remove Background Colour	
Removes the document's background colour in copies. The white background to more apparent. This saves some ink and may make certain copies easier to read		
The Ink Sa	ave the current settings by pressing [Save as Shortcut].	
	r from Reallusion, Inc. <b>REALLUSION</b>	
Related In	formation	
<ul><li>Copy</li><li>Copy a Docur</li><li>Important Not</li></ul>		

▲ Home > Copy > Use Preset Copy Settings

## **Use Preset Copy Settings**

Related Models: MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

You can copy with a variety of settings by pressing the buttons that are already set up in the machine. Press ► to access the preset copy settings.



Option	Description
Poster	Divide your document into sections for assembling them into a poster.
Ink Save	Reduce the amount of ink consumed for copies.
Book	Correct dark borders and skew when copying a book from the scanner glass.

# Related Information

- Copy
- Copy a Document
- Important Note

#### Home > Fax

## Fax

- Send a Fax
- Receive a Fax
- Voice Operations and Fax Numbers
- Telephone Services and External Devices
- Fax Reports
- PC-FAX

#### ▲ Home > Fax > Send a Fax

## Send a Fax

- Send a Fax from Your Brother Machine
- Send a 2-sided Fax from the ADF
- Send a Fax Manually
- Send a Fax at the End of a Conversation
- Send the Same Fax to More than One Recipient (Broadcasting)
- Send a Fax in Real Time
- Send a Fax at a Specified Time (Delayed Fax)
- Change the Fax Auto Redial Setting
- Cancel a Fax in Progress
- Check and Cancel a Pending Fax
- Fax Options

Home > Fax > Send a Fax > Send a Fax from Your Brother Machine

## Send a Fax from Your Brother Machine

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document in the ADF or place it on the scanner glass.
- 2. Press 📑 [Fax].

If [Fax Preview] is set to [On], press [Fax] > [Sending Faxes].

The touchscreen displays:



- 3. Enter the fax number in one of the following ways:
  - Dial Pad (Enter the fax number manually.)
     Press all digits of the number using the dial pad.
  - [Redial] (Redial the last number you dialled.) Press [Redial].
  - [Outgoing Call] (Select a number from the Outgoing Call history.)
     Press [Call History] > [Outgoing Call].
     Select the number you want, and then press [Apply].
  - [Caller ID History] (Select a number from the Caller ID history.) (Not available for Taiwan and some countries) Press [Call History] > [Caller ID History].
     Select the number you want, and then press [Apply].
  - [Address Book] (Select a number from the Address Book.)
     Press [Address Book].
     Do one of the following:
    - Select the number you want, and then press [Apply].
    - Press **Q**, and then enter the first letter of the name and press [OK]. Press the name you want to dial. If the name has two numbers, press the number you want. Press [Apply].

(available only for some countries)

If the LDAP search is available, the result will be shown on the touchscreen with

4. Change the fax settings, if needed.

Option	Description
Options	Press Options to change the fax settings for the next fax only. When finished, press OK.
Current setting	Press the area indicated on the screen to change these settings for the next fax only.
indications	• Glass Scan Size
	• Fax Resolution
	• Contrast
	When finished, press OK.

- 5. Press [Fax Start].
- 6. Do one of the following:
  - If you are using the ADF, the machine starts scanning and sending the document.
  - If you are using the scanner glass and selected [Mono] in the [Colour Setting], the machine starts scanning the first page.

Go to the next step.

• If you are using the scanner glass and selected [Colour] in the [Colour Setting], the touchscreen asks if you want to send a colour fax.

Press [Yes (Colour fax)] to confirm. The machine starts dialling and sending the document.

- 7. When the touchscreen displays [Next page?], do one of the following:
  - Press [No] when finished scanning pages. The machine starts sending the document.
  - Press [Yes] to scan another page. Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [OK]. The machine starts scanning the page.

Repeat this step for each additional page.

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document in the ADF or place it on the scanner glass.
- 2. Press 🔚 [Fax].



- 3. Enter the fax number in one of the following ways:
  - Dial Pad (Enter the fax number manually.)

Press all digits of the number using the dial pad.

- [Redial] (Redial the last number you dialled.)
   Press [Call History] > [Redial].
- [Outgoing Call] (Select a number from the Outgoing Call history.)
   Press [Call History] > [Outgoing Call].
   Select the number you want, and then press [Apply].
- [Caller ID History] (Select a number from the Caller ID history.) (Not available for Taiwan and some countries) Press [Call History] > [Caller ID History]. Select the number you want, and then press [Apply].
- [Address Book] (Select a number from the Address Book.)
   Press [Address Book].

Do one of the following:

- Select the number you want, and then press [Apply].
- Press Q, and then enter the first letter of the name and press [OK]. Press the name you want to dial. If the name has two numbers, press the number you want. Press [Apply].

(available only for some countries)

If the LDAP search is available, the result will be shown on the touchscreen with

#### 4. Change the fax settings, if needed.

Option	Description
Options	Press Options to change the fax settings for the next fax only.
	When finished, press OK.
Current setting indications	Press the following icons to change these settings for the next fax only:
	• 📶 Glass Scan Size
	• 🖺 Fax Resolution
	• ① Contrast
	• 🔽 2-sided Fax

### 5. Press [Fax Start].

- 6. Do one of the following:
  - If you are using the ADF, the machine starts scanning and sending the document.
  - If you are using the scanner glass and selected [Mono] in the [Colour Setting], the machine starts scanning the first page.

Go to the next step.

• If you are using the scanner glass and selected [Colour] in the [Colour Setting], the touchscreen asks if you want to send a colour fax.

Press [Yes (Colour fax)] to confirm. The machine starts dialling and sending the document.

- 7. When the touchscreen displays [Next Page?], do one of the following:
  - Press [No] when finished scanning pages. The machine starts sending the document.
  - Press [Yes] to scan another page. Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [OK]. The machine starts scanning the page.
Repeat this step for each additional page.

- Send a Fax
- Fax Options

▲ Home > Fax > Send a Fax > Send a 2-sided Fax from the ADF

# Send a 2-sided Fax from the ADF

```
Related Models: MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW
```

You must select a 2-sided scanning format before sending a 2-sided fax. Select either Long Edge or Short Edge, depending on the layout of your document.

- 1. Load your document in the ADF.
- 2. Press 📑 [Fax].

If [Fax Preview] is set to [On], press [Fax] > [Sending Faxes].

- 3. Press [Options] > [2-sided Fax].
- 4. Do one of the following:
  - If your document is flipped on the Long edge, press the [2-sided Scan: Long Edge] option.
  - If your document is flipped on the Short edge, press the [2-sided Scan: Short Edge] option.
- 5. Press [OK].
- 6. Enter the fax number.
- 7. Press [Fax Start].

## Related Information

· Send a Fax

# Send a Fax Manually

Manual fax transmission lets you hear the dialling, ringing and fax-receiving tones while sending a fax.

```
>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
```

```
>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW
```

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

#### (Not available in South Africa)

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press 📑 [Fax].

If [Fax Preview] is set to [On], press [Fax] > [Sending Faxes].

- 3. Press [Hook] and listen for a dial tone.
- 4. Enter the fax number.
- 5. When you hear fax tones, press [Fax Start].
  - If you are using the scanner glass, press [Send].

#### (For South Africa only)

To send a fax manually, do the following:

Load your document. To listen for a dial tone, pick up the handset of the external telephone. Dial the fax number using the external telephone. When you hear fax tones, press and then press [Fax Start]. If you are using the scanner glass, press [Send]. Replace the handset of the external phone.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### (Not available in South Africa)

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press 📑 [Fax].

If [Fax Preview] is set to [On], press [Fax] > [Sending Faxes].

- 3. Press [Hook] and listen for a dial tone.
- 4. Enter the fax number.
- 5. When you hear fax tones, press [Fax Start].
  - If you are using the scanner glass, press [Send].

#### (For South Africa only)

To send a fax manually, do the following:

Load your document. To listen for a dial tone, pick up the handset of the external telephone. Dial the fax number using the external telephone. When you hear fax tones, press and then press [Fax Start]. If you are using the scanner glass, press [Send]. Replace the handset of the external phone.



Send a Fax

Home > Fax > Send a Fax > Send a Fax at the End of a Conversation

# Send a Fax at the End of a Conversation

At the end of a conversation, you can send a fax to the other party before you both hang up.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Ask the other party to wait for fax tones (beeps) and to press the Start key before hanging up.
- 2. Load your document.
- 3. Press 🕤 to display the [Fax Start] button.
- 4. Press [Fax Start].
  - If you are using the scanner glass, press [Send].
- 5. Replace the handset of an external telephone.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Ask the other party to wait for fax tones (beeps) and to press the Start key before hanging up.
- 2. Load your document.
- 3. Press 🕤 to display the [Fax Start] button.
- 4. Press [Fax Start].
  - If you are using the scanner glass, press [Send].
- 5. Replace the handset of an external telephone.

### Related Information

· Send a Fax

Home > Fax > Send a Fax > Send the Same Fax to More than One Recipient (Broadcasting)

# Send the Same Fax to More than One Recipient (Broadcasting)

Use the Broadcasting feature to send the same fax to multiple fax numbers at the same time.

- This feature is available only for monochrome faxes.
- · Address Book numbers must be stored in the machine's memory before they can be used in a broadcast.
- Group numbers must also be stored in the machine's memory before they can be used in a broadcast. Group numbers include many stored Address Book numbers for easier dialling.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

You can include Groups, Address Book numbers and up to 50 manually-dialled numbers in the same broadcast.

If you did not use any of the Address Book numbers for Groups, you can broadcast faxes to as many as 250 different numbers.

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press 📑 [Fax].

If [Fax Preview] is set to [On], press [ [Fax] > [Sending Faxes].

- 3. **Press** [Options] > [Broadcasting].
- 4. Press [Add Number].

You can add numbers to the broadcast in the following ways:

• Press [Add Number] and enter a fax number using the dial pad. Press [OK].

If you downloaded Internet Fax:

To broadcast using an email address, press 🚬, enter the email address, and press [OK].

- Press [Add from Address book]. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the numbers you want to add to the broadcast. Select the check boxes of the numbers you want to add.
   When finished, press [OK].
- Press [Search in Address book]. Press the first letter of the name and press [OK]. Press the name, and then press the number you want to add.

Repeat this step to enter additional fax numbers.

- 5. When finished, press [OK].
- 6. Press [Fax Start].
- 7. Do one of the following:
  - If you are using the ADF, the machine starts scanning and sending the document.
  - If you are using the scanner glass, the machine starts scanning the first page.
    - When the touchscreen displays [Next page?], do one of the following:
    - Press [No] when finished scanning pages. The machine starts sending the document.
    - Press [Yes] to scan another page. Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [OK]. The machine starts scanning the page.

Repeat this step for each additional page.

If the [Out of Memory] message appears, press

pages scanned so far.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

You can include Groups, Address Book numbers and up to 50 manually-dialled numbers in the same broadcast.

If you did not use any of the Address Book numbers for Groups, you can broadcast faxes to as many as 250 different numbers.

- 1. Load vour document.
- 2. Press [Fax].
  - If [Fax Preview] is set to [On], press 🔚 [Fax] > [Sending Faxes].
- 3. Press [Options] > [Broadcasting].
- 4. Press [Add Number].

You can add numbers to the broadcast in the following ways:

Press [Add Number] and enter a fax number using the dial pad. Press [OK].

If you downloaded Internet Fax:

To broadcast using an email address, press 🌅, enter the email address, and press [OK].

- Press [Add from Address book]. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the numbers you want to add to the broadcast. Select the check boxes of the numbers you want to add them. When finished, press [OK].
- Press [Search in Address book]. Press the first letter of the name and press [OK]. Press the name, and then press the number you want to add.

Repeat this step to enter additional fax numbers.

- 5. When finished, press [OK].
- 6. Press [Fax Start].
- 7. Do one of the following:
  - If you are using the ADF, the machine starts scanning and sending the document.
  - If you are using the scanner glass, the machine starts scanning the first page.

When the touchscreen displays [Next Page?], do one of the following:

- Press [No] when finished scanning pages. The machine starts sending the document.
- Press [Yes] to scan another page. Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [OK]. The machine starts scanning the page.

Repeat this step for each additional page.

- The machine's available memory will vary depending on the types of jobs in the memory and the numbers used for broadcasting. If you broadcast to the maximum number available, you cannot use dual access and delayed fax.
- If the [Out of Memory] message appears, press X or [Quit] to cancel or [Send Now] to send the pages scanned so far.

- Send a Fax
- Cancel a Broadcast in Progress

- Set up Groups for Broadcasting
- Enter Text on Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Fax > Send a Fax > Send the Same Fax to More than One Recipient (Broadcasting) > Cancel a Broadcast in Progress

# **Cancel a Broadcast in Progress**

While broadcasting you can cancel the fax currently being sent or the whole broadcast job.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press to return to the Home screen.
- 2. Press
- 3. Do one of the following:
  - To cancel the entire broadcast, press [Entire Broadcast]. Press [Yes] to confirm or press [No] to exit without cancelling.
  - To cancel the current number being dialled, press the name or number on the touchscreen. Press [Yes] to confirm or press [No] to exit without cancelling.
  - To exit without cancelling, press X

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press to return to the Home screen.
- 2. Press 🗙
- 3. Do one of the following:
  - To cancel the entire broadcast, press [Entire Broadcast]. Press [Yes] to confirm or press [No] to exit without cancelling.
  - To cancel the current number being dialled, press the name or number on the touchscreen. Press [Yes] to confirm or press [No] to exit without cancelling.
  - To exit without cancelling, press

#### Related Information

Send the Same Fax to More than One Recipient (Broadcasting)

▲ Home > Fax > Send a Fax > Send a Fax in Real Time

# Send a Fax in Real Time

When sending a fax, the machine scans the document into the memory before sending it. As soon as the telephone line is free, the machine starts dialling and sending. If you want to send an important document immediately without waiting for the machine to retrieve the scan from its memory, turn on [Real Time TX].

- If you are sending a colour fax or if the machine's memory is full and you are sending a monochrome fax from the ADF, the machine sends the document in real time (even if [Real Time TX] is set to [Off]).
- In Real Time Transmission, the automatic redial feature does not work when using the scanner glass.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press 📑 [Fax].

If [Fax Preview] is set to [On], press [Fax] > [Sending Faxes].

- 3. Press [Options] > [Real Time TX].
- 4. Press [On] (or [Off]).
- 5. Press [OK].
- 6. Enter the fax number.
- 7. Press [Fax Start].

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press 🔚 [Fax].

If [Fax Preview] is set to [On], press [Fax] > [Sending Faxes].

- 3. Press [Options] > [Real Time TX].
- 4. Press [On] (or [Off]).
- 5. Press [OK].
- 6. Enter the fax number.
- 7. Press [Fax Start].

$\checkmark$	<b>Related Information</b>	

Send a Fax

Home > Fax > Send a Fax > Send a Fax at a Specified Time (Delayed Fax)

## Send a Fax at a Specified Time (Delayed Fax)

You can store up to 50 faxes in the machine's memory to be sent within the next twenty-four hour period.

This feature is available only for monochrome faxes.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press 📑 [Fax].

If [Fax Preview] is set to [On], press [Fax] > [Sending Faxes].

- 3. Press [Options] > [Delayed Fax].
- 4. Press [Delayed Fax].
- 5. Press [On].
- 6. Press [Set Time].
- 7. Enter the time you want the fax to be sent using the touchscreen. Press [OK].

The number of pages you can scan into the memory depends on the amount and type of data.

- 8. Press [OK].
- 9. Enter the fax number.
- 10. Press [Fax Start].
  - If you are using the scanner glass, go to the next step.
- 11. When the touchscreen displays [Next page?], do one of the following:
  - Press [No] when finished scanning pages.
  - Press [Yes] to scan another page. Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [OK]. The machine starts scanning the page.

Repeat this step for each additional page.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press 📑 [Fax].

If [Fax Preview] is set to [On], press [Fax] > [Sending Faxes].

- 3. Press [Options] > [Delayed Fax].
- 4. Press [Delayed Fax].
- 5. Press [On].
- 6. Press [Set Time].
- 7. Enter the time you want the fax to be sent using the touchscreen. Press  $[\,{\tt OK}\,]$  .

The number of pages you can scan into the memory depends on the amount and type of data.

<sup>8.</sup> Press [OK].

- 9. Enter the fax number.
- 10. Press [Fax Start].
  - If you are using the scanner glass, go to the next step.
- 11. When the touchscreen displays [Next Page?], do one of the following:
  - Press [No] when finished scanning pages.
  - Press [Yes] to scan another page. Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [OK]. The machine starts scanning the page.

Repeat this step for each additional page.

#### Related Information

Send a Fax

▲ Home > Fax > Send a Fax > Change the Fax Auto Redial Setting

# Change the Fax Auto Redial Setting

If you are sending a fax automatically and the line is busy when the Fax Auto Redial setting is set to [On], the machine redials up to three times at five minute intervals.

The default setting is [On].

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Fax Auto Redial].
- 2. Press [On] or [Off].
- 3. Press

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Fax Auto Redial].
- 2. Press [On] or [Off].
- 3. Press

#### Related Information

· Send a Fax

# **Cancel a Fax in Progress**

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press to return to the Home screen.
- 2. Press X to cancel a fax that is already in process.
- 3. When you press while the machine is dialling or sending, the touchscreen displays [Cancel Job?]. Press [Yes].

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press to return to the Home screen.
- 2. Press X to cancel a fax that is already in process.
- 3. When you press while the machine is dialling or sending, the touchscreen displays [Cancel Job?]. Press [Yes]

- Send a Fax
- Telephone and Fax problems

Home > Fax > Send a Fax > Check and Cancel a Pending Fax

# **Check and Cancel a Pending Fax**

Follow these steps to view or to cancel faxes stored in the machine's memory and waiting to be sent. If there are no fax jobs in memory, the LCD displays [No Jobs Waiting]. You can cancel a fax job before it is sent.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Remaining Jobs].
- 2. Do the following for each fax job you want to check or cancel:
  - a. Press ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the waiting jobs. If needed, press the job you want to cancel.
  - b. Press [OK].
  - c. Press [Yes] to confirm or press [No] to exit without cancelling.
- 3. When finished, press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Remaining Jobs].
- 2. Do the following for each fax job you want to check or cancel:
  - a. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the waiting jobs. If needed, press the job you want to cancel.
  - b. Press [Cancel].
  - c. Press [Yes] to confirm or press [No] to exit without cancelling.
- 3. When finished, press

- · Send a Fax
- Telephone and Fax problems

▲ Home > Fax > Send a Fax > Fax Options

# Fax Options

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

To change fax-sending settings, press the [Options] button.

Description
Set the resolution for outgoing faxes.
The fax quality often can be improved by changing the Fax Resolution.
Adjust the contrast.
If your document is very light or very dark, changing the contrast may improve the fax quality.
Adjust the scan area of the scanner glass to the size of the document.
Send the same fax message to more than one fax number at the
same time.
Preview a fax message before you send it.
• You cannot send a colour fax when Preview is set to On.
Set whether faxes are sent in monochrome or colour.
Colour faxes cannot be stored in the machine's memory and the machine sends them immediately.
Use the ADF to send colour faxes with multiple pages.
• You cannot send a colour fax when Preview is set to On.
Set the time of day the delayed faxes will be sent.
Economise by sending all delayed faxes scheduled for the same
time and fax number as one fax to save transmission time.
Send a fax immediately without waiting for the machine to retrieve the scan from its memory.
Set to On if you have difficulty sending faxes overseas.
Select a number from the Call History.
Select a number from the Address Book.
Save your settings as the default.
Restore all settings back to the factory settings.

**You can save the current settings by pressing** [Save as Shortcut].

You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

To change fax-sending settings, press the [Options] button.

Option	Description
Fax Resolution	Set the resolution for outgoing faxes.
	The fax quality often can be improved by changing the Fax Resolution.
2-sided Fax	Set the 2-sided scanning format.

Option	Description
Contrast	Adjust the contrast.
	If your document is very light or very dark, changing the contrast may improve the fax quality.
Glass Scan Size	Adjust the scan area of the scanner glass to the size of the document.
Broadcasting	Send the same fax message to more than one fax number at the
(monochrome only)	same time.
Preview	Preview a fax message before you send it.
(monochrome only)	
Colour Setting	Set whether faxes are sent in monochrome or colour.
	<ul> <li>Colour faxes cannot be stored in the machine's memory and the machine sends them immediately.</li> </ul>
	Use the ADF to send colour faxes with multiple pages.
Delayed Fax	Set the time of day the delayed faxes will be sent.
(monochrome only)	
Batch TX	Economise by sending all delayed faxes scheduled for the same
(monochrome only)	time and fax number as one fax to save transmission time.
Real Time TX	Send a fax immediately without waiting for the machine to retrieve the scan from its memory.
Overseas Mode	Set to On if you have difficulty sending faxes overseas.
Set New Default	Save your settings as the default.
Factory Reset	Restore all settings back to the factory settings.



You can save the current settings by pressing [Save as Shortcut].

You will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.

- Send a Fax
- Send a Fax from Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax

# **Receive a Fax**

- Receive Mode Settings
- Fax Preview
- Shrink Page Size of an Oversized Incoming Fax
- Set the Fax Receive Stamp
- Receive a Fax at the End of a Telephone Conversation
- Memory Receive Options
- Remote Fax Retrieval

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Receive Mode Settings

# **Receive Mode Settings**

- Receive Modes Overview
- Choose the Correct Receive Mode
- Set the Number of Rings Before the Machine Answers (Ring Delay)
- Set the F/T Ring Time (Pseudo/Double-ring)
- Set Fax Detect

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Receive Mode Settings > Receive Modes Overview

# **Receive Modes Overview**

Some receive modes answer automatically ([Fax Only] and [Fax/Tel]). You may want to change the Ring Delay before using these modes.

#### Fax Only

[Fax Only] mode automatically answers every call as a fax.

#### Fax/Tel

[Fax/Tel] mode helps you manage incoming calls, by recognising whether they are fax or voice calls and handling them in one of the following ways:

- Faxes will be received automatically.
- Voice calls will start the F/T ring to tell you to pick up the line. The F/T ring is a pseudo/double-ring made by your machine.

#### Manual

To receive a fax in [Manual] mode, lift the handset of the external telephone or press the Hook<sup>1</sup> button. When you hear fax tones (short repeating beeps), press the Start button, and then select [Receive] to receive a fax. You can also use the Fax Detect feature to receive faxes by lifting a handset on the same line as the machine.

#### **External TAD**

[External TAD] mode lets an external answering device manage your incoming calls.

Incoming calls will be handled in the following ways:

- · Faxes will be received automatically.
- Voice callers can record a message on the external TAD.

- Receive Mode Settings
- Set the Number of Rings Before the Machine Answers (Ring Delay)
- Set the F/T Ring Time (Pseudo/Double-ring)
- Set Fax Detect
- Connect an External TAD

Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Receive Mode Settings > Choose the Correct Receive Mode

# **Choose the Correct Receive Mode**

You must choose a Receive Mode depending on the external devices and telephone services you have on your line.

By default, your machine automatically will receive any faxes that are sent to it. The diagram below will help you select the correct mode.



## >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Receive Mode].

(For some countries)

If you cannot change the [Receive Mode] option, make sure the Distinctive Ring feature is set to [Off]. (For New Zealand)

If you cannot change the [Receive Mode] option, make sure the FaxAbility feature is set to [Off].

- 2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Fax Only], [Fax/Tel], [External TAD], or [Manual] option, and then press the option you want.
- 3. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW



- Receive Mode Settings
- Distinctive Ring
- Remote Retrieval Commands
- Connect an External TAD
- Telephone and Fax problems

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Receive Mode Settings > Set the Number of Rings Before the Machine Answers (Ring Delay)

# Set the Number of Rings Before the Machine Answers (Ring Delay)

When somebody calls your machine, you will hear the normal telephone ring sound. The number of rings is set in the Ring Delay option.

- The Ring Delay setting sets the number of times the machine rings before it answers in [Fax Only] and [Fax/Tel] modes.
- If you have external or extension telephones on the same line as the machine, select the maximum number of rings.
- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Ring Delay].
- 2. Press the number of times you want the line to ring before the machine answers.

If you select [0], the machine will answer immediately and the line will not ring at all (available only for some countries).

# 3. Press

Ø

Ø

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Ring Delay].
- 2. Press the number of times you want the line to ring before the machine answers.

<sup>•</sup> If you select [0], the machine will answer immediately and the line will not ring at all (available only for some countries).



- Receive Mode Settings
- Receive Modes Overview
- · Operation from External and Extension Telephones
- Set Fax Detect
- Telephone and Fax problems

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Receive Mode Settings > Set the F/T Ring Time (Pseudo/Double-ring)

# Set the F/T Ring Time (Pseudo/Double-ring)

When you set the Receive Mode to [Fax/Tel], if the call is a fax, your machine will receive it automatically. However, if it is a voice call, the machine will sound the F/T ring (pseudo/double-ring) for the time you set in the F/T Ring Time option. When you hear the F/T ring, it means that a voice caller is on the line.

Because the F/T ring is a setting only on your Brother machine, extension and external telephones will not ring; however, you can still answer the machine's call on any telephone.

#### >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [F/T Ring Time].
- 2. Press how long the machine will double-ring to alert you to a voice call.
- 3. Press

Even if the caller hangs up during the pseudo/double-ringing, the machine will continue to ring for the set time.

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [F/T Ring Time].

- 2. Press how long the machine will double-ring to alert you to a voice call.
- 3. Press

Ø

Even if the caller hangs up during the pseudo/double-ringing, the machine will continue to ring for the set time.

- Receive Mode Settings
- Receive Modes Overview
- · Operation from External and Extension Telephones

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Receive Mode Settings > Set Fax Detect

# **Set Fax Detect**

**If Fax Detect is On:** The machine receives a fax call automatically, even if you answer the call. When the message that your machine is receiving a fax appears on the LCD or when you hear "chirps" through the handset you are using, just replace the handset. Your machine will do the rest.

If Fax Detect is Off: If you are at the machine and answer a fax call by lifting the handset, press the Start button, and then select [Receive] to receive the fax. If you answered at an extension or external telephone, press \*51 (\*91 for New Zealand).

- If Fax Detect is set to [On], but your machine does not connect a fax call when you lift an extension or external telephone handset, press the remote activation code **\*51** (**\*91** for New Zealand).
  - If you send faxes from a computer on the same telephone line and the machine intercepts them, set Fax Detect to [Off].

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 1 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Fax Detect].
- 2. Press [On] (or [Off]).
- 3. Press

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Fax Detect].
- 2. Press [On] (or [Off]).
- 3. Press

- Receive Mode Settings
- Receive Modes Overview
- Set the Number of Rings Before the Machine Answers (Ring Delay)
- · Operation from External and Extension Telephones
- Use the Remote Codes
- Telephone and Fax problems

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Fax Preview

# **Fax Preview**

Use the Fax Preview feature to view received faxes on the LCD.

- Set Fax Preview to On
- Preview New Faxes

#### ▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Fax Preview > Set Fax Preview to On

# Set Fax Preview to On

- · This feature is available only for monochrome faxes.
- When Fax Preview is turned on, a backup copy of received faxes will not be printed for Fax Forwarding, PC-Fax Receiving and Forward to Cloud operations, even if you set Backup Print to [On].
- Although printed faxes show the received date and time when Fax Receive Stamp is turned on, the Fax Preview screen will not display the received date and time.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 🎦 [Settings].
- 2. Press [Fax Preview].
- 3. Press [On] (or [Off]).

The touchscreen displays a message saying future received faxes will not be printed.

- 4. Press [Yes].
- 5. Press

<sup>\*</sup> If faxes are stored in the memory when you change Fax Preview to Off, do one of the following:

If you do not want to print the stored faxes, press [Continue].
 Press [Yes] to confirm.

Your faxes will be deleted.

- To print all the stored faxes, press [Print All Faxes Before Delete].
- If you do not want to turn off Fax Preview, press [Cancel].

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press 🎢 [Settings].
- 2. Press Fax Preview].
- 3. Press [On] (or [Off]).
  - The touchscreen displays a message saying future received faxes will not be printed.
- 4. Press [Yes].
- 5. Press

If faxes are stored in the memory when you change Fax Preview to Off, do one of the following:

If you do not want to print the stored faxes, press [Continue].
 Press [Yes] to confirm.

Your faxes will be deleted.

- To print all the stored faxes, press [Print All Faxes Before Delete].
- If you do not want to turn off Fax Preview, press [Cancel].

#### Related Information

Fax Preview

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Fax Preview > Preview New Faxes

### **Preview New Faxes**

When a fax is received, a message appears on the LCD.

- This feature is available only for monochrome faxes.
  To see a fax you already previewed, press [Fax] and [Fax] [Received Faxes].
- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

#### >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Press (i) to view new faxes.



2. The fax list includes old and new faxes. A blue mark appears next to new faxes. Press the fax you want.



If you want to print or delete all the faxes in the list, press [Print/Delete].

Do one of the following:

Ø

- Press [Print All(New Faxes)] to print all faxes you have not yet viewed.
- Press [Print All(Old Faxes)] to print all faxes you have viewed.
- Press [Delete All(New Faxes)] to delete all faxes you have not yet viewed.
- Press [Delete All(Old Faxes)] to delete all faxes you have viewed.
- 3. Perform the following operations by pressing the buttons shown in the table:

Button	Result
$\odot$	Enlarge the fax.
Q	Reduce the fax.
~ or ~	Scroll vertically.
< or >	Scroll horizontally.
× A <sup>≁⁺</sup>	Rotate the fax clockwise.
<u>ت</u>	Delete the fax. Press Yes to confirm.
< ₿	Go back to the previous page.
	Go to the next page.
∽	Go back to the fax list.
Start	Print the fax. If the fax is a single page, it starts printing. A touchscreen message asks if you want to dele the fax from the machine's memory. To delete the fax, press Yes. To keep the fax in the machine's memory, press No.
	If the fax has multiple pages, do one of the following:
	• Press Print All Pages to print the whole message. A touchscreen message asks if you want to delete the fax from the machine's memory. To delete the fax, press Yes. To keep the fax in the machine's memory, press No.
	• Press Print Displayed Only to print only the displayed page.
	• Press Print From Displayed to print from the displayed page to the last page.
<ul> <li>If your fax</li> </ul>	k is large there may be a delay before it is displayed.
The touchscreen displays the current page number and total pages of the fax message. If your fax message is over 99 pages, the total number of pages appears as "XX."	

# MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Press i to view new faxes.

I N	ew Faxes:04	>		1/3
<				>
	Fax	Сору	Scan	
+	Shortcuts	(•		

2. The fax list includes old and new faxes. A blue mark appears next to new faxes. Press the fax you want.

Received Faxes	
Received Faxes: 4	Print/Delete
• 01/01 01:29	~
• 01/01 01:28	
01/01 01:27	

If you want to print or delete all the faxes in the list, press  $[\tt Print/Delete].$ 

Do one of the following:

Ø

- Press [Print All(New Faxes)] to print all faxes you have not yet viewed.
- Press [Print All(Old Faxes)] to print all faxes you have viewed.
- Press [Delete All(New Faxes)] to delete all faxes you have not yet viewed.
- Press [Delete All(Old Faxes)] to delete all faxes you have viewed.
- 3. Perform the following operations by pressing the buttons shown in the table:

Button	Result
Ð	Enlarge the fax.
Q	Reduce the fax.
∧ or ∨	Scroll vertically.
< or >	Scroll horizontally.
<b>▼</b> A+ <sup>+</sup>	Rotate the fax clockwise.
İ	Delete the fax. Press Yes to confirm.

Button	Result	
	Go back to the previous page.	
≣►	Go to the next page.	
<b>f</b>	Go back to the fax list.	
Start	Print the fax.	
	If the fax is a single page, it starts printing. The touchscreen asks you to delete the fax in the memory. To delete the fax, press Yes. To keep the fax in the memory, press $No$ .	
	If the fax has multiple pages, do one of the following:	
	• Press Print All Pages to print the whole message. The touchscreen asks you to delete the fax in the memory. To delete the fax, press Yes. To keep the fax in the memory, press No.	
	• Press Print Displayed Only to print only the displayed page.	
	• Press Print From Displayed to print from the displayed page to the last page.	
• The tou	fax is large there may be a delay before it is displayed. uchscreen displays the current page number and total pages of the fax message. If your fax ge is over 99 pages, the total number of pages appears as "XX."	

# Related Information

• Fax Preview

4.

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Shrink Page Size of an Oversized Incoming Fax

# Shrink Page Size of an Oversized Incoming Fax

When the [Auto Reduction] feature is [On], your Brother machine reduces any oversized incoming fax page to fit on your paper. The machine calculates the reduction ratio using the page size of the fax and your Paper Size setting.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Auto Reduction].
- 2. Press [On] (or [Off]).
- 3. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press 1 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Auto Reduction].
- 2. Press [On] (or [Off]).
- 3. Press

- Receive a Fax
- Paper Settings
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Set the Fax Receive Stamp

# Set the Fax Receive Stamp

Set the machine to print the date and time of receipt at the top of each incoming fax page. Make sure you have set the current date and time on the machine.

This feature is available only for monochrome faxes.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Fax Rx Stamp].
- 2. Press [On] (or [Off]).
- 3. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press 1 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Fax Rx Stamp].
- 2. Press [On] (or [Off]).
- 3. Press

Related Information

• Receive a Fax

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Receive a Fax at the End of a Telephone Conversation

# Receive a Fax at the End of a Telephone Conversation

If you are speaking on the telephone connected to your Brother machine and the other party is also speaking on a telephone connected to his fax machine, at the end of the conversation, the other party can send you a fax before you both hang up.

- Your machine's ADF must be empty.
- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Ask the other party to load the fax and to press the Start or Send key.
- 2. Press **to display the** [Fax Start] button.
- 3. When you hear CNG tones (slow, repeated beeps), press [Fax Start].
- 4. Press [Receive] to receive the fax.
- 5. Replace the external handset.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Ask the other party to load the fax and to press the Start or Send key.
- 2. Press **to display the** [Fax Start] button.
- 3. When you hear CNG tones (slow, repeated beeps), press [Fax Start].
- 4. Press [Receive] to receive the fax.
- 5. Replace the external handset.

### Related Information

• Receive a Fax

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Memory Receive Options

# **Memory Receive Options**

Use Memory Receive options to direct incoming faxes while you are away from the machine. You can use only one Memory Receive option at a time.

Memory Receive can be set to:

- Fax Forwarding
- Fax Storage
- PC-Fax Receive
- Forward to Cloud

The machine forwards your received faxes to the online services.

• Off

This feature is available only for monochrome faxes.

- Forward Incoming Faxes to Another Machine
- · Store Incoming Faxes in the Machine's Memory
- Use PC-Fax Receive to Transfer Received Faxes to Your Computer (Windows only)
- Change Memory Receive Options
- Turn Off Memory Receive
- · Print a Fax Stored in the Machine's Memory
- Turn On FaxForward to Cloud or E-mail

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Memory Receive Options > Forward Incoming Faxes to Another Machine

# **Forward Incoming Faxes to Another Machine**

Use the Fax Forwarding feature to automatically forward your incoming faxes to another machine.

This feature is available only for monochrome faxes.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Memory Receive].
- 2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Fax Forward] option, and then press it.
- 3. Enter the forwarding fax number (up to 20 digits) using the dial pad. Press [OK].

I-Fax users:

To forward a fax to an email address, press N, enter the email address, and then press [OK].

4. Press [Backup Print: On] or [Backup Print: Off].

- If you select [Backup Print: On], the machine prints received faxes at your machine so you will have a copy.
- When Fax Preview is turned on, a backup copy of received faxes will not be printed, even if you select [Backup Print: On].
- If you receive a colour fax, your machine only prints the colour fax and does not forward it to the Fax Forwarding number you programmed.

5. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Memory Receive].
- 2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Fax Forward] option, and then press [Fax Forward].
- 3. Enter the forwarding fax number (up to 20 digits) using the dial pad. Press [OK].

#### I-Fax users:

To forward a fax to an email address, press N, enter the email address, and then press [OK].

4. Press [Backup Print: On] or [Backup Print: Off].

- If you select [Backup Print: On], the machine prints received faxes at your machine so you will have a copy.
- When Fax Preview is turned on, a backup copy of received faxes will not be printed, even if you select [Backup Print: On].
- If you receive a colour fax, your machine only prints the colour fax and does not forward it to the Fax Forwarding number you programmed.



## **Related Information**

 $\checkmark$ 

Memory Receive Options
▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Memory Receive Options > Store Incoming Faxes in the Machine's Memory

# Store Incoming Faxes in the Machine's Memory

Use the Fax Storage feature to store incoming faxes in the machine's memory. Retrieve your stored fax messages from your fax machine when you are at another location using the Remote Retrieval commands. Your machine prints a backup copy of each stored fax.

• This feature is available only for monochrome faxes.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 1 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Memory Receive].
- 2. Press ▲ or V to display the [Fax Storage] option, and then press it.
- 3. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Memory Receive].
- 2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Fax Storage] option, and then press it.
- 3. Press

- Memory Receive Options
- Forward Faxes Remotely
- · Print a Fax Stored in the Machine's Memory
- Remote Retrieval Commands

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Memory Receive Options > Use PC-Fax Receive to Transfer Received Faxes to Your Computer (Windows only)

# Use PC-Fax Receive to Transfer Received Faxes to Your Computer (Windows only)

Turn on the PC-Fax Receive feature, automatically store incoming faxes to your machine's memory, and then send them to your computer. Use your computer to view and store these faxes.

- This feature is available only for monochrome faxes. When you receive a colour fax, your machine prints the colour fax but does not send the fax to your computer.
- Before you can set up PC-Fax Receive, you must install the Brother software and drivers on your computer. Make sure your computer is connected and turned on. You must have the PC-FAX Receiving software running on your computer.

Even if your computer is turned off, your machine will receive and store faxes in its memory. When you start your computer and the PC-FAX Receiving software runs, your machine transfers faxes to your computer automatically.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 1 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [PC Fax Receive].
- 2. Press [On].

The touchscreen displays the message [Run the PC-Fax Receive program on your computer.]

- 3. Press [OK].
- 4. Press [<USB>] or press the name of the computer you want to receive faxes if you are on a network. Press [OK].
- 5. Press [Backup Print: On] or [Backup Print: Off].

When Fax Preview is turned on, a backup copy of received faxes will not be printed, even if you select [Backup Print: On].

# 6. Press

To change the destination computer, repeat these steps.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [PC Fax Receive].
- 2. Press [On].

The touchscreen displays the message [Run the PC-Fax Receive program on your computer.]

- 3. Press [OK].
- 4. Press [<USB>] or press the name of the computer you want to receive faxes if you are on a network. Press [OK].
- 5. Press [Backup Print: On] or [Backup Print: Off].

When Fax Preview is turned on, a backup copy of received faxes will not be printed, even if you select [Backup Print: On].



To change the destination computer, repeat these steps.

- Memory Receive Options
- Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report
- Transfer Faxes to Your Computer
- Receive Faxes Using PC-FAX Receive (Windows)

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Memory Receive Options > Change Memory Receive Options

# **Change Memory Receive Options**

If there are faxes in your machine's memory when you change any Memory Receive option, the LCD displays one of the following questions:

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- If received faxes have already been printed, the touchscreen displays [Erase all documents?]
  - If you press [Yes], faxes in the memory will be erased before the setting changes.
  - If you press [No], faxes in the memory will not be erased and the setting will be unchanged.
- If unprinted faxes are in the machine's memory, the touchscreen displays [Print all faxes?]
  - If you press [Yes], faxes in the memory will be printed before the setting changes.
  - If you press [No], faxes in the memory will not be printed and the setting will be unchanged.
- If received faxes are left in the machine's memory when you change to [PC Fax Receive] from another option ([Fax Forward], [Forward to Cloud], or [Fax Storage]), press [<USB>] or the name of the computer if you are on a network, and then press [OK]. You will be asked if you want to turn on Backup Print.

The touchscreen displays:

[Send Fax to PC?]

- If you press [Yes], faxes in the memory will be sent to your computer before the setting changes.
- If you press [No], faxes in the memory will not be erased and the setting will be unchanged.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- If received faxes have already been printed, the touchscreen displays [Erase all documents?]
  - If you press [Yes], faxes in the memory will be erased before the setting changes.
  - If you press [No], faxes in the memory will not be erased and the setting will be unchanged.
- If unprinted faxes are in the machine's memory, the touchscreen displays [Print all faxes?]
  - If you press [Yes], faxes in the memory will be printed before the setting changes.
  - If you press [No], faxes in the memory will not be printed and the setting will be unchanged.
- If received faxes are left in the machine's memory when you change to [PC Fax Receive] from another option ([Fax Forward], [Forward to Cloud], or [Fax Storage]), press [<USB>] or the name of the computer if you are on a network, and then press [OK]. You will be asked if you want to turn on Backup Print.

The touchscreen displays:

[Send Fax to PC?]

- If you press [Yes], faxes in the memory will be sent to your computer before the setting changes.
- If you press [No], faxes in the memory will not be erased and the setting will be unchanged.

- Memory Receive Options
- Turn Off Memory Receive

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Memory Receive Options > Turn Off Memory Receive

# **Turn Off Memory Receive**

Turn off Memory Receive if you do not want the machine to save or transfer incoming faxes.

>>	MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
>>	MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 🍟 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Memory Receive].
- 2. Press [Off].

The touchscreen displays [Print all faxes?] or [Erase all documents?] if received faxes are in your machine's memory.

3. Press

Ø

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Memory Receive].
- 2. Press [Off].

The touchscreen displays [Print all faxes?] or [Erase all documents?] if received faxes are in your machine's memory.

3. Press

- Memory Receive Options
- Change Memory Receive Options
- · Error and Maintenance Messages
- Telephone and Fax problems

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Memory Receive Options > Print a Fax Stored in the Machine's Memory

# Print a Fax Stored in the Machine's Memory

- This feature is available only for monochrome faxes.
- After you print the fax, it is erased from the machine's memory.
- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

If you select [Fax Storage], you can print all faxes from the memory.

1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Print Document].

You can also print the faxes from the memory by pressing [Stored Faxes] on the touchscreen.

2. Press [Yes].

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

If you select [Fax Storage], you can print all faxes from the memory.

1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Print Document].

You can also print the faxes from the memory by pressing [Stored Faxes] on the touchscreen.

2. Press [Yes].

- Memory Receive Options
- · Store Incoming Faxes in the Machine's Memory
- Error and Maintenance Messages
- Telephone and Fax problems

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Remote Fax Retrieval

## **Remote Fax Retrieval**

Use Remote Retrieval to call your machine from any touch-tone telephone or fax machine, and use a remote access code and remote commands to retrieve fax messages.

- Set a Remote Access Code
- Use Your Remote Access Code
- Remote Retrieval Commands
- Forward Faxes Remotely
- Change the Fax Forwarding Number

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Remote Fax Retrieval > Set a Remote Access Code

# Set a Remote Access Code

Set a Remote Access Code to access and control your Brother machine even when you are away from it.

>>	MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
>>	MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Remote Access].
- 2. Enter a three-digit code using the numbers [0] through [9], [\*], or [#] using the dial pad (The preset '\*' cannot be changed).

Press [OK].

- DO NOT use the same code used for your Remote Activation Code (\*51) (\*91 for New Zealand) or Remote Deactivation Code (#51) (#91 for New Zealand).
  - To delete your code, press and hold 🗙 to restore the inactive setting (- - \*), and then press [OK].
- 3. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Remote Access].
- 2. Enter a three-digit code using the numbers [0] through [9], [\*], or [#] using the dial pad (The preset '\*' cannot be changed).

Press [OK].

- DO NOT use the same code used for your Remote Activation Code (\*51) (\*91 for New Zealand) or Remote Deactivation Code (#51) (#91 for New Zealand).
  - To delete your code, press and hold 🗙 to restore the inactive setting (---\*), and then press [OK].
- 3. Press

- Remote Fax Retrieval
- Use Your Remote Access Code
- · Operation from External and Extension Telephones
- Use the Remote Codes

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Remote Fax Retrieval > Use Your Remote Access Code

# **Use Your Remote Access Code**

- 1. When away from your Brother machine, dial your fax number from a touch-tone telephone or fax machine.
- 2. When your machine answers, immediately enter your three-digit Remote Access Code, followed by \*.
- 3. Your Brother machine signals if it has received faxes:
  - One long beep the machine received at least one fax
  - · No beeps the machine has not received a fax
- 4. When the machine gives two short beeps, enter a command.
  - The machine will hang up if you wait longer than 30 seconds to enter a command.
  - The machine will beep three times if you enter an invalid command.
- 5. When finished, press 9, and then press 0 to deactivate your machine.
- 6. Hang up.

Ø

 If your machine is set to [Manual] mode and you are using Remote Retrieval, wait for about 100 seconds after your fax number starts ringing, and enter your Remote Access Code within 30 seconds.

This feature may not be available in some countries or supported by your local telephone company.

- Remote Fax Retrieval
- Set a Remote Access Code

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Remote Fax Retrieval > Remote Retrieval Commands

# **Remote Retrieval Commands**

Use the Remote Commands in this table to access fax commands and options when you are away from your Brother machine. When you call the machine and enter your remote access code (three digits followed by \*), the system will sound two short beeps and you must enter a Remote Command (column 1), followed by one of the options (column 2) for that command.

Remote commands	Options	Operation details
95	Change the Fax Forwarding, or Fax Storage settings	
	1 OFF	You can select <i>Off</i> after you retrieve or erase all your messages.
	2 Fax Forwarding	One long beep means the change is accepted. If you hear three short beeps, you cannot make a change because something has not been set up (for example, a Fax Forwarding number has not been registered). You can register your Fax Forwarding number by entering 4. After you register the number, Fax Forwarding will work.
	4 Fax Forwarding number	
	6 Fax Storage	
96	Retrieve a fax	
	2 Retrieve all faxes	Enter the fax number of a remote fax machine to receive stored fax messages.
	3 Erase faxes from memory	If you hear one long beep, fax messages have been erased from memory.
97	Check the receiving status	
	1 Fax	Check whether your machine has received any faxes. If yes, you will hear one long beep. If not, you will hear three short beeps.
98	Change the Receive Mode	
	1 External TAD	One long beep means the change has been accepted.
	2 Fax/Tel	
	3 Fax Only	
90	Exit	Press <b>9 0</b> to stop remote retrieval. Wait for the long beep, then hang up.

- Remote Fax Retrieval
- Change the Fax Forwarding Number
- · Store Incoming Faxes in the Machine's Memory
- Forward Faxes Remotely
- Choose the Correct Receive Mode

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Remote Fax Retrieval > Forward Faxes Remotely

# **Forward Faxes Remotely**

Call your Brother machine from any touch-tone telephone or fax machine to forward incoming faxes to another machine.

- You must turn on Fax Storage , or Fax Preview before you use this feature.
- 1. Dial your fax number.

Ø

- 2. When your machine answers, enter your Remote Access Code (three digits followed by \*). If you hear one long beep, you have messages.
- 3. When you hear two short beeps, press 9 6 2.
- 4. Wait for the long beep, and then use the dial pad to enter the fax number (up to 20 digits) of the remote fax machine where you want your fax messages sent, followed by # #.

You cannot use \* and # as dial numbers but you can press # to insert a pause in the fax number.

5. Hang up after you hear one long beep. Your Brother machine will forward any incoming faxes to the fax number you entered. The other fax machine will then print your fax messages.



- Remote Fax Retrieval
- · Store Incoming Faxes in the Machine's Memory
- Remote Retrieval Commands

▲ Home > Fax > Receive a Fax > Remote Fax Retrieval > Change the Fax Forwarding Number

# Change the Fax Forwarding Number

1. Dial your fax number.

Ø

- 2. When your machine answers, enter your Remote Access Code (three digits followed by \*). If you hear one long beep, you have messages.
- 3. When you hear two short beeps, press 9 5 4.
- 4. Wait for the long beep, enter the new number (up to 20 digits) of the remote fax machine you want your fax messages forwarded to using the dial pad, then enter # #.

You cannot use \* and # as dial numbers but you can press # to insert a pause in the fax number.

- 5. Press 9 0 to stop Remote Access when finished.
- 6. Hang up after you hear one long beep.

- Remote Fax Retrieval
- Remote Retrieval Commands

▲ Home > Fax > Voice Operations and Fax Numbers

# **Voice Operations and Fax Numbers**

- Voice Operations
- Store Fax Numbers
- Set up Groups for Broadcasting

▲ Home > Fax > Voice Operations and Fax Numbers > Voice Operations

# **Voice Operations**

- Send Tone Signals
- Pick up a Voice Call in Fax/Tel Receive Mode

▲ Home > Fax > Voice Operations and Fax Numbers > Voice Operations > Send Tone Signals

# Send Tone Signals

If you have a Pulse dialling service, but must send Tone signals (for example, for telephone banking), follow these steps. If you have a Touch Tone service, you will not need this feature to send tone signals.

This feature is not available in the New Zealand and South Africa.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 2. Press [Hook].
- 3. Press # on the machine's touchpanel. Any digits dialled after this will send tone signals.

When you are finished with the call, the machine will return to the Pulse dialling service.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

Press [Fax].
 If [Fax Preview] is set to [On], press [Fax] > [Sending Faxes].
 Press [Hook].

3. Press # on the machine's touchpanel. Any digits dialled after this will send tone signals.

When you are finished with the call, the machine will return to the Pulse dialling service.

# Related Information Voice Operations

332

▲ Home > Fax > Voice Operations and Fax Numbers > Voice Operations > Pick up a Voice Call in Fax/Tel Receive Mode

# Pick up a Voice Call in Fax/Tel Receive Mode

When the machine is in Fax/Tel mode, it will use the F/T Ring (pseudo/double-ringing) to alert you to pick up a voice call.

If you are at the machine, lift the external telephone's handset, and then press [Pickup] button to answer.

If you are at an extension telephone, lift the handset during the F/T Ring and then press #51 (#91 for New Zealand) between the pseudo/double rings. If no one is on the line, or if someone wants to send you a fax, send the call back to the machine by pressing \*51 (\*91 for New Zealand).

## Related Information

Voice Operations

▲ Home > Fax > Voice Operations and Fax Numbers > Store Fax Numbers

## **Store Fax Numbers**

- Store Address Book Numbers
- Store Address Book Numbers from Outgoing Calls
- Store Address Book Numbers from Caller ID History
- Change or Delete Address Book Names or Numbers

Home > Fax > Voice Operations and Fax Numbers > Store Fax Numbers > Store Address Book Numbers

## **Store Address Book Numbers**

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 📑 [Fax] > [Address Book].
- 2. Do the following steps:
  - a. Press [Edit] > [Add New Address] > [Name].
  - b. Enter the name (up to 16 characters) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
  - c. Press [Address 1].
  - d. Enter the first fax or telephone number (up to 20 digits) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
  - Press [Pause] to insert a pause between numbers. You can press [Pause] as many times as needed to increase the length of the pause.
    - Be sure to include the area code when entering a fax or telephone number. Depending on the country, the Caller ID names and history may not be displayed correctly if the area code is not registered with the fax or telephone number.
    - If you downloaded Internet Fax:

To store an E-mail address to use with Internet Fax or Scan to E-mail server, press and enter the E-mail address and press [OK].

- e. To store the second fax or telephone number, press [Address 2]. Enter the second fax or telephone number (up to 20 digits) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
- f. Press [OK] to confirm.

To store another Address Book number, repeat these steps.

## 3. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press 📑 [Fax] > [Address Book].
- 2. Do the following steps:
  - a. Press [Edit] > [Add New Address] > [Name].
  - b. Enter the name (up to 16 characters) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
  - c. Press [Address 1].
  - d. Enter the first fax or telephone number (up to 20 digits) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].

• Press [Pause] to insert a pause between numbers. You can press [Pause] as many times as needed to increase the length of the pause.

- Be sure to include the area code when entering a fax or telephone number. Depending on the country, the Caller ID names and history may not be displayed correctly if the area code is not registered with the fax or telephone number.
- If you downloaded Internet Fax:

To store an E-mail address to use with Internet Fax or Scan to E-mail server, press and enter the E-mail address and press [OK].

e. To store the second fax or telephone number, press [Address 2]. Enter the second fax or telephone number (up to 20 digits) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].

#### f. Press [OK] to confirm.

To store another Address Book number, repeat these steps.

3. Press

- Store Fax Numbers
- Set up Groups for Broadcasting

▲ Home > Fax > Voice Operations and Fax Numbers > Store Fax Numbers > Store Address Book Numbers from Outgoing Calls

# Store Address Book Numbers from Outgoing Calls

You can store Address Book numbers from the Outgoing Call history.

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 🚔 [Fax] > [Call History] > [Outgoing Call].
- 2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the number you want to store, and then press it.
- 3. Press [Edit] > [Add to Address Book] > [Name].

To delete the number from the Outgoing Call history list, press [Edit] > [Delete]. Press [Yes] to confirm.

- 4. Enter the name (up to 16 characters) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
- 5. To store the second fax or telephone number, press [Address 2]. Enter the second fax or telephone number (up to 20 digits) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
- 6. Press [OK] to confirm the fax or telephone number you want to store.
- 7. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press 📑 [Fax] > [Call History] > [Outgoing Call].
- 2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the number you want to store, and then press it.
- 3. Press [Edit] > [Add to Address Book] > [Name].

To delete the number from the Outgoing Call history list, press [Edit] > [Delete]. Press [Yes] to confirm.

- 4. Enter the name (up to 16 characters) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
- 5. To store the second fax or telephone number, press [Address 2]. Enter the second fax or telephone number (up to 20 digits) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
- 6. Press [OK] to confirm the fax or telephone number you want to store.

7. Press

- Store Fax Numbers
- Enter Text on Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Fax > Voice Operations and Fax Numbers > Store Fax Numbers > Store Address Book Numbers from Caller ID History

# Store Address Book Numbers from Caller ID History

If you have a Caller ID subscriber service from your telephone company, you can store Address Book numbers from incoming calls in the Caller ID history.

This feature is not available for Taiwan and some countries.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Fax] > [Call History] > [Caller ID History].
- 2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the name or number you want to store, and then press it.
- 3. Press [Edit] > [Add to Address Book] > [Name].

<sup>(</sup> To delete the number from the Caller ID history list, press [Edit] > [Delete]. Press [Yes] to confirm.

- 4. Enter the name (up to 16 characters) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
- 5. To store the second fax or telephone number, press [Address 2]. Enter the second fax or telephone number (up to 20 digits) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
- 6. Press [OK] to confirm the fax or telephone number you want to store.
- 7. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press 📑 [Fax] > [Call History] > [Caller ID History].
- 2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the name or number you want to store, and then press it.
- 3. Press [Edit] > [Add to Address Book] > [Name].

To delete the number from the Caller ID history list, press [Edit] > [Delete]. Press [Yes] to confirm.

- 4. Enter the name (up to 16 characters) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
- 5. To store the second fax or telephone number, press [Address 2]. Enter the second fax or telephone number (up to 20 digits) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
- 6. Press [OK] to confirm the fax or telephone number you want to store.
- 7. Press

- Store Fax Numbers
- Caller ID
- Enter Text on Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Fax > Voice Operations and Fax Numbers > Store Fax Numbers > Change or Delete Address Book Names or Numbers

# **Change or Delete Address Book Names or Numbers**

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 🔚 [Fax] > [Address Book] > [Edit].
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - **Press** [Change] to edit the names or fax or telephone numbers.

Press ▲ or ▼ to display the number you want to change, and then press it.

- To change the name, press [Name]. Enter the new name (up to 16 characters) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
- To change the first fax or telephone number, press [Address 1]. Enter the new fax or telephone number (up to 20 digits) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
- To change the second fax or telephone number, press [Address 2]. Enter the new fax or telephone number (up to 20 digits) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].

Press [OK] to finish.

To change a character, press  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  to position the cursor to highlight the character you want to change, and then press  $\checkmark$ . Enter the new character.

- To delete numbers, press ▲ or ▼ to display [Delete], and then press it.
  - Select the fax or telephone numbers you want to delete by pressing them to display a red check mark, and then press [OK].



#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press 📑 [Fax] > [Address Book] > [Edit].
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - Press [Change] to edit the names or fax or telephone numbers.

Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the number you want to change, and then press it.

- To change the name, press [Name]. Enter the new name (up to 16 characters) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
- To change the first fax or telephone number, press [Address 1]. Enter the new fax or telephone number (up to 20 digits) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
- To change the second fax or telephone number, press [Address 2]. Enter the new fax or telephone number (up to 20 digits) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].

Press [OK] to finish.

To change a character, press  $\triangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  to position the cursor to highlight the character you want to change, and then press  $\checkmark$ . Enter the new character.

- To delete numbers, press [Delete].
  - Select the fax or telephone numbers you want to delete by pressing them to display a red check mark, and then press [OK].





## **Related Information**

• Store Fax Numbers

Home > Fax > Voice Operations and Fax Numbers > Set up Groups for Broadcasting

## Set up Groups for Broadcasting

A Group, which can be stored in the Address Book, allows you to send the same fax message to many fax numbers.

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

First, you must store each fax number in the Address Book. Then you can include them as numbers in the Group. Each Group uses up an Address Book number. You can store up to six Groups, or you can assign up to 198 numbers to a large Group.

- 1. Press [Fax] > [Address Book].
- 2. Do the following steps:
  - a. Press [Edit] > [Setup Groups] > [Name].
  - b. Enter the Group name (up to 16 characters) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
  - c. Press [Add/Delete].
  - d. Add Address Book numbers to the Group by pressing them to display a red checkmark. Press [OK].
  - e. Read and confirm the displayed list of names and numbers you have selected, and then press [OK] to save your Group.

To store another Group for broadcasting, repeat these steps.

3. Press

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

First, you must store each fax number in the Address Book. Then you can include them as numbers in the Group. Each Group uses up an Address Book number. You can store up to six Groups, or you can assign up to 198 numbers to a large Group.

- 1. Press [Fax] > [Address Book].
- 2. Do the following steps:
  - a. Press [Edit] > [Setup Groups] > [Name].
  - b. Enter the Group name (up to 16 characters) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
  - c. Press [Add/Delete].
  - d. Add Address Book numbers to the Group by pressing them to display a red checkmark. Press [OK].
  - e. Read and confirm the displayed list of names and numbers you have selected, and then press [OK] to save your Group.

To store another Group for broadcasting, repeat these steps.

3. Press

- Voice Operations and Fax Numbers
- Change a Broadcasting Group Name
- Delete a Broadcasting Group
- Add or Delete a Broadcasting Group Member
- · Send the Same Fax to More than One Recipient (Broadcasting)

Store Address Book Numbers

▲ Home > Fax > Voice Operations and Fax Numbers > Set up Groups for Broadcasting > Change a Broadcasting Group Name

Change a Broadcasting Group Name			
>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW			
MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW			
1. Press 📑 [Fax] > [Address Book] > [Edit] > [Change].			
<ol> <li>Press ▲ or ▼ to display the Group you want to change, and then press it.</li> <li>Press [Name].</li> </ol>			
4. Enter the new Group name (up to 16 characters) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].			
How to change the stored name:			
To change a character, press ◀ or ▶ to position the cursor to highlight the incorrect character, and then press <<			
Enter the new character.			
5. Press [OK].			
6. Press			
MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW			
1. Press 📑 [Fax] > [Address Book] > [Edit] > [Change].			
<ol> <li>Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the Group you want, and then press it.</li> </ol>			
3. Press [Name].			
4. Enter the new Group name (up to 16 characters) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].			
How to change the stored name:			
To change a character, press ◀ or ► to position the cursor to highlight the incorrect character, and then			
press 🗙 .			
Enter the new character.			
5. Press [OK].			
6. Press			
Related Information			

- Set up Groups for Broadcasting
- Enter Text on Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Fax > Voice Operations and Fax Numbers > Set up Groups for Broadcasting > Delete a Broadcasting Group

# **Delete a Broadcasting Group**

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Fax] > [Address Book] > [Edit] > [Delete].
- 2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the Group you want to delete, and then press it.
- 3. Press [OK].
- 4. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press 📑 [Fax] > [Address Book] > [Edit] > [Delete].
- 2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the Group you want, and then press it.
- 3. Press [OK].
- 4. Press

## Related Information

Set up Groups for Broadcasting

▲ Home > Fax > Voice Operations and Fax Numbers > Set up Groups for Broadcasting > Add or Delete a Broadcasting Group Member

# Add or Delete a Broadcasting Group Member

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Fax] > [Address Book] > [Edit] > [Change].
- 2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the Group you want to change, and then press it.
- 3. Press ▲ or V to display [Add/Delete], and then press it.
- 4. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the number you want to add or delete.
- 5. Do the following for each number you want to change:
  - To add a number to the Group, press the check box of the number to add a check mark.
  - To delete a number from the Group, press the check box of the number to remove the check mark.
- 6. Press [OK].
- 7. Press [OK].
- 8. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Fax] > [Address Book] > [Edit] > [Change].
- 2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the Group you want, and then press it.
- 3. Swipe up or down or press  $\blacktriangle$  or  $\forall$  to display the [Add/Delete] option, and then press it.
- 4. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the number you want to add or delete.
- 5. Do the following for each number you want to change:
  - To add a number to the Group, press the check box of the number to add a check mark.
  - To delete a number from the Group, press the check box of the number to remove the check mark.
- 6. Press [OK].
- 7. Press [OK].
- 8. Press

#### Related Information

· Set up Groups for Broadcasting

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices

# **Telephone Services and External Devices**

- Distinctive Ring
- Caller ID
- Set the Telephone Line Type
- FaxAbility
- Voice Over Internet Protocol (VoIP/Telephone Line Interference)
- External TAD (Telephone Answering Device)
- External and Extension Telephones

## **Distinctive Ring**

This feature is available only for some countries.

## For Australia

Distinctive Ring is a function of your Brother machine that allows a person with one line to receive fax and voice calls through two different phone numbers on that one line. Brother uses the term "Distinctive Ring", but telephone companies market the service under a variety of names. This service establishes a second telephone number on the same line as your existing telephone number, and each number has its own ring pattern. Typically, the original number rings with the standard ring pattern and is used for receiving voice calls, and the second number rings with a different ring pattern and is used for receiving faxes. Only one call can be answered (or made) at any one time and while this call is in progress, incoming calls to either number will be presented with a busy tone.

- Contact your Telephone Service Provider to determine Distinctive Ring availability and any other related details.
  - After you have set the Distinctive Ring feature to On, the receive mode is set to [Manual] automatically. Your Distinctive Ring Number does not allow Voice calls only Faxes. You can not change the receive mode from [Manual] mode while the Distinctive Ring is set to on.

#### How does your telephone company's 'Distinctive Ring' service work?

Using "Distinctive Ring" service of your telephone company is the most efficient way to receive both fax and telephone calls on the same line. When the voice call comes in, all phones (extension and external) and the fax machine will ring to alert you to pick it up. If a fax call comes in, the fax machine will answer automatically without ringing, whereas the extension and external phones will ring twice with a Distinctive Ring pattern. It is also a more efficient way of operating a Fax machine with an extension phone as you do not have to use the remote activation codes. It gives you two independent numbers without the higher cost of a second line.

#### Flowchart Sequence of Incoming call



#### What does Brother's 'Distinctive Ring' do?

The Brother machine has a Distinctive Ring feature that allows you to use your machine to take full advantage of the telephone company's Distinctive Ring service. The new telephone number on your line can just receive faxes.

#### For Singapore and Hong Kong

This machine feature lets you use the Distinctive Ring subscriber service offered by some telephone companies, which allows you to have several telephone numbers on one phone line. Each phone number has its own Distinctive Ring pattern, so you will know which phone number is ringing. This is one way you can have a separate phone number for your machine.

Your machine has a Distinctive Ring function, allowing you to dedicate one phone number just for receiving faxes. You will need to set Distinctive Ring to On.

- You can switch it off temporarily, then turn it back on. When you get a new fax number, make sure you reset this function.
  - The machine will answer only calls to the Distinctive Ring number.

- Telephone Services and External Devices
- Turn on Distinctive Ring
- Turn off Distinctive Ring
- Settings Screen Overview
- Choose the Correct Receive Mode

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > Distinctive Ring > Turn on Distinctive Ring

# **Turn on Distinctive Ring**



This feature is available only for some countries.

#### For Australia

After you set the Distinctive Ring feature to [On], the receive mode is automatically set to [Manual]. Your Distinctive Ring Number does not allow Voice calls - only Faxes. You cannot change the receive mode to another mode while the Distinctive Ring is set to on.

#### For Singapore and Hong Kong

After you set the Distinctive Ring feature to [On], the receive mode is automatically set to [Manual]. Unless you have a TAD or Voice Mail set up on the Distinctive Ring number, Manual mode means you must answer all the calls yourself. You cannot change the receive mode to another mode while the Distinctive Ring is set to on.



>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Miscellaneous] > [Distinctive].
- 2. Press [On].
- 3. Press

Distinctive Ring is now set to [On].

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Miscellaneous] > [Distinctive].
- 2. Press [On].
- 3. Press

Distinctive Ring is now set to [On].

## Related Information

Distinctive Ring

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > Distinctive Ring > Turn off Distinctive Ring

# **Turn off Distinctive Ring**

This feature is available only for some countries.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 1 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Miscellaneous] > [Distinctive].
- 2. Press [Off].
- 3. Press

Ø

When you turn off Distinctive Ring, the machine will stay in [Manual] mode. You must set the Receive Mode again.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Miscellaneous] > [Distinctive].
- 2. Press [Off].
- 3. Press

When you turn off Distinctive Ring, the machine will stay in [Manual] mode. You must set the Receive Mode again.



- Distinctive Ring
- Error and Maintenance Messages

Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > Caller ID

# **Caller ID**

This feature is not available for Taiwan and some countries.

## For Australia and New Zealand

Caller ID is a telephone service that allows the subscriber to see a display of the caller's phone number or name as the telephone rings. It is a fast way to screen your calls. You can respond quickly to calls you missed, because Caller IDs are received and stored in your machine memory.

To get the Caller ID Service: apply for the Caller ID service at your local telephone company, if available.

#### Advantages of Caller ID

#### For Business

All businesses profit from a quicker response to customer calls. Businesses that provide mail order services, money-lending services or provide confidential information, can protect themselves from false orders or acceptance of false identification.

#### At Home

Residential customers can protect themselves from unwanted calls.

#### How Does the Caller ID Work?

The Caller ID appears on the display when your telephone rings.

As your telephone rings, the display shows you the caller's phone number or name if the name has been stored in the Address Book. Once you answer the call, the caller's ID disappears.

- If [ID Unknown] appears on the display, it means that the call came from outside your caller ID service area or a public phone. (Depends on network function.)
  - If [ID Withheld] appears on the display, it means the caller intentionally blocked the transmission of his/her ID. (Depends on network function.)

#### The Caller ID is Stored in Your Machine Memory

The machine can store a maximum of the last 30 incoming caller IDs in the memory, along with the time and date of reception. The 31st call will cause the oldest ID to be erased.

The Caller ID information stored in the memory can be used for the following:

#### • Printing the Caller ID List.

You can review calls you received by checking the Caller IDs in memory. This report will list the Date, Time, Phone Number (Caller ID) name, and type of Call (Comment) if available.

## For Singapore and Hong Kong

Ø

The Caller ID feature of this machine lets you use the Caller ID subscriber service offered by many local phone companies. Call your telephone company for details. This service provides you, by means of the screen display, the telephone number (or name) of your caller as the line rings.

After a few rings, the screen displays the telephone number of your caller (or name, if available). Once you answer the call, the Caller ID information disappears from the screen, but the call information remains stored in the Caller ID memory.

- The [ID Unknown] message means the call originated outside your Caller ID service area.
- The [ID Withheld] message means the caller has intentionally blocked transmission of Caller ID information.
  - You can print a list of Caller ID information received by your machine.
  - Caller ID service varies with different carriers. Call your local phone company to determine the kind of service available in your area.

- Telephone Services and External Devices
- Store Address Book Numbers from Caller ID History
- Print a Report
- Error and Maintenance Messages

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > Set the Telephone Line Type

# Set the Telephone Line Type

This feature is available only in South Africa.

If you are connecting the machine to a line that features PBX or ISDN to send and receive faxes, you must select a Telephone Line Type that matches your line's features.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 1 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Phone Line Set].
- 2. Press [Normal], [PBX], or [ISDN].
- 3. If you selected [PBX], do the following steps:
  - a. Press [On] or [Always].

If you select [On], the machine dials a prefix number before the fax number only when [R] is pressed.

• If you select [Always], the machine always dials a prefix number before the fax number.

b. Press [Dial Prefix].

c. Enter the prefix number using the touchscreen, and then press  $\left[\,\text{OK}\,\right]$  .

Use the numbers 0 to 9, #, I and !. You cannot use ! with any other numbers or characters.

## 4. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Phone Line Set].
- 2. Press [Normal], [PBX], or [ISDN].
- 3. If you selected [PBX], do the following steps:
  - a. Press [On] or [Always].

If you select [On], the machine dials a prefix number before the fax number only when [R] is pressed.

- If you select [Always], the machine always dials a prefix number before the fax number.
- b. Press [Dial Prefix].
- c. Enter the prefix number using the touchscreen, and then press  $\left[\,\text{OK}\,\right]$  .

Use the numbers 0 to 9, #, I and !. You cannot use ! with any other numbers or characters.

4. Press

- Telephone Services and External Devices
- PBX and TRANSFER
- Telephone and Fax problems
▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > Set the Telephone Line Type > PBX and TRANSFER

# **PBX and TRANSFER**

This feature is available only in South Africa.

The machine's [Phone Line Set] default setting is [Normal], which lets the machine connect to a standard Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) line. However, many offices use a central telephone system or Private Branch Exchange (PBX). Your machine can be connected to most types of PBX. The machine's recall feature supports timed break recall only (TBR). TBR will work with most PBX systems allowing you to gain access to an outside line, or transfer calls to another extension. Press [R] to use this feature.

Program a press of the [R] button as part of a number stored in the Address Book. When programming the Address Book number, press [R] first (the LCD displays '!'), then enter the telephone number. This avoids having to press [R] each time before you dial from the Address Book. However, your Telephone Line Type must be set to PBX on the machine for you to use this feature.



## **Related Information**

Set the Telephone Line Type

Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > FaxAbility

## FaxAbility

This feature is available only in New Zealand.

FaxAbility is a service offered by Telecom that allows you to have an additional number on one phone line, with its own distinctive ring pattern. This way, when you get an incoming call, you can identify the number being called by its ring.

### How Will the Fax Machine Treat All Other Numbers?

FaxAbility mode ensures that the machine will answer calls to the FaxAbility (secondary) number. When a call comes in to your main number, all the phones will ring. You can set an external answering device (TAD) to answer calls on the other number(s). (See the chart bellow.)

#### What is the Advantage of Using the FaxAbility Function?

Using FaxAbility is the most efficient way to receive both fax and telephone calls on the same line. It is much easier for your callers who dial manually. The fax machine will answer with receiving tones so they will not have to press an activation code. And the people who call to talk on your main number will not have to talk to your fax machine. Basically, it gives you two independent numbers without the higher cost of a second line.

### How Does FaxAbility Work?

For example, Your telephone number will have the standard ring pattern of long, long tone, while the new number will have a ring pattern of long, silence, long. When FaxAbility is On, you will not hear the first ring of all incoming calls on the fax machine. Extension phones will ring as usual. If the fax machine recognises the ring pattern, all ringing will stop and the fax machine will answer and automatically receive the fax message. Otherwise, you will hear the extension phones and the fax machine continue to ring. The fax machine always listens to the ring pattern before it answers, so do not pick up the phone during that time. You will quickly learn to recognise the ring pattern for faxes, so you will not be tempted to answer that number. Either you or a telephone answering device can answer the main number(s).

#### Flowchart Sequence of Incoming call



After you have set the FaxAbility feature to on, the receive mode is set to [Manual] automatically. Unless you have a TAD or Voice Mail set up on the FaxAbility number, Manual mode means you must answer all the call yourself. You can not change the receive mode to the other mode while the FaxAbility is set to on. When FaxAbility is on, the LCD will show [D/R] as the Receive Mode.

- Telephone Services and External Devices
- Turn FaxAbility Off or On

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > FaxAbility > Turn FaxAbility Off or On

# Turn FaxAbility Off or On

This feature is available only in New Zealand.

The FaxAbility function is designed to accommodate the FaxAbility service provided by Telecom.

Call Waiting beeps caused by incoming calls on your main number can affect fax transmissions. If you have FaxAbility Service but don't have Call Waiting, you need do nothing at this stage. If you do have Call Waiting as well as FaxAbility, set the Call Waiting menu option to On.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Miscellaneous] > [FaxAbility].
- 2. Press [On] (or [Off]) to set FaxAbility.

If you have FaxAbility service, press [On].

- 3. Press [Call Waiting].
- 4. Press [On] to set Call Waiting.

If you have Call Waiting service, press [On] to avoid the trouble caused by Call Waiting.

5. Press

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Miscellaneous] > [FaxAbility].
- Press [On] (or [Off]) to set FaxAbility.
   If you have FaxAbility service, press [On].
- 3. Press [Call Waiting].
- 4. Press [On] to set Call Waiting.

If you have Call Waiting service, press [On] to avoid the trouble caused by Call Waiting.

5. Press



- FaxAbility
- Error and Maintenance Messages

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > Voice Over Internet Protocol (VoIP/Telephone Line Interference)

# Voice Over Internet Protocol (VoIP/Telephone Line Interference)

VoIP is a type of phone system that uses an Internet connection instead of a traditional telephone line. Telephone providers frequently bundle VoIP together with Internet and cable services.

Your machine may not work with some VoIP systems. If you want to use your machine to send and receive faxes on a VoIP system, make sure one end of your telephone cord is connected to the socket labelled LINE on your machine. The other end of the telephone cord may be connected to a modem, phone adapter, splitter, or other such device.



If you have questions about how to connect your machine to the VoIP system, please contact your VoIP provider.

After you have connected your machine to the VoIP system, check for a dial tone. Lift the external telephone's handset and listen for a dial tone. If there is no dial tone, please contact your VoIP provider.

If you are having problems sending or receiving faxes over a VoIP system, we recommend changing the machine's modem speed to the [Basic(for VoIP)] setting.

- VoIP (Voice over IP) is a type of phone system that uses an Internet connection, rather than a traditional phone line.
- Brother does not recommend the use of a VoIP line. VoIP limitations in general can cause some functions of the fax machine not to work correctly.

- Telephone Services and External Devices
- Telephone Line Interference/VoIP

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > External TAD (Telephone Answering Device)

# External TAD (Telephone Answering Device)

You can connect an external Telephone Answering Device (TAD) to the same line as your machine. When the TAD answers a call, your machine will "listen" for the CNG (fax calling) tones sent by a sending fax machine. If it hears them it will take over the call and receive the fax. If it does not hear them, it will let your TAD take a voice message and the LCD will show [Telephone].

The external TAD must answer within two rings (we recommend setting it to two rings). This is because your machine cannot hear the CNG tones until the external TAD has picked up the call. The sending machine will send CNG tones for only eight to ten seconds longer. We do not recommend using the toll saver feature on your external TAD if it needs more than four rings to activate it.



## IMPORTANT

DO NOT connect a TAD elsewhere on the same telephone line.

If you have problems receiving faxes, reduce the Ring Delay setting on your external TAD.

- Telephone Services and External Devices
- Connect an External TAD
- · Record an Outgoing Message (OGM) on the External TAD
- Multi-line Connections (PABX)
- Telephone and Fax problems

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > External TAD (Telephone Answering Device) > Connect an External TAD

# **Connect an External TAD**

- Set your external TAD to one or two rings. The machine's Ring Delay setting does not apply.
- 2. Record the outgoing message on your external TAD.
- 3. Set the TAD to answer calls.
- 4. Set the Receive Mode on your machine to [External TAD].

- External TAD (Telephone Answering Device)
- Receive Modes Overview
- Choose the Correct Receive Mode
- Telephone and Fax problems

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > External TAD (Telephone Answering Device) > Record an Outgoing Message (OGM) on the External TAD

# Record an Outgoing Message (OGM) on the External TAD

1. Record five seconds of silence at the beginning of your message. This allows your machine time to listen for fax tones.

We recommend beginning your OGM with an initial five second silence because the machine cannot hear fax tones over a loud voice. You may try leaving out this pause, but if your machine has trouble receiving faxes, then you should re-record the OGM to include it.

2. Limit your speaking to 20 seconds.

Ø

3. End your 20-second message by giving your Remote Activation Code for people sending manual faxes. For example: "After the beep, leave a message or press \*51 and Start to send a fax."

#### Related Information

• External TAD (Telephone Answering Device)

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > External TAD (Telephone Answering Device) > Multi-line Connections (PABX)

# Multi-line Connections (PABX)

Most offices use a central telephone system.

Brother recommends that all our machines be connected to a discreet (dedicated) line. Although a particular PABX may appear to work with a particular model of fax machine, we cannot guarantee that the unit will operate correctly.

While it is often relatively simple to connect a fax machine to a PABX, (Private Automatic Branch Exchange), we suggest that you contact the company that installed your telephone system and ask them to connect the fax machine for you.

Brother does not recommend the use of a PABX line. PABX limitations in general can cause some functions of the fax machine not to work correctly.

#### Related Information

• External TAD (Telephone Answering Device)

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > External and Extension Telephones

## **External and Extension Telephones**

- Connect an External or Extension Telephone
- Operation from External and Extension Telephones
- Use a Cordless External Telephone
- Use the Remote Codes

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > External and Extension Telephones > Connect an External or Extension Telephone

# **Connect an External or Extension Telephone**

You can connect a separate telephone to your machine as shown in the diagram below.



## Related Information

• External and Extension Telephones

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > External and Extension Telephones > Operation from External and Extension Telephones

## **Operation from External and Extension Telephones**

If you answer a fax call at an extension or an external telephone, you can make your machine take the call by using the Remote Activation Code. When you press the Remote Activation Code **\*51** (**\*91** for New Zealand), the machine starts to receive the fax.

If the machine answers a voice call and pseudo/double-rings for you to take over, you can take the call at an extension telephone by pressing the Remote Deactivation Code **#51** (**#91** for New Zealand).

#### If you answer a call and no one is on the line:

You should assume that you're receiving a manual fax.

Press \*51 (\*91 for New Zealand) and wait for the chirp or until the LCD shows [Receiving], and then hang up.

You can also use the Fax Detect feature to make your machine automatically take the call.

- External and Extension Telephones
- Set the Number of Rings Before the Machine Answers (Ring Delay)
- Set Fax Detect
- Set a Remote Access Code
- Set the F/T Ring Time (Pseudo/Double-ring)

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > External and Extension Telephones > Use a Cordless External Telephone

# Use a Cordless External Telephone

Once the base unit of the cordless telephone has been connected to the same telephone line as the machine, you can answer calls on the cordless handset during the Ring Delay.

## Related Information

• External and Extension Telephones

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > External and Extension Telephones > Use the Remote Codes

# **Use the Remote Codes**

## **Remote Activation Code**

If you answer a fax call on an extension or external telephone, you can tell your machine to receive it by pressing the Remote Activation Code **\*51** (**\*91** for New Zealand). Wait for the chirping sounds then replace the handset.

If you answer a fax call at the external telephone, you can make the machine receive the fax by pressing the Start button and then selecting the option to receive.

## **Remote Deactivation Code**

If you receive a voice call and the machine is in F/T mode, it will start to sound the F/T ring (pseudo/double-ring) after the initial Ring Delay. If you pick up the call on an extension telephone you can turn the F/T ring off by pressing **#51** (**#91** for New Zealand) (make sure you press this between the rings).

If the machine answers a voice call and pseudo/double-rings for you to take over, you can take the call at the external telephone by pressing [Pickup].



- External and Extension Telephones
- Change the Remote Codes
- Set a Remote Access Code
- Set Fax Detect

▲ Home > Fax > Telephone Services and External Devices > External and Extension Telephones > Use the Remote Codes > Change the Remote Codes

# **Change the Remote Codes**

The preset Remote Activation Code is **\*51** (**\*91** for New Zealand). The preset Remote Deactivation Code is **#51** (**#91** for New Zealand). If you are always disconnected when accessing your External TAD remotely, try changing the three-digit remote codes using the numbers 0-9, \*, #.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Remote Codes].
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - To change the Remote Activation Code, press [Act.Code]. Enter the new code, and then press [OK].
  - To change the Remote Deactivation Code, press [Deact.Code]. Enter the new code, and then press [OK].
  - If you do not want to change the Codes, go to the next step.
  - To turn the Remote Codes [Off] (or [On]), press [Remote Codes]. Press [Off] (or [On]).

# 3. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Remote Codes].
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - To change the Remote Activation Code, press [Act.Code]. Enter the new code, and then press [OK].
  - To change the Remote Deactivation Code, press [Deact.Code]. Enter the new code, and then press [OK].
  - If you do not want to change the Codes, go to the next step.
  - To turn the Remote Codes [Off] (or [On]), press [Remote Codes]. Press [Off] (or [On]).
- 3. Press

#### Related Information

Use the Remote Codes

### ▲ Home > Fax > Fax Reports

# Fax Reports

- Set the Transmission Verification Report's Style
- Set the Fax Journal's Interval Period
- Print Reports

▲ Home > Fax > Fax Reports > Set the Transmission Verification Report's Style

# Set the Transmission Verification Report's Style

You can use the Transmission Verification Report as proof that you sent a fax. This report lists the receiving party's name or fax number, the time and date of transmission, duration of transmission, number of pages sent, and whether or not the transmission was successful.

There are several settings available for the Transmission Verification Report:

Option	Description
On	Prints a report after every fax you send.
On (+Image)	Prints a report after every fax you send. A portion of the fax's first page appears on the report.
Error only	Prints a report if your fax is unsuccessful due to a transmission error.
Error only (+Image)	Prints a report if your fax is unsuccessful due to a transmission error. A portion of the fax's first page appears on the report.
Off	The report will not be printed.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Report Setting] > [XMIT Report].
- 2. Press the option you want.

If you select [On (+Image)] or [Error only (+Image)], the image will not appear on the Transmission Verification Report if Real Time Transmission is set to [On]. The image will not appear on the report when you send a colour fax.

3. Press

If the transmission is successful, [OK] appears next to [RESULT] on the Transmission Verification Report. If the transmission is not successful, [ERROR] appears next to [RESULT].

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Report Setting] > [XMIT Report].
- 2. Press the option you want.

If you select [On (+Image)] or [Error only (+Image)], the image will not appear on the Transmission Verification Report if Real Time Transmission is set to [On]. The image will not appear on the report when you send a colour fax.

3. Press

If the transmission is successful, [OK] appears next to [RESULT] on the Transmission Verification Report. If the transmission is not successful, [ERROR] appears next to [RESULT].

#### Related Information

Fax Reports

▲ Home > Fax > Fax Reports > Set the Fax Journal's Interval Period

## Set the Fax Journal's Interval Period

You can set the machine to print a Fax Journal at specific intervals (every 50 faxes, 6, 12 or 24 hours, 2 or 7 days).

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Report Setting] > [Journal Period].
- 2. Press [Journal Period].
- 3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select an interval.
  - 6, 12, 24 hours, 2 or 7 days

The machine will print the report at the selected interval and then erase all fax jobs from the Journal's memory. If the memory becomes full with 200 jobs before the time you selected has passed, the machine will print the Journal early and then erase all fax jobs from the memory. If you want an extra report before it is due to print, you can print it without erasing the jobs.

• Every 50 Faxes

The machine will print the Journal when the machine has stored 50 fax jobs.

- 4. If you selected 6, 12, 24 hours, 2 or 7 days, press [Time] and enter the time of day using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
- 5. If you selected [Every 7 Days], press [Day]. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Every Monday], [Every Tuesday], [Every Wednesday], [Every Thursday], [Every Friday], [Every Saturday] or [Every Sunday] option, and then press the first day of the seven-day countdown.
- 6. Press

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press 1 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Report Setting] > [Journal Period].
- 2. Press [Journal Period].
- 3. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to select an interval.
  - 6, 12, 24 hours, 2 or 7 days

The machine will print the report at the selected interval and then erase all fax jobs from the Journal's memory. If the memory becomes full with 200 jobs before the time you selected has passed, the machine will print the Journal early and then erase all fax jobs from the memory. If you want an extra report before it is due to print, you can print it without erasing the jobs.

Every 50 Faxes

The machine will print the Journal when the machine has stored 50 fax jobs.

- 4. If you selected 6, 12, 24 hours, 2 or 7 days, press [Time] and enter the time of day using the touchscreen. Press [OK].
- 5. If you selected [Every 7 Days], press [Day]. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Every Monday], [Every Tuesday], [Every Wednesday], [Every Thursday], [Every Friday], [Every Saturday] or [Every Sunday] option, and then press the first day of the seven-day countdown.

# 6. Press

#### Related Information

Fax Reports

• Set the Machine to Power Off Automatically

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX

# PC-FAX

- PC-FAX for Windows
- PC-FAX for Mac

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows

# **PC-FAX for Windows**

- PC-FAX Overview (Windows)
- Send a Fax Using PC-FAX (Windows)
- Receive Faxes on Your Computer (Windows)

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > PC-FAX Overview (Windows)

# PC-FAX Overview (Windows)

Reduce paper consumption and save time by using Brother's PC-FAX software to send faxes directly from your machine.



- Configure PC-FAX (Windows)
- Configure your PC-Fax Address Book (Windows)

# ▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > PC-FAX Overview (Windows) > Configure PC-FAX (Windows)

# **Configure PC-FAX (Windows)**

Before sending faxes using PC-FAX, personalise the send options in each tab of the PC-FAX Setup dialog box.

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista and Windows 7

Click (Start) > All Programs > Brother > Brother Utilities.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Setup Sending**.

Windows 8 and Windows 10

Launch **Fig** (Brother Utilities), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click PC-FAX in the left navigation bar, and then click Setup Sending.

The PC-FAX Setup dialog box appears.

🖗 PC-FAX Setup		×
User Information	Sending Address Book	
Name:		
Company:		
Department:		
Phone Number:		
Fax Number:		
E-mail:		
Address 1:		
Address 2:		
	ок с	ancel

- 2. Do one of the following:
  - Click the **User Information** tab, and then type your user information in the fields.

Each Microsoft account can have its own customised **User Information** screen for custom fax headers and cover pages.

- Click the Sending tab, and then type the number needed to access an outside line (if needed) in the Outside line access field. Select the Include header check box to include the header information.
- Click the Address Book tab, and then select the address book you want to use for PC-FAX from the Select Address Book drop-down list.
- 3. Click **OK**.

#### Related Information

PC-FAX Overview (Windows)

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > PC-FAX Overview (Windows) > Configure your PC-Fax Address Book (Windows)

# Configure your PC-Fax Address Book (Windows)

Add, edit and delete members and groups to personalise your Brother Address Book.

- Add a Member to your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)
- Create a Group in your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)
- Edit Member or Group Information in your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)
- Delete a Member or Group in your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)
- Export your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)
- Import Information to your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > PC-FAX Overview (Windows) > Configure your PC-Fax Address Book (Windows) > Add a Member to your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)

# Add a Member to your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)

Add new people and their fax information to the PC-Fax Address Book if you want to send a fax using Brother PC-Fax software.

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista and Windows 7

Click (Start) > All Programs > Brother > Brother Utilities.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

• Windows 8 and Windows 10

Launch **The Second Seco** 

The Address Book dialog box appears.	
--------------------------------------	--

🎍 Address Book			
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>H</u> elp			
<b>i</b> , <b>i</b>	2		
Name	Fax	E-Mail	
ales			
brother1	908-555-1234		
brother2	908-704-2312		

2. Click 🔼.

The Address Book Member Setup dialog box appears.

실 Address Book Mer	nber Setup
Name:	Title:
Company:	
Department:	Job Title:
Street Address:	
City:	State/Province:
Zip Code/Post Code:	Country/Region:
Business Phone:	Home Phone:
Fax:	Mobile Phone:
E-Mail:	
	OK Cancel

- 3. Type the member's information in the corresponding fields. Only the **Name** field is required.
- 4. Click OK.

## Related Information

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > PC-FAX Overview (Windows) > Configure your PC-Fax Address Book (Windows) > Create a Group in your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)

# Create a Group in your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)

Create a group to broadcast the same PC-FAX to several recipients at one time.

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista and Windows 7



Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

Windows 8 and Windows 10

Launch **The Constant Selected**). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

The Address Book dialog box appears.

실 Address Book			
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>H</u> elp			
	24.		
Name	Fax	E-Mail	
📑 sales			
brother1	908-555-1234		
brother2	908-704-2312		

2. Click 🕰.

The Address Book Group Setup dialog box appears.

😉 Address Book Group Setu	р				×
Group Name	<b>a</b> i	sales	;		
Available Names			Group Members		
		»	brother1 brother2		
Add >>			< Re	move	
			ОК	Cancel	

- 3. Type the name of the new group in the **Group Name** field.
- In the Available Names field, select each name you want to include in the group, and then click Add >>.
   Members added to the group appear in the Group Members box.
- 5. When finished, click **OK**.

Ø

Each group can contain up to 50 members.

## **Related Information**

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > PC-FAX Overview (Windows) > Configure your PC-Fax Address Book (Windows) > Edit Member or Group Information in your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)

# Edit Member or Group Information in your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista and Windows 7

#### Click (Start) > All Programs > Brother > Brother Utilities.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

• Windows 8 and Windows 10

Launch **The Second Seco** 

The Address Book dialog box appears.

실 Address Book			- • •
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>H</u> elp			
Name	Fax	E-Mail	
👬 sales			
brother1	908-555-1234		
brother2	908-704-2312		

- 2. Select the member or group you want to edit.
- 3. Click **[** (**Properties**).
- 4. Change the member or group information.
- 5. Click OK.

#### Related Information

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > PC-FAX Overview (Windows) > Configure your PC-Fax Address Book (Windows) > Delete a Member or Group in your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)

## Delete a Member or Group in your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista and Windows 7

Click (Start) > All Programs > Brother > Brother Utilities.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

Windows 8 and Windows 10

Launch **Fig** (Brother Utilities), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

The Address Book dialog box appears.

실 Address Book			
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>H</u> elp			
<b>B</b> , <b>B</b> , E	<b>A</b> .		
Name	Fax	E-Mail	
👬 sales			
brother1	908-555-1234		
💼 brother2	908-704-2312		

- 2. Select the member or group you want to delete.
- 3. Click 🛃 (Delete).
- 4. When the confirmation dialog box appears, click OK.

#### Related Information

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > PC-FAX Overview (Windows) > Configure your PC-Fax Address Book (Windows) > Export your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)

# Export your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)

You can export the Address Book as an ASCII text file (\*.csv), a vCard (an electronic business card), or **Remote Setup Dial Data** and save it on your computer.

- You cannot export the group settings when you export the Address Book data.
- 1. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista and Windows 7

#### Click (Start) > All Programs > Brother > Brother Utilities.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

Windows 8 and Windows 10

Launch **Fig.** (Brother Utilities), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

The Address Book dialog box appears.

일 Address Book			
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit <u>H</u> elp			
	<b>2</b>		
Name	Fax	E-Mail	
📑 sales			
🐻 brother1	908-555-1234		
🐻 brother2	908-704-2312		
<u></u>			

- 2. Click the File menu, and then select Export.
- 3. Select one of the following:
  - Text

The Select Items dialog box appears. Go to step 4.

vCard

You must select the member you want to export from your address book before selecting this option. Browse to the folder where you want to save the vCard, type the vCard name in the **File name** field, and then click **Save**.

Remote Setup Dial Data

Browse to the folder where you want to save the data, type the file name in the **File name** field, and then click **Save**.

4. In the Available Items field, select the data you want to export, and then click Add >>.

Select items in the orde You can select the sep		nserted between items.
Available Items		Selected Items
Name Title Company Department Job Title Street Address City State/Province Zip Code/Post Code Country/Region Business Phone	Add >>	
Divide Character Comma   Tab		OK Cancel

- 5. If you are exporting to an ASCII file, under the Divide Character section, select the Tab or Comma option to separate the data fields.
- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Browse to the folder on your computer where you want to save the data, type the file name, and then click Save.



▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > PC-FAX Overview (Windows) > Configure your PC-Fax Address Book (Windows) > Import Information to your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)

# Import Information to your PC-FAX Address Book (Windows)

You can import ASCII text files (\*.csv), vCards (electronic business cards), or **Remote Setup Dial Data** into your Address Book.

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista and Windows 7

#### Click (Start) > All Programs > Brother > Brother Utilities.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

Windows 8 and Windows 10

Launch **The Second Seco** 

The Address	Book	dialog	box	appears.
-------------	------	--------	-----	----------

Address Book				
<u>File Edit H</u> elp				
Name	Fax	E-Mail		
ales 👬				
🚺 brother1	908-555-1234			
brother2	908-704-2312			

- 2. Click the File menu, and then select Import.
- 3. Select one of the following:
  - Text

The Select Items dialog box appears. Go to step 4.

vCard

Go to step 7.

Remote Setup Dial Data

Go to step 7.

4. In the Available Items field, select the data you want to import, and then click Add >>.

Select the fields from the . Import text file. You must select the separ			-	
Available Items			Selected Item	IS
Name Title Company Department Job Title Street Address City State/Province Zip Code/Post Code Country/Region Business Phone	* III	Add >> <th></th> <th></th>		
Divide Character				

You must select and add fields from the **Available Items** list in the same order they are listed in the import text file.

- 5. If you are importing an ASCII file, under the **Divide Character** section, select the **Tab** or **Comma** option to separate the data fields.
- 6. Click OK.

Ø

7. Browse to the folder where you want to import the data, type the file name, and then click **Open**.

🏪 Open					×
😋 🗢 🛱 🕨 Lib	oraries 🕨		✓ Search Libro	iries	Q
Organize 🔻				-	0
☆ Favorites	Libraries Open a library to see y	your files and arrange	them by folder, date, and	other properties.	
📄 Libraries					
🖏 Homegroup					
🖳 Computer					
🙀 Network	Documents	Music	Pictures	Videos	
	File <u>n</u> ame:		✓ VCard {*.vcf} Open	Cancel	• 

#### **Related Information**

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > Send a Fax Using PC-FAX (Windows)

# Send a Fax Using PC-FAX (Windows)

PC-FAX supports only monochrome faxes. A monochrome fax will be sent even if the original data is colour and the receiving fax machine supports colour faxes.

- 1. Create a file in any application on your computer.
- 2. Select the print command in your application.
- 3. Select Brother PC-FAX as your printer, and then complete your print operation.

The Brother PC-FAX dialog box appears.

🖷 BrotherPC-FAX					
Address Book Dial Restriction	-	<ul> <li>Add Cover Page</li> <li>brother1 [ 908-555-1234 ]</li> <li>brother2 [ 908-704-2312 ]</li> </ul>			
Add Send Address		2/50		All Clear	
Redial Pause	1 4 7 *	2 5 8 0	3 6 9 #	Cancel	

- 4. Type a fax number using one of the following methods:
  - · Click the numbers on the dial pad to type the number, and then click Add Send Address.

If you select the **Dial Restriction** check box, a confirmation dialog box will appear for you to re-type the fax number using the keyboard. This feature helps to prevent transmissions to the wrong destination.

Click the Address Book button, and then select a member or group from the Address Book.

If you make a mistake, click All Clear to delete all entries.

- 5. To include a cover page, select the **Add Cover Page** check box. You can also click to create or edit a cover page.
- 6. Click **Start** to send the fax.

• To cancel the fax, click Cancel.

To redial a number, click Redial to show the last five fax numbers, select a number, and then click Start.



PC-FAX for Windows

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > Receive Faxes on Your Computer (Windows)

# **Receive Faxes on Your Computer (Windows)**

Use Brother's PC-FAX software to receive faxes on your computer, screen them and print only those faxes you want.



• Receive Faxes Using PC-FAX Receive (Windows)

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > Receive Faxes on Your Computer (Windows) > Receive Faxes Using PC-FAX Receive (Windows)

# **Receive Faxes Using PC-FAX Receive (Windows)**

Brother's PC-FAX Receive software lets you view and store faxes on your computer. It is automatically installed when you install the Brother software and drivers and works on locally or network-connected machines.

 PC-FAX Receive supports only monochrome faxes. When you receive a colour fax, your machine prints the colour fax at your machine but does not send the fax to your computer.

When you turn off your computer, your machine will continue to receive and store faxes in your Brother machine's memory. The machine's LCD will display the number of stored faxes received. When you start this application, the software will transfer all received faxes to your computer at once. You can enable the Backup Print option if you want the machine to print a copy of the fax before the fax is sent to your computer, or before the computer is switched off. You can configure the Backup Print settings from your Brother machine.

## I

- Receive Faxes on Your Computer (Windows)
- Run Brother's PC-FAX Receive on Your Computer (Windows)
- View Received PC-FAX Messages (Windows)
- Use PC-Fax Receive to Transfer Received Faxes to Your Computer (Windows only)
▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > Receive Faxes on Your Computer (Windows) > Receive Faxes Using PC-FAX Receive (Windows) > Run Brother's PC-FAX Receive on Your Computer (Windows)

## Run Brother's PC-FAX Receive on Your Computer (Windows)

Ø

We recommend selecting the **Start PC-FAX Receive on computer startup** check box so that the software runs automatically and can transfer any faxes upon computer startup.

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista and Windows 7

Click (Start) > All Programs > Brother > Brother Utilities.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Receive**.

Windows 8 and Windows 10

Launch **T** (**Brother Utilities**), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Receive**.

2. Confirm the message and click Yes.

The **PC-FAX Receive** window appears. The **I** (-2146826265) icon also appears in your computer task tray.

## Related Information

- Receive Faxes Using PC-FAX Receive (Windows)
- Set Up Your Computer for PC-FAX Receiving (Windows)
- Add Your Brother Machine to PC-FAX Receiving (Windows)

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > Receive Faxes on Your Computer (Windows) > Receive Faxes Using PC-FAX Receive (Windows) > Run Brother's PC-FAX Receive on Your Computer (Windows) > Set Up Your Computer for PC-FAX Receiving (Windows)

## Set Up Your Computer for PC-FAX Receiving (Windows)

1. Double-click the 📻 (-2146826265) icon in your computer task tray.

The PC-FAX Receive window appears.

- 2. Click Settings.
- 3. Configure these options as needed:

## Preferences

Configure to start PC-FAX Receive automatically when you start Windows.

## Save

Configure the path to save PC-FAX files and select the received document format.

## Upload to

Configure the path to the SharePoint server and select the option to upload automatically or manually (available only for Administrators).

## Device

Select the Brother machine that you want to receive PC-FAX.

## Lock (available only for Administrators)

Restrict users who do not have administrator privileges from configuring the settings options shown above.

🔁 Settings		×
Preferences	Preferences Settings	0
Save Upload to Device Lock	Start PC-FAX Receive on computer startup Open the main window on PC-FAX Receive startup	
	OK Cancel	Apply

## 4. Click OK.



▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > Receive Faxes on Your Computer (Windows) > Receive Faxes Using PC-FAX Receive (Windows) > Run Brother's PC-FAX Receive on Your Computer (Windows) > Add Your Brother Machine to PC-FAX Receiving (Windows)

## Add Your Brother Machine to PC-FAX Receiving (Windows)

- If you installed the machine following the instructions for a network user, then the machine should already be configured for your network.
- 1. Double-click the 🔚 (-2146826265) icon in your computer task tray.

The PC-FAX Receive window appears.

- 2. Click Settings.
- 3. Click Device > Add.

💼 Settings					-
Preferences Save	Device Settings				0
	Fax Receive Device Lis	st			
Upload to	Display Name	Model Name	I/F	Node Name	IP Address
Device	XXX-XXXX	MFC-XXXX	LAN	BRN30XXXXXXXXXX	192.168.XX.XX
Lock					
			Add	Edit	Delete
	Enter your PC display	name (May 15 Cha	ractors)		
	WIN-DTUT4M0NV3F		racters		
	WIN-DT014M0NV3F				
				OK Can	cel Apply

4. Select the appropriate connection method.

## Select your machine from the automatic search results below.

Connected Brother machines will be displayed. Select a device from the list. Click OK.

## Specify your machine by IP address

Type the machine's IP address in the IP Address field, and then click OK.

Model Name	I/F	Node Name	IP Address	Location	

- 5. To change the computer name that will appear on the machine's LCD, type the new name in the **Enter your PC display name (Max 15 Characters)** field.
- 6. Click OK.



• Run Brother's PC-FAX Receive on Your Computer (Windows)

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Windows > Receive Faxes on Your Computer (Windows) > Receive Faxes Using PC-FAX Receive (Windows) > View Received PC-FAX Messages (Windows)

## View Received PC-FAX Messages (Windows)

## **Receiving Status**

Icon	Indicated Status
16	Standby mode No unread messages
	Receiving messages
2	Messages received Unread messages

1. Double-click the 🕞 (-2146826265) icon in your computer task tray.

The PC-FAX Receive window appears.



2. Click any faxes in the list to view them.

Ø

3. When finished, click in the right top corner of the window to close it.

Even after closing the window, PC-FAX Receive is active and the [] (-2146826265) icon will remain in your computer task tray. To close PC-FAX Receive, click the icon in the computer task tray and click **Close**.

## **Related Information**

 $\checkmark$ 

Receive Faxes Using PC-FAX Receive (Windows)

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Mac

## **PC-FAX** for Mac

Use Brother's PC-FAX software to send faxes directly from your Mac without printing them. This feature helps reduce your paper consumption and save time.

• Send Faxes from Your Application (Mac)

▲ Home > Fax > PC-FAX > PC-FAX for Mac > Send Faxes from Your Application (Mac)

## Send Faxes from Your Application (Mac)

PC-FAX supports only monochrome faxes. A monochrome fax will be sent even if the original data is colour and the receiving fax machine supports colour faxes.

- 1. Create a document in a Mac application.
- 2. From an application, such as Apple TextEdit, click the File menu, and then select Print.
- 3. Click the application pop-up menu, and then select the Send Fax option.

	Printer: Brother MFC-XXXX
	Presets: Default Settings
	Copies: 1 Two-Sided
	Pages: • All From: 1 to: 1
	Paper Size: A4 210 by 297 mm
	Orientation:
	✓ TextEdit
1 of 1	Layout Color Matching Paper Handling Cover Page
? PDF Hide Details	Print Settings Color Settings Send Fax
	Supply Levels

4. Click the **Output** pop-up menu, and then select the **Facsimile** option.

		other MFC-XXXX 🗘
	Copies: 1	Two-Sided
	Pages: O A	AII
		From: 1 to: 1
	Paper Size: A4	210 by 297 mm
	Orientation: 1	1
	Se	nd Fax
	Output:	Facsimile
	Destination Free M	
H4 < 1 of 1 > >>>	Destination Fax Nu Name	
Hel C 1of1 > Hel		imbers: Fax#

Type a fax number in the Input Fax Number field, and then click Add.
 The fax number is displayed in the Destination Fax Numbers field.

To send a fax to more than one number, click the **Add** button after entering the first fax number and type the next fax number. The destination fax numbers will be listed in the **Destination Fax Numbers** field.

	Printer: Bro Presets: De	fault Settings
	Copies: 1	Two-Sided
	Pages: OA	
		from: 1 to: 1
	Paper Size: A4	210 by 297 mm
	Orientation:	Ì I-
	Se	nd Fax
	Output:	Facsimile
	Destination Fax Nu	
	Name	Fax#
	Name	rdx#
1 of 1 > IM	Name	222-111-3333
LC 1of1 DEF	-	222-111-3333
< 1 of 1 > PM		222-111-3333

6. Click **Print** to send the fax.

## Related Information

PC-FAX for Mac

## Home > Network

## Network

- Supported Basic Network Features
- Network Management Software and Utilities
- Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network
- Advanced Network Features
- Technical Information for Advanced Users

▲ Home > Network > Supported Basic Network Features

## **Supported Basic Network Features**

The print server supports various features depending on the operating system. Use this table to see which network features and connections are supported by each operating system.

Operating Systems	Windows Vista Windows 7 Windows 8 Windows 10	Windows Server 2008/2012/2012 R2	OS X v10.9.5 OS X v10.10.x OS X v10.11.x
Printing	Yes	Yes	Yes
Scanning	Yes		Yes
PC Fax Send (Available only for certain models)	Yes		Yes
PC Fax Receive (Available only for certain models)	Yes		
BRAdmin Light <sup>1</sup>	Yes	Yes	
BRAdmin Professional <sup>2</sup>	Yes	Yes	
Web Based Management	Yes	Yes	Yes
Remote Setup (Available only for certain models)	Yes		Yes
Status Monitor	Yes		Yes
Driver Deployment Wizard	Yes	Yes	
Vertical Pairing (Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10 only)	Yes		

## Related Information

Network

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> BRAdmin Light is available as a download from your model's page at <u>support.brother.com</u>.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> BRAdmin Professional is available as a download from your model's page at <u>support.brother.com</u>.

▲ Home > Network > Network Management Software and Utilities

## **Network Management Software and Utilities**

Configure and change your Brother machine's network settings using a management utility.

- Learn about Network Management Software and Utilities
- Change Machine Settings from Your Computer

Home > Network > Network Management Software and Utilities > Learn about Network Management Software and Utilities

## Learn about Network Management Software and Utilities

## Web Based Management

Web Based Management is a utility that uses a standard web browser to manage your machine using the Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or Hyper Text Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer (HTTPS). Type your machine's IP address into your web browser to access and change your print server settings.

## **BRAdmin Light (Windows)**

BRAdmin Light is a utility for the initial setup of Brother network-connected devices. This utility can search for Brother products on your network, view the status and configure the basic network settings, such as IP address.

Go to your model's **Downloads** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u> to download BRAdmin Light.

• If using Windows Firewall, or the firewall function of an anti-spyware or antivirus application, temporarily disable them. When you are sure you can print, configure the software settings following the instructions.

## **BRAdmin Professional (Windows)**

BRAdmin Professional is a utility for more advanced management of network-connected Brother devices. This utility can search for Brother products on your network and view the device status from an easy-to-read Windows Explorer-style screen that changes colour to identify the status of each device. You can configure network and device settings, and update device firmware from a Windows computer on your LAN. BRAdmin Professional can also log activity of Brother devices on your network and export the log data.

- Go to your model's **Downloads** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u> to download the latest version of Brother's BRAdmin Professional utility.
- Node name: The node name appears in the current BRAdmin Professional window. The default node name is "BRNxxxxxxxxxx" for a wired network or "BRWxxxxxxxxxx" for a wireless network (where "xxxxxxxxxxxx" is your machine's MAC Address / Ethernet address).
- If using Windows Firewall, or the firewall function of an anti-spyware or antivirus application, temporarily
  disable them. When you are sure you can print, configure the software settings following the
  instructions.

## Remote Setup (Windows and Mac)

Remote Setup is a program for configuring many machine and network settings from either a Windows or a Mac application. When you start this application, the settings on your machine are automatically downloaded to your computer and displayed on your computer screen. If you change the settings, you can upload them directly to the machine.



This utility can be used with either a USB or a network connection.

## **Related Information**

Network Management Software and Utilities

▲ Home > Network > Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network

# Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network

To connect your machine to your wireless network, we recommend using the Installation CD-ROM.

- Before Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network
- Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)
- Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)
- Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID is Not Broadcast
- Configure Your Machine for an Enterprise Wireless Network
- Use Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup>

Home > Network > Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network > Before Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network

## Before Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network

Before attempting to configure a wireless network, confirm the following:

Before configuring wireless settings, you must know your Network name (SSID) and Network Key. If you are
using an enterprise wireless network, you must know the User ID and Password.

If you do not know the security information, please consult the router manufacture, your system administrator, or your Internet provider.

 To achieve optimum results with normal everyday document printing, place the Brother machine as close to the wireless LAN access point/router as possible with minimal obstructions. Large objects and walls between the two devices and interference from other electronic devices can affect the data transfer speed of your documents.

Due to these factors, wireless may not be the best method of connection for all types of documents and applications. If you are printing large files, such as multi-page documents with mixed text and large graphics, you may want to consider selecting wired Ethernet for faster data transfer (supported models only), or USB for the fastest throughput speed.

 Although the Brother machine can be used in both a wired and wireless network (supported models only), only one connection method can be used at a time. However, a wireless network connection and Wi-Fi Direct connection, or a wired network connection (supported models only) and Wi-Fi Direct connection can be used at the same time.

## Related Information

• Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network

▲ Home > Network > Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network > Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)

# Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)

If your wireless access point/router supports WPS (Push Button Configuration), you can use WPS from your machine's control panel menu to configure your wireless network settings.

Routers or access points that support WPS are marked with this symbol:



## >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [WPS].
- 2. When [Enable WLAN?] appears, press [Yes].

The wireless setup wizard starts. To cancel, press [No].

3. When the touchscreen instructs you to start WPS, press the WPS button on your wireless access point/ router. Then press [OK] on your machine. Your machine automatically tries to connect to your wireless network.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the LCD displays [Connected].

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install drivers and software necessary for operating your device, insert the Brother installation disc into your computer or go to your model's **Downloads** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u>.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [WPS].
- 2. When [Enable WLAN?] appears, press [Yes].

This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].

3. When the touchscreen instructs you to start WPS, press the WPS button on your wireless access point/ router. Then press [OK] on your machine. Your machine automatically tries to connect to your wireless network.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the display shows [Connected].

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install drivers and software necessary for operating your device, insert the Brother installation disc into your computer or go to your model's **Downloads** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u>.



· Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network

▲ Home > Network > Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network > Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)

# Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)

If your wireless LAN access point/router supports WPS, you can use the Personal Identification Number (PIN) Method to configure your wireless network settings.

The PIN Method is one of the connection methods developed by the Wi-Fi Alliance<sup>®</sup>. By submitting a PIN created by an Enrollee (your machine) to the Registrar (a device that manages the wireless LAN), you can set up the wireless network and security settings. For more information on how to access WPS mode, see the instructions provided with your wireless access point/router.

## Туре А

Connection when the wireless LAN access point/router (1) doubles as the Registrar.



## Туре В

Connection when another device (2), such as a computer, is used as the Registrar.





Routers or access points that support WPS are marked with this symbol:



>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [WPS w/ PIN Code].
- 2. When [Enable WLAN?] appears, press [Yes].

The wireless setup wizard starts. To cancel, press [No].

3. The LCD displays an eight-digit PIN and the machine starts searching for a wireless LAN access point/router.

- 4. Using a computer connected to the network, type in your browser's address bar the IP address of the device you are using as the Registrar. (For example: http://192.168.1.2)
- 5. Go to the WPS settings page and type the PIN, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

• The Registrar is usually the wireless LAN access point/router.

The settings page will differ depending on the brand of wireless LAN access point/router. For more
information, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router.

## If you are using a Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, or Windows 10 computer as a Registrar, complete the following steps:

- 6. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista

Click (Start) > Network > Add a wireless device.

• Windows 7

Click (Start) > Devices and Printers > Add a device.

• Windows 8

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings** > **Control Panel** > **Hardware and Sound** > **Devices and Printers** > **Add a device**.

• Windows 10

Click **H** > All apps > Windows System > Control Panel. In the Hardware and Sound group, click Add a device.

- To use a Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, or Windows 10 computer as a Registrar, you must register it to your network in advance. For more information, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router.
  - If you use Windows 7, Windows 8, or Windows 10 as a Registrar, you can install the printer driver after the wireless configuration by following the on-screen instructions. To install the full driver and software package, use the Brother installation disc.
- 7. Select your machine and click Next.
- 8. Type the PIN displayed on the machine's LCD, and then click Next.
- 9. Select your network, and then click Next.
- 10. Click Close.

Ø

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Press Y [Settings] > [Wi-Fi] > [WPS w/ PIN Code].

2. When [Enable WLAN?] appears, press [Yes].

This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press  $\ensuremath{\left[ \ensuremath{\,\mathrm{No}\,} \right]}$  .

- 3. The LCD displays an eight-digit PIN and the machine starts searching for a wireless LAN access point/router.
- 4. Using a computer connected to the network, type in your browser's address bar the IP address of the device you are using as the Registrar. (For example: http://192.168.1.2)
- 5. Go to the WPS settings page and type the PIN, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

The Registrar is usually the wireless LAN access point/router.

• The settings page will differ depending on the brand of wireless LAN access point/router. For more information, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router.

## If you are using a Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, or Windows 10 computer as a Registrar, complete the following steps:

- 6. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista

Click	<b>6</b>	(Start) > Network > Add a wireless device.
-------	----------	--

Windows 7

Click 🚱 (Start) > Devices and Printers > Add a device.

• Windows 8

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings** > **Control Panel** > **Hardware and Sound** > **Devices and Printers** > **Add a device**.

• Windows 10

Click **Solution** > All apps > Windows System > Control Panel. In the Hardware and Sound group, click Add a device.

- To use a Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, or Windows 10 computer as a Registrar, you must register it to your network in advance. For more information, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router.
  - If you use Windows 7, Windows 8, or Windows 10 as a Registrar, you can install the printer driver after the wireless configuration by following the on-screen instructions. To install the full driver and software package, use the Brother installation disc.
- 7. Select your machine and click Next.
- 8. Type the PIN displayed on the machine's LCD, and then click Next.
- 9. Select your network, and then click Next.

10. Click Close.



• Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network

▲ Home > Network > Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network > Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID is Not Broadcast

## Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID is Not Broadcast

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and write down the current wireless network settings.

# Communication Mode Authentication Method Encryption Mode Network Key Infrastructure Open System NONE WEP Shared Key WEP WPA/WPA2-PSK AES TKIP

For example:

#### Network Name (SSID)

**Network Name (SSID)** 

HELLO

Communication Mode	Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	Network Key
Infrastructure	WPA2-PSK	AES	12345678

If your router uses WEP encryption, enter the key used as the first WEP key. Your Brother machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

2. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [Setup Wizard].

3. When [Enable WLAN?] appears, press [Yes].

The wireless setup wizard starts. To cancel, press [No].

- 4. The machine searches for your network and displays a list of available SSIDs. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [<New SSID>] option, and then press it.
- 5. Press [OK].

Ø

6. Enter the SSID name, and then press [OK].

For more information about how to enter text, see the Appendix.

- 7. Press [Infrastructure].
- 8. Select the Authentication Method, and then press it.
- 9. Do one of the following:
  - If you selected the [Open System] option, press either [None] or [WEP].
  - If you selected the [WEP] option for Encryption type, enter the WEP key, and then press [OK].
  - If you selected the [Shared Key] option, enter the WEP key, and then press [OK].

- If you selected the [WPA/WPA2-PSK] option, press either [TKIP+AES] or [AES]. Enter the WPA key, and then press [OK].
- For more information about how to enter text, see the Appendix.
- · Your Brother machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

10. The machine attempts to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the LCD displays [Connected].

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install drivers and software necessary for operating your device, insert the Brother installation disc into your computer or go to your model's **Downloads** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u>.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and write down the current wireless network settings.

#### Network Name (SSID)

Communication Mode	Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	Network Key
Infrastructure	Open System	NONE	-
		WEP	
	Shared Key	WEP	
	WPA/WPA2-PSK	AES	
		ТКІР	

For example:

Network Name (SSID)

HELLO

Communication Mode	Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	Network Key
Infrastructure	WPA2-PSK	AES	12345678

If your router uses WEP encryption, enter the key used as the first WEP key. Your Brother machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

- 2. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [Setup Wizard].
- 3. When [Enable WLAN?] appears, press [Yes].

This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].

- 4. The machine searches for your network and displays a list of available SSIDs. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display [<New SSID>]. Press [<New SSID>], and then press [OK].
- 5. Enter the SSID name, and then press [OK].

For more information about how to enter text, see the Appendix.

- 6. Press [Infrastructure] when instructed.
- 7. Select the Authentication Method.
- 8. Do one of the following:

• If you selected the [Open System] option, select the Encryption type [None] or [WEP], and then press it.

If you selected the [WEP] option for Encryption type, enter the WEP key, and then press [OK].

- If you selected the [Shared Key] option, enter the WEP key, and then press [OK].
- If you selected the [WPA/WPA2-PSK] option, press [TKIP+AES] or [AES]. Enter the WPA key, and then press [OK].
- For more information about how to enter text, see the Appendix.
  - Your Brother machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.
- 9. The machine attempts to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the display shows [Connected].

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install drivers and software necessary for operating your device, insert the Brother installation disc into your computer or go to your model's **Downloads** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u>.



- Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network
- I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration

▲ Home > Network > Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network > Configure Your Machine for an Enterprise Wireless Network

## **Configure Your Machine for an Enterprise Wireless Network**

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings.

#### Network Name (SSID)

Communication Mode	Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	User ID	Password
Infrastructure	LEAP	СКІР		
	EAP-FAST/NONE	AES		
		ТКІР		
	EAP-FAST/MS-	AES		
	CHAPv2	ТКІР		
	EAP-FAST/GTC	AES		
		ТКІР		
	PEAP/MS-CHAPv2	AES		
		ТКІР		
	PEAP/GTC	AES		
		ТКІР		
	EAP-TTLS/CHAP	AES		
		ТКІР		
	EAP-TTLS/MS-	AES		
	CHAP	ТКІР		
	EAP-TTLS/MS- CHAPv2	AES		
		ТКІР		
	EAP-TTLS/PAP	AES		
		ТКІР		
	EAP-TLS	AES		-
		ТКІР		-

For example:

#### Network Name (SSID)

#### HELLO

Communication Mode	Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	User ID	Password
Infrastructure	EAP-FAST/MS- CHAPv2	AES	Brother	12345678



If your wireless device is connected successfully, the LCD displays  $\cite{Connected}\cite{Co$ 

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install drivers and software necessary for operating your device, insert the Brother installation disc into your computer or go to your model's **Downloads** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u>.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

## 1. Check and record the current wireless network settings.

## Network Name (SSID)

Communication Mode	Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	User ID	Password
Infrastructure	LEAP	СКІР		
	EAP-FAST/NONE	AES		
		TKIP		
	EAP-FAST/MS-	AES		
	CHAPv2	TKIP		
	EAP-FAST/GTC	AES		
		ТКІР		
	PEAP/MS-CHAPv2	AES		
		ТКІР		
	PEAP/GTC	AES		
		ТКІР		
	EAP-TTLS/CHAP	AES		
		ТКІР		
	EAP-TTLS/MS-	AES		
	CHAP	ТКІР		
	EAP-TTLS/MS-	AES		
	CHAPv2	ТКІР		
	EAP-TTLS/PAP	AES		
		ТКІР		
	EAP-TLS	AES		-
		ТКІР		-

For example:

Network Name (SSID)				
HELLO				
Communication	Authentication	Encryption Mode	User ID	Password

Communication Mode	Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	User ID	Password
Infrastructure	EAP-FAST/MS- CHAPv2	AES	Brother	12345678

If you configure your machine using EAP-TLS authentication, you must install the client certificate issued by a CA before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the client certificate. If you have installed more than one certificate, we recommend writing down the certificate name you want to use. If you verify your machine using the common name of the server certificate, we recommend writing down the common name before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the common name of the server certificate. 2. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [Setup Wizard]. 3. When [Enable WLAN?] appears, press [Yes]. This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No]. 4. The machine searches for your network and displays a list of available SSIDs. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or V to display [<New SSID>]. Press [<New SSID>], and then press [OK]. 5. Enter the SSID name, and then press [OK]. Ø For more information about how to enter text, see the Appendix. 6. Press [Infrastructure] when instructed. 7. Select the Authentication Method. 8. Do one of the following: If you selected the [LEAP] option, enter the user ID, and then press [OK]. Enter the Password, and then press [OK]. If you selected the [EAP-FAST], [PEAP] or [EAP-TTLS] option, select the Inner Authentication method [NONE], [CHAP], [MS-CHAP], [MS-CHAPv2], [GTC] or [PAP]. Depending on your Authentication method, the Inner Authentication method selections differ. Select the encryption type [TKIP+AES] or [AES]. Select the verification method [No Verification], [CA] or [CA + Server ID]. If you selected the [CA + Server ID] option, enter the server ID, user ID and password (if required), and then press [OK] for each option. For other selections, enter the user ID and Password, and then press [OK] for each option. If you have not imported a CA certificate into your machine, the machine displays [No Verification]. If you selected the [EAP-TLS] option, select the encryption type [TKIP+AES] or [AES]. The machine will display a list of available Client Certificates, and then select the certificate.

Select the verification method [No Verification], [CA] or [CA + Server ID].

- If you selected the [CA + Server ID] option, enter the server ID and user ID, and then press [OK] for each option.
- For other selections, enter the user ID, and then press [OK].

If you have not imported a CA certificate into your machine, the machine displays [No Verification].

9. The machine attempts to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the display shows [Connected].

You have completed the wireless network setup. To install drivers and software necessary for operating your device, insert the Brother installation disc into your computer or go to your model's **Downloads** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u>.

## **Related Information**

 $\checkmark$ 

Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network

▲ Home > Network > Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network > Use Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup>

## Use Wi-Fi Direct®

- Print or Scan from Your Mobile Device Using Wi-Fi Direct
- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network
- I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration

▲ Home > Network > Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network > Use Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup> > Print or Scan from Your Mobile Device Using Wi-Fi Direct

## Print or Scan from Your Mobile Device Using Wi-Fi Direct

Wi-Fi Direct is one of the wireless configuration methods developed by the Wi-Fi Alliance<sup>®</sup>. It allows you to configure a secured wireless network between your Brother machine and a mobile device, such as an Android<sup>™</sup> device, Windows device, iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad, without using an access point. Wi-Fi Direct supports wireless network configuration using the one-push or PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS). You can also configure a wireless network by manually setting a SSID and password. Your Brother machine's Wi-Fi Direct feature supports WPA2<sup>™</sup> security with AES encryption.



- 1. Mobile device
- 2. Your Brother machine
  - Although the Brother machine can be used in both a wired (supported models only) and wireless network, only one connection method can be used at a time. However, a wireless network connection and Wi-Fi Direct connection, or a wired network connection and Wi-Fi Direct connection can be used at the same time.
    - The Wi-Fi Direct supported device can become a Group Owner (G/O). When configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, the Group Owner (G/O) serves as an access point.

## Related Information

Use Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup>

▲ Home > Network > Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network > Use Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup> > Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network

## **Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network**

Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings from your machine's control panel.

- Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview
- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method
- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)
- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method
- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)
- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually

▲ Home > Network > Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network > Use Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup> > Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network > Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview

## Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview

The following instructions offer five methods for configuring your Brother machine in a wireless network environment. Select the method you prefer for your environment.

Check your mobile device for configuration.

1. Does your mobile device support Wi-Fi Direct?

Option	Description
Yes	Go to Step 2
No	Go to Step 3

2. Does your mobile device support one-push configuration for Wi-Fi Direct?

Option	Description
Yes	See <i>Related Information</i> : Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method
No	See <i>Related Information</i> : Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method

## 3. Does your mobile device support Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)?

Option	Description
Yes	Go to Step 4
No	See Related Information: Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually

4. Does your mobile device support one-push configuration for Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)?

Option	Description
Yes	See <i>Related Information</i> : Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One- Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup <sup>™</sup> (WPS)
No	See <i>Related Information</i> : Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup <sup>™</sup> (WPS)

To use Brother iPrint&Scan functionality in a Wi-Fi Direct network configured by one-push configuration using Wi-Fi Direct or by PIN Method configuration using Wi-Fi Direct, the device you use to configure Wi-Fi Direct must be running Android<sup>™</sup> 4.0 or greater.

## **Related Information**

- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network
- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method
- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method
- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually
- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)
- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)

▲ Home > Network > Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network > Use Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup> > Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network > Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method

## Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

If your mobile device supports Wi-Fi Direct, follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:

When the machine receives the Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Wi-Fi Direct connection request received. Press [OK] to connect.] will appear on the LCD. Press [OK] to connect.

- 1. Press 👔 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Push Button].
- 2. Activate Wi-Fi Direct on your mobile device (see your mobile device's user's guide for instructions) when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then Press [OK].] appears. Press [OK] on your Brother machine.

This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup.

- 3. Do one of the following:
  - When your Brother machine is the Group Owner (G/O), connect your mobile device to the machine directly.
  - When your Brother machine is not the Group Owner (G/O), it will display available device names with which to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network. Select the mobile device to which you want to connect. Search for available devices again by pressing [Rescan].

If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

If your mobile device supports Wi-Fi Direct, follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:

When the machine receives the Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Wi-Fi Direct connection request received. Press [OK] to connect.] will be displayed. Press [OK] to connect.

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Push Button].
- 2. Activate Wi-Fi Direct on your mobile device (see your mobile device's user's guide for instructions) when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then Press [OK].] appears. Press [OK] on your Brother machine.

This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup.

- 3. Do one of the following:
  - When your Brother machine is the Group Owner (G/O), connect your mobile device to the machine directly.
  - When your Brother machine is not the Group Owner (G/O), it will display available device names with which to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network. Select the mobile device to which you want to connect. Search for available devices again by pressing [Rescan].

If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine displays the message [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

## Related Information

- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network
- Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview

▲ Home > Network > Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network > Use Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup> > Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network > Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)

## Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

If your mobile device supports WPS (PBC; Push Button Configuration), follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:

When the machine receives the Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Wi-Fi Direct connection request received. Press [OK] to connect.] will appear on the LCD. Press [OK] to connect.

- Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Group Owner] > [On].
- 2. Press [Push Button].
- 3. Activate your mobile device's WPS one-push configuration method (see your mobile device's user's guide for instructions). When [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then Press [OK].] appears on the machine's LCD, press [OK] on your machine.

This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup.

If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

If your mobile device supports WPS (PBC; Push Button Configuration), follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:

When the machine receives the Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Wi-Fi Direct connection request received. Press [OK] to connect.] will be displayed. Press [OK] to connect.

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Group Owner] > [On].
- 2. Press [Push Button].
- 3. Activate your mobile device's WPS one-push configuration method (see your mobile device's user's guide for instructions). When [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then Press [OK].] appears on the machine's LCD, press [OK] on your machine.

This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup.

If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine displays the message [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

## Related Information

- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network
- Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview

▲ Home > Network > Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network > Use Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup> > Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network > Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method

## Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

If your mobile device supports the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Direct, follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:

When the machine receives the Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Wi-Fi Direct connection request received. Press [OK] to connect.] will appear on the LCD. Press [OK] to connect.

- 1. Press N [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [PIN Code].
- 2. Activate Wi-Fi Direct on your mobile device (see your mobile device's user's guide for instructions) when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then Press [OK].] appears. Press [OK] on your Brother machine.

This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup.

3. Do one of the following:

Ø

• When your Brother machine is the Group Owner (G/O), it will wait for a connection request from your mobile device. When [PIN Code] appears, enter the PIN displayed on your mobile device in the machine. Press [OK]. Follow the instructions.

If the PIN is displayed on your Brother machine, enter the PIN in your mobile device.

When your Brother machine is not the Group Owner (G/O), it will display available device names with which to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network. Select the mobile device to which you want to connect. Search for available devices again by pressing [Rescan].

Do one of the following:

- Press [Display PIN Code] to display the PIN on your machine and enter the PIN in your mobile device. Follow the instructions.
- Press [Input PIN Code] to enter a PIN shown on your mobile device in the machine, and then press [OK]. Follow the instructions.

If your mobile device does not display a PIN, press on your Brother machine. Go back to step 1 and try again.

If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

If your mobile device supports the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Direct, follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:

When the machine receives the Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Wi-Fi Direct connection request received. Press [OK] to connect.] will be displayed. Press [OK] to connect.

1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [PIN Code].

2. Activate Wi-Fi Direct on your mobile device (see your mobile device's user's guide for instructions) when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then Press [OK].] appears. Press [OK] on your Brother machine.

This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup.

- 3. Do one of the following:
  - When your Brother machine is the Group Owner (G/O), it will wait for a connection request from your mobile device. When [PIN Code] appears, enter the PIN displayed on your mobile device in the machine. Press [OK]. Follow the instructions.

If the PIN is displayed on your Brother machine, enter the PIN in your mobile device.

• When your Brother machine is not the Group Owner (G/O), it will display available device names with which to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network. Select the mobile device to which you want to connect. Search for available devices again by pressing [Rescan].

Do one of the following:

- Press [Display PIN Code] to display the PIN on your machine and enter the PIN in your mobile device. Follow the instructions.
- Press [Input PIN Code] to enter a PIN shown on your mobile device in the machine, and then press [OK]. Follow the instructions.

If your mobile device does not display a PIN, press on your Brother machine. Go back to step 1 and try again.

If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine displays the message [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

## Related Information

- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network
- Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview
▲ Home > Network > Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network > Use Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup> > Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network > Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)

# Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

If your mobile device supports the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS), follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:

When the machine receives the Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Wi-Fi Direct connection request received. Press [OK] to connect.] will appear on the LCD. Press [OK] to connect.

- Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Group Owner] > [On] > [PIN Code].
- 2. When [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then Press [OK].] is displayed, activate your mobile device's WPS PIN configuration method (see your mobile device's user's guide for instructions), and then press [OK] on your Brother machine.

This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup.

3. The machine will wait for a connection request from your mobile device. When [PIN Code] appears, enter the PIN displayed on your mobile device in the machine. Press [OK].

If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

If your mobile device supports the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS), follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:

When the machine receives the Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Wi-Fi Direct connection request received. Press [OK] to connect.] will be displayed. Press [OK] to connect.



2. When [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then Press [OK].] is displayed, activate your mobile device's WPS PIN configuration method (see your mobile device's user's guide for instructions), and then press [OK] on your Brother machine.

This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup.

3. The machine will wait for a connection request from your mobile device. When [PIN Code] appears, enter the PIN displayed on your mobile device in to the machine. Press [OK].

If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine displays the message [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

#### Related Information

Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network

Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview

▲ Home > Network > Additional Methods of Configuring Your Brother Machine for a Wireless Network > Use Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup> > Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network > Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually

## **Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually**

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

If your mobile device does not support Wi-Fi Direct or WPS, you must configure a Wi-Fi Direct network manually.

- 1. Press 👔 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Manual].
- 2. The machine will display the SSID name and Password. Go to your mobile device's wireless network settings screen and enter the SSID name and password.

If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

If your mobile device does not support Wi-Fi Direct or WPS, you must configure a Wi-Fi Direct network manually.

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Manual].
- 2. The machine will display the SSID name and Password. Go to your mobile device's wireless network settings screen and enter the SSID name and password.

If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine displays the message [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

- Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network
- Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview

Home > Network > Advanced Network Features

## **Advanced Network Features**

- Print the Network Configuration Report
- Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax)
- Configure and Operate LDAP Search
- Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management

Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Print the Network Configuration Report

## Print the Network Configuration Report

The Network Configuration Report lists the network configuration, including the network print server settings.

- Node Name: The Node Name appears on the current Network Configuration Report. The default Node Name is "BRNxxxxxxxxxx" for a wired network or "BRWxxxxxxxxxx" for a wireless network (where "xxxxxxxxxxx" is your machine's MAC Address / Ethernet Address.)
  - If the [IP Address] on the Network Configuration Report shows 0.0.0.0, wait for one minute and try printing it again.
  - You can find your machine's settings, such as the IP address, subnet mask, node name, and MAC Address on the report, for example:
    - IP address: 192.168.0.5
    - Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
    - Node name: BRN000ca0000499
    - MAC Address: 00-0c-a0-00-04-99

#### >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

#### >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports] > [Network Configuration] > [Yes].

The machine prints the current Network Configuration Report.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports] > [Network Configuration] > [Yes].

The machine prints the current Network Configuration Report.

- Advanced Network Features
- Access Web Based Management
- · Where Can I Find My Brother Machine's Network Settings?
- Use the Network Connection Repair Tool (Windows)
- · I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly
- Configure IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network Using Web Based Management (Web Browser)
- Disable and Enable AirPrint Using Web Based Management (Web Browser)
- Error and Maintenance Messages

Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax)

## Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax)

With Brother's I-Fax program, you can send and receive fax documents using the Internet as the transport mechanism. Documents are transmitted in email messages as attached TIFF files. Your computer can send and receive documents as long as it has an application that can generate and view TIFF files. You can use any TIFF viewer application. Documents sent via the Brother machine will be converted into a TIFF format automatically. If you want to send and receive messages to and from your Brother machine, your computer's email application must support Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME).

To use this feature, go to the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u>, click **Downloads** on your model page and download the I-Fax Install Tool.



- 1. Fax (Sender)
- 2. Telephone line
- 3. Your Brother Machine (Receiver/Sender)
- 4. The Internet
- 5. A computer receives a forwarded email
- 6. A fax machine receives a forwarded fax

I-Fax supports sending and receiving documents in Letter or A4 format and in monochrome only.

- Advanced Network Features
- Important Information about Internet Fax (I-Fax)
- Configure Your Brother Machine for Email or I-Fax
- I-Fax Options
- Forward Received Email and Fax Messages

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > Important Information about Internet Fax (I-Fax)

## Important Information about Internet Fax (I-Fax)

I-Fax communication on a LAN is very similar to communication via email; however, it is different from fax communication using standard phone lines. The following is important information for using I-Fax:

- Factors such as the receiver's location, structure of the LAN and how busy the circuit (such as the Internet) is may cause the system to take a longer time than usual to send an error mail.
- When sending confidential documents, we recommend using standard phone lines instead of the Internet (due to its low level of security).
- If the receiver's mail system is not MIME-compatible, you cannot use I-Fax to send documents. If possible, find out in advance, and note that some servers will not send an error reply.
- If a document is too large to send via I-Fax, it may not reach the receiver.
- You cannot change the font or size of the text in any Internet mail you receive.

#### Related Information

• Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax)

Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > Configure Your Brother Machine for Email or I-Fax

## Configure Your Brother Machine for Email or I-Fax

Before using I-Fax, configure your Brother machine to communicate with your network and mail server. You can configure these items using the machine's control panel, Web Based Management, Remote setup, or BRAdmin Professional. We recommend using Web Based Management to configure the optional items.

- 1. Start your web browser.
- 2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click —



- 4. Click the Network tab.
- 5. Click the **Protocol** menu in the left navigation bar.
- 6. In the POP3/IMAP4/SMTP field, click Advanced Settings and configure the following settings:
  - Send E-mail Settings(SMTP)
    - Port
    - **Server Authentication Method**
    - **SMTP-AUTH Account Name**
    - **SMTP-AUTH Account Password** \_
  - Receive E-mail Settings(POP3/IMAP4)
    - Protocol
    - **Mailbox Name**
    - **Mailbox Password**

If you are unsure of any of these items, contact your system administrator.

7. When finished, click Submit.

The Test Send/Receive E-mail Configuration dialog box appears.

8. Follow the instructions in the dialog box to test the current settings.

- Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax)
- Initial Setup for Email or I-Fax
- · Send an I-Fax
- · Receive an I-Fax Automatically
- Poll the Server Manually
- I-Fax Options

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > Configure Your Brother Machine for Email or I-Fax > Initial Setup for Email or I-Fax

## Initial Setup for Email or I-Fax

Before sending your I-Fax, use Web Based Management to configure sending and receiving options, if needed.

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click
- 4. Click the Fax tab.
- 5. Click I-Fax in the left navigation bar.
- 6. Click E-mail Send and configure the following settings:

E-mail Subject	
Size Limit	● Off ○ On
Maximum Size	1 MB
Request Delivery Notification (Send)	● Off ○ On
POP3/IMAP4/SMTP>>	
Cancel Submit	

- E-mail Subject
- Size Limit
- Request Delivery Notification (Send)
- 7. When finished, click Submit.

#### **Related Information**

- Configure Your Brother Machine for Email or I-Fax
- Forward Received Email and Fax Messages

 $\rightarrow$ 

## ▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > Configure Your Brother Machine for Email or I-Fax > Send an I-Fax

## Send an I-Fax

Sending an I-Fax is like sending a normal fax. Make sure that your recipient's information is saved in your email address book, and load the document you want to I-Fax into your Brother machine.

- If the computer to which you want to send a document is not running Windows Server 2008/2012/2012
   R2, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, or Windows 10, ask the computer's owner to install software that can view TIFF files.
  - To send multiple pages, use the ADF.

#### >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - If Fax Preview is set to [Off], press [Fax].
  - If Fax Preview is set to [On], press [Fax], and then press [Sending Faxes].
- 3. To change the fax-sending settings, press [Options].
- 4. Press ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the fax settings. When the setting you want is displayed, press it and choose your preference. When you have finished changing settings, press [OK].
- 5. Do one of the following:
  - Press , and then enter the email address.
  - Press [Address Book], choose the email address of your recipient, and then press [Apply].
- 6. Press [Fax Start].

The machine starts scanning. After the document is scanned, it is transmitted to the recipient via your SMTP server. You can cancel the send operation by pressing  $\bigotimes$  during scanning. When the transmission is finished, the machine will enter standby mode.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - If [Fax Preview] is set to [Off], press [Fax].
  - If [Fax Preview] is set to [On], press [Fax] and [Sending Faxes].
- 3. To change the fax-sending settings, press [Options].
- 4. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the fax settings. When the setting you want is displayed, press it and choose your preference. When you have finished changing settings, press [OK].
- 5. Do one of the following:
  - Press N, and then enter the email address.
  - Press [Address Book], choose the email address of your recipient, and then press [Apply].
- 6. Press [Fax Start].

The machine starts scanning. After the document is scanned, it is transmitted to the recipient via your SMTP server. You can cancel the send operation by pressing  $\sum$  during scanning. When the transmission is finished, the machine will enter standby mode.

### **Related Information**

 $\checkmark$ 

Configure Your Brother Machine for Email or I-Fax

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > Configure Your Brother Machine for Email or I-Fax > Receive an I-Fax Automatically

## **Receive an I-Fax Automatically**

To receive an I-Fax automatically, use Web Based Management to configure receiving options, if needed.

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example: http://192.168.1.2

3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click



4. Click the Fax tab.

C

- 5. Click I-Fax in the left navigation bar.
- 6. Click E-mail Receive and configure the following settings:

Auto Polling	○ Off ● On
Polling Frequency	10 minute(s)
Print Mail Header	None
Delete/Read Receive Error Mail	⊖ Off ● On
Send Delivery Notification (Receive)	Off V
POP3/IMAP4/SMTP>>	
ancel Submit	

- Auto Polling
- Polling Frequency
- Print Mail Header
- Delete/Read Receive Error Mail
- Send Delivery Notification (Receive)

There are two ways to receive email messages:

- POP3/IMAP4 receiving at regular intervals
- POP3/IMAP4 receiving, manually initiated

When using POP3/IMAP4 receiving, the machine polls your email server to receive data. Polling can occur at set intervals (for example, you can configure the machine to poll the email server every ten minutes) or you can manually poll the server.

7. When finished, click Submit.

- If your machine starts to receive email data, the LCD will display [Receiving]. The email will print automatically.
- If your machine is out of paper when receiving data, the received data will be held in the machine's memory. This data will be printed automatically after paper is re-inserted into the machine.
- If the received mail is not in a plain text format, or an attached file is not in the TIFF format, the error message "ATTACHED FILE FORMAT NOT SUPPORTED" will be printed.
- If the received mail is too large, the error message "E-MAIL FILE TOO LARGE" will be printed.
- If **Delete/Read Receive Error Mail** is **On** (default), then the error mail will be deleted (POP3) or read (IMAP4) from the email server automatically.

- Configure Your Brother Machine for Email or I-Fax
- How Received I-Faxes Appear on a Computer
- Forward Received Email and Fax Messages

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > Configure Your Brother Machine for Email or I-Fax > Poll the Server Manually

## Poll the Server Manually

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [E-mail/IFAX] > [Manual Receive] > [Yes].
- 2. The LCD will display [Receiving] and your machine will print the data from the email server.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [E-mail/IFAX] > [Manual Receive] > [Yes].
- 2. The LCD will display [Receiving] and your machine will print the data from the email server.

- Configure Your Brother Machine for Email or I-Fax
- How Received I-Faxes Appear on a Computer
- Forward Received Email and Fax Messages

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > Configure Your Brother Machine for Email or I-Fax > Poll the Server Manually > How Received I-Faxes Appear on a Computer

## How Received I-Faxes Appear on a Computer

When a computer receives an I-Fax document, the document is attached to an email message that notifies you in its Subject: line that your email server has received an I-Fax. You can either wait for your Brother machine to poll the email server, or you can manually poll the email server to receive the incoming data.

- Poll the Server Manually
- Receive an I-Fax Automatically

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > I-Fax Options

## I-Fax Options

- Forward Received Email and Fax Messages
- Set Up Relay Broadcast on Your Brother Machine
- Internet Fax (I-Fax) Verification Mail
- I-Fax Error Mail
- Configure Your Brother Machine for Email or I-Fax

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > I-Fax Options > Forward Received Email and Fax Messages

## Forward Received Email and Fax Messages

Use Brother I-Fax to forward email or standard fax messages to another computer, to a fax machine, or to another I-Fax machine. Enable the Forwarding function using Web Based Management.



- 1. Fax (Sender)
- 2. Telephone line
- 3. Your Brother Machine (Receiver/Sender)
- 4. The Internet
- 5. A computer receives a forwarded email
- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example: http://192.168.1.2

- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click
- 4. Click the Fax tab.
- 5. Click Remote Fax Options.
- 6. Select Fax Forward in the Fwd/Store/Cloud field.
- 7. Select the E-mail Address check box in Fax Forward #, and then type the recipient's E-mail address.
- 8. When finished, click **Submit**.

- I-Fax Options
- · Poll the Server Manually
- Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax)
- Initial Setup for Email or I-Fax
- Receive an I-Fax Automatically

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > I-Fax Options > Set Up Relay Broadcast on Your Brother Machine

## Set Up Relay Broadcast on Your Brother Machine

A Relay Broadcast is when your Brother machine receives a message over the Internet and then relays it to another fax machine using conventional telephone lines. If you must fax a document over a long distance or abroad, use the "relay broadcast" function to save the communication fee.



- 1. Internet-available fax machine
- 2. The Internet
- 3. Your Brother Machine
- 4. Telephone line
- 5. Fax machine
- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example: http://192.168.1.2

- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click
- 4. Click the Fax tab.
- 5. Click I-Fax in the left navigation bar.
- 6. Click Relay Function and configure the following settings:

Relay Broadcast Function	● Off ○ On
Relay Domain	
Relay Broadcast Report	● Off ○ On
Cancel Submit	

- Set the **Relay Broadcast Function** to **On**.
- Relay Domain

Configure your machine's domain name on the machine that will broadcast the document to the conventional fax machine. To use your machine as a relay broadcast device, you must specify the trusted domain name (the portion of the name after the "@" sign) on the machine. Use care in selecting a trusted domain: any user on a trusted domain will be able to send a relay broadcast. You can register up to five domain names.

#### Relay Broadcast Report

Specify whether or not you want a report to print after the machine completes the relay broadcast.

7. When finished, click Submit.

- I-Fax Options
- Relay Broadcast from Your Brother Machine
- Relay Broadcast from Your Computer

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > I-Fax Options > Set Up Relay Broadcast on Your Brother Machine > Relay Broadcast from Your Brother Machine

## **Relay Broadcast from Your Brother Machine**

Use the Relay Broadcast Function to send email from your machine to a conventional fax machine.



#### 1. The Internet

In this example, your machine's email address is FAX@brother.com and you want to send a document from your machine to a standard fax machine in England with the email address UKFAX@brother.co.uk, and you want your machine to send the document using a conventional telephone line.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Do one of the following:
  - If Fax Preview is set to [Off], press [Fax].
  - If Fax Preview is set to [On], press [Fax], and then press [Sending Faxes].
- 3. **Press** [Options] > [Broadcasting] > [Add Number].
- 4. You can add email addresses to the broadcast in the following ways:
  - Press [Add Number] and press N, enter the email address and press [OK].
  - Press [Add from Address book]. Press the check box of the email address you want to add to the broadcast. After you have checked all the email addresses you want, press [OK].
  - Press [Search in Address book]. Enter the name and press [OK]. The search results will be displayed. Press the name and then press the email address you want to add to the broadcast.

The following is an example of how to enter the email address and phone number:



After you have entered all of the fax numbers, press [OK].

5. Press [Fax Start].

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Load your document.

- 2. Do one of the following:
  - If [Fax Preview] is set to [Off], press [Fax].
  - If [Fax Preview] is set to [On], press [Fax] and [Sending Faxes].
- 3. Press [Options] > [Broadcasting] > [Add Number].
- 4. You can add email addresses to the broadcast in the following ways:
  - Press [Add Number] and press N, enter the email address and press [OK].
  - Press [Add from Address book]. Press the check box of the email address you want to add to the broadcast. After you have checked all the email addresses you want, press [OK].
  - Press [Search in Address book]. Enter the name and press [OK]. The search results will be displayed. Press the name and then press the email address you want to add to the broadcast.

The following is an example of how to enter the email address and phone number:



After you have entered all of the fax numbers, press [OK].

5. Press [Fax Start].



· Set Up Relay Broadcast on Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > I-Fax Options > Set Up Relay Broadcast on Your Brother Machine > Relay Broadcast from Your Computer

## **Relay Broadcast from Your Computer**

Use the Relay Broadcast Function to send email from your computer to a conventional fax machine.



If you are sending an email to a conventional fax machine, the method of entering the fax machine's fax number will vary, depending on the mail application you are using.

1. In your email application, create a new mail message and type the email address of the relay machine and fax number of the first fax machine in the "TO" box.

The following is an example of how to enter the email address and fax number:



For Microsoft Outlook, the address information must be entered into the address book as follows: Name: fax#123456789

Email address: UKFAX@brother.co.uk

- 2. Type the email address of the relay machine and fax number of the second fax machine in the "TO" box.
- 3. Send the email.

#### Related Information

Set Up Relay Broadcast on Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > I-Fax Options > Internet Fax (I-Fax) Verification Mail

## Internet Fax (I-Fax) Verification Mail

- Verification Mail for sending allows you to request notification from the receiving station where your I-Fax or email was received and processed.
- Verification Mail for receiving allows you to transmit a default report back to the sending station after successfully receiving and processing an I-Fax or email.

To use this feature, set the [Notification] options in the [Setup Mail RX] and [Setup Mail TX] options of your Brother machine's control panel menu.

- I-Fax Options
- Enable Send Notifications for TX Verification Mail
- Enable Receive Notifications for TX Verification Mail

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > I-Fax Options > Internet Fax (I-Fax) Verification Mail > Enable Send Notifications for TX Verification Mail

## **Enable Send Notifications for TX Verification Mail**

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [E-mail/IFAX] > [Setup Mail TX] > [Notification].
- 2. When switched to [On], an additional field of information is sent with the image data. This field is named "MDN".

The receiver must support the MDN field to be able to send a notification report, otherwise the request will be ignored.

3. Press

Ø

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [E-mail/IFAX] > [Setup Mail TX] > [Notification].
- 2. When switched to [On], an additional field of information is sent with the image data. This field is named "MDN".

The receiver must support the MDN field to be able to send a notification report, otherwise the request will be ignored.

## 3. Press

Ø

#### Related Information

• Internet Fax (I-Fax) Verification Mail

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > I-Fax Options > Internet Fax (I-Fax) Verification Mail > Enable Receive Notifications for TX Verification Mail

## **Enable Receive Notifications for TX Verification Mail**

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [E-mail/IFAX] > [Setup Mail RX] > [Notification].
- 2. Press one of the three possible settings:

Option	Description
Receive Notification On	When Receive Notification is On, a fixed message is sent back to the sender to indicate successful reception and processing of the message.
	These fixed messages depend on the operation requested by the sender.
	Example:
	SUCCESS: Received From <mail address=""></mail>
Receive Notification MDN	When Receive Notification is MDN, a report to indicate successful reception and processing is sent back to the sender if the originating station sent a request confirmation to the MDN field.
Receive Notification Off	When Receive Notification is Off, all forms of receive notification are disabled and no message is sent back to the sender regardless of the request.

- To send TX verification mail, the Sender must configure these settings:
  - Switch [Notification] in [Setup Mail TX] to [On].
  - Switch [Header] in [Setup Mail RX] to [All] or [Subject+From+To].
  - To receive TX verification mail, the Receiver must configure these settings:
    - Switch [Notification] in [Setup Mail RX] to [On].

## 3. Press

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [E-mail/IFAX] > [Setup Mail RX] > [Notification].
- 2. Press one of the three possible settings:

Option	Description
Receive Notification On	When Receive Notification is On, a fixed message is sent back to the sender to indicate successful reception and processing of the message.
	These fixed messages depend on the operation requested by the sender.
	Example:
	SUCCESS: Received From <mail address=""></mail>
Receive Notification MDN	When Receive Notification is MDN, a report to indicate successful reception and processing is sent back to the sender if the originating station sent a request confirmation to the MDN field.

Option	Description		
Receive Notification Off	When Receive Notification is $Off$ , all forms of receive notification are disabled and message is sent back to the sender regardless of the request.		
To send TX ve	rification mail, the Sender must configure these settings:		
	Dtification] <b>in</b> [Setup Mail TX] <b>to</b> [On].		
- Switch [Header] in [Setup Mail RX] to [All] or [Subject+From+To].			
<ul> <li>To receive TX verification mail, the Receiver must configure these settings:</li> </ul>			
- Switch [Notification] in [Setup Mail RX] to [On].			
Press			
Related Infor	mation		
Internet Fax (I-Fax) Verification Mail			

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax) > I-Fax Options > I-Fax Error Mail

## **I-Fax Error Mail**

If there is a delivery error while sending an I-Fax, the mail server will send an error message back to the Brother machine and the error message will be printed.

If there is an error while receiving an I-Fax, an error message will be printed, for example, "The message being sent to the machine was not in a TIFF format."

To receive the error mail and have it print on your machine, in [Setup Mail RX], switch the [Header] option to [All] or to [Subject+From+To].

#### Related Information

• I-Fax Options

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Configure and Operate LDAP Search

## **Configure and Operate LDAP Search**

The LDAP feature allows you to search for information, such as fax numbers and email addresses, on your server. When you use the Fax, I-Fax, or Scan to Email server feature, you can use the LDAP search to find fax numbers or email addresses.

- The LDAP feature does not support simplified Chinese, traditional Chinese, or Korean.
- The LDAP feature supports LDAPv3.
- The LDAP feature does not support SSL/TLS.
- You must use Simple Authentication to communicate with your LDAP server.

#### **Related Information**

Ø

- Advanced Network Features
- Change LDAP Configuration Using Web Based Management
- Perform an LDAP Search Using Your Machine's Control Panel

Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Configure and Operate LDAP Search > Change LDAP **Configuration Using Web Based Management** 

## Change LDAP Configuration Using Web Based Management

Use Web Based Management to configure your LDAP settings in a web browser.

- 1. Start your web browser.
- 2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click

- 4. Click the Network tab.
- 5. Click the Protocol menu in the left navigation bar.
- 6. Select the LDAP check box, and then click Submit.
- 7. Restart your Brother machine to activate the configuration.
- 8. On your computer, in Web Based Management's Address Book tab, select LDAP in the left navigation bar.
  - LDAP Search
  - LDAP Server Address
  - Port (The default port number is 389.)
  - Search Root
  - Authentication
  - Username

This selection will be available depending on the authentication method used.

Password

This selection will be available depending on the authentication method used.

If the LDAP server supports Kerberos authentication, we recommend selecting Kerberos for the Authentication settings. It provides strong authentication between the LDAP server and your machine.

You must configure the SNTP protocol (network time server), or you must set the date, time and time zone correctly on the control panel for Kerberos authentication.

#### **Kerberos Server Address**

This selection will be available depending on the authentication method used.

- **Timeout for LDAP**
- Attribute of Name (Search Key)
- Attribute of E-mail
- Attribute of Fax Number
- 9. When finished, click Submit. Make sure the Status field reads OK.

- · Configure and Operate LDAP Search
- Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Configure and Operate LDAP Search > Perform an LDAP Search Using Your Machine's Control Panel

## Perform an LDAP Search Using Your Machine's Control Panel

After you configure LDAP settings, you can use the LDAP search feature to find fax numbers or email addresses to use for:

- Sending a Fax
- Sending an Internet Fax (I-Fax)
- Scanning to Email Server

• The LDAP feature supports LDAPv3.

- The LDAP feature does not support SSL/TLS.
- You may need to use Kerberos Authentication or Simple Authentication to connect to your LDAP server, depending on the security policy set by your network administrator.
- You must configure the SNTP protocol (network time server), or you must set the date, time and time zone correctly on the control panel for Kerberos authentication.

#### >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press **Q** to search.
- 2. Enter the initial characters for your search using the LCD.
  - You can enter up to 15 characters.
  - For more information about how to enter text, see the Appendix.
- 3. Press [OK].

The LDAP search result will be shown on the LCD; the <u>search</u> icon appears before the local address book search results.

- If there is no match on the server or the local address book, the LCD will show [Results cannot be found.] for about 60 seconds.
- 4. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the name you want.
- 5. Press the name.

To view the details of the name, press [Detail].

- 6. If the result includes more than one fax number or email address, the machine will prompt you to select just one. Press [Apply]. Do one of the following:
  - If you are sending a fax and an I-Fax, press [Fax Start].
  - If you are scanning to the E-mail Server, load your document, press [Next], and then press [Start].

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press  $\mathbf{Q}$  to search.
- 2. Enter the initial characters for your search using the LCD.

• You can enter up to 15 characters.

- For more information about how to enter text, see the Appendix.
- 3. Press [OK].

Ø

The LDAP search result will be shown on the LCD; the <u>search</u> icon appears before the local address book search results.

- If there is no match on the server or the local address book, the LCD will show [Results cannot be found.] for about 60 seconds.
- 4. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the name you want.
- 5. Press the name.

To view the details of the name, press [Detail].

- 6. If the result includes more than one fax number or email address, the machine will prompt you to select just one. Press [Apply]. Do one of the following:
  - If you are sending a fax and an I-Fax, press [Fax Start].
  - If you are scanning to the E-mail Server, load your document, press [Next], and then press [Start].

- Configure and Operate LDAP Search
- Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management

Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management

## Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management

The Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) is used to synchronize the time used by the machine for authentication with the SNTP time server. (This is not the time displayed on the machine's LCD.) You can automatically or manually synchronize the machine's time with the Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) provided by the SNTP time server.

- · Configure Date and Time Using Web Based Management
- Configure the SNTP Protocol Using Web Based Management
- Change LDAP Configuration Using Web Based Management
- Perform an LDAP Search Using Your Machine's Control Panel

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management > Configure Date and Time Using Web Based Management

## **Configure Date and Time Using Web Based Management**

Configure date and time to synchronize the time used by the machine with the SNTP time server.

This feature is not available in some countries.

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click



- 4. Click the **Administrator** tab.
- 5. Click Date&Time in the left navigation bar.

Date	xx / xx / 20xx
Time	xx : xx (24 hr.)
Time Zone	UTC 🗸
Auto Daylight	⊖ Off
Synchronize with SN	TP server
	ate&Time" with your SNTP server e SNTP server settings.
SNTP>>	
ancel Submit	

Select the time difference between your location and UTC from the **Time Zone** drop-down list. For example, the time zone for Eastern Time in the USA and Canada is UTC-05:00.

- 6. Verify the Time Zone settings.
- 7. Select the Synchronize with SNTP server check box.
- 8. Click Submit.

#### Related Information

Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management

▲ Home > Network > Advanced Network Features > Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management > Configure the SNTP Protocol Using Web Based Management

## **Configure the SNTP Protocol Using Web Based Management**

Configure the SNTP protocol to synchronize the time the machine uses for authentication with the time kept by the SNTP time server.

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click



- 4. Click the **Network** tab.
- 5. Click the **Protocol** menu in the left navigation bar.
- 6. Select the SNTP check box to activate the settings.
- 7. Restart your Brother machine to activate the configuration.
- 8. Next to the SNTP check box, click Advanced Settings and follow the instructions below:

Status	Enabled	
Synchronization Status	SNTP Unspecified	
SNTP Server Method	AUTO 🗸	
Primary SNTP Server Address	sntp.brother.com	
Primary SNTP Server Port	123	
Secondary SNTP Server Address		
Secondary SNTP Server Port	123	
Synchronization Interval	24 hour(s)	
Date& Time>>		

Option	Description
Status	Displays whether the SNTP protocol is enabled or disabled.
Synchronization Status	Confirm the latest synchronization status.
SNTP Server Method	Select AUTO or STATIC.  • AUTO
	If you have a DHCP server in your network, the SNTP server will obtain the address from that server automatically.
	• STATIC
	Type the address you want to use.

Option	Description
Primary SNTP Server Address	Type the server address (up to 64 characters). The secondary SNTP server address is used as a backup to the primary
Secondary SNTP Server Address	SNTP server address. If the primary server is unavailable, the machine will contact the secondary SNTP server.
Primary SNTP Server Port	Type the port number (1-65535).
Secondary SNTP Server Port	The secondary SNTP server port is used as a backup to the primary SNTP server port. If the primary port is unavailable, the machine will contact the secondary SNTP port.
Synchronization Interval	Type the number of hours between server synchronization attempts (1-168 hours).

#### 9. Click Submit.

Related Information	$\checkmark$	<b>Related Information</b>
---------------------	--------------	----------------------------

Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management

▲ Home > Network > Technical Information for Advanced Users

## **Technical Information for Advanced Users**

- Reset the Network Settings to Factory Default
- Print the WLAN Report
Home > Network > Technical Information for Advanced Users > Reset the Network Settings to Factory Default

# **Reset the Network Settings to Factory Default**

You can use your machine's control panel to reset the print server to its default factory settings. This resets all information, such as the password and IP address.

- This feature restores all wired (supported models only) and wireless network settings to the factory settings.
  - You can also reset the print server to its factory settings using BRAdmin Light, BRAdmin Professional, or Web Based Management.

#### >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

Ø

- 1. Press N [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Network Reset].
- 2. The message confirming reset will be displayed. Press [OK] for two seconds. The machine will restart.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Network Reset].
- 2. The message confirming reset will be displayed. Press [OK] for two seconds. The machine will restart.

#### Related Information

- Technical Information for Advanced Users
- · Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report

Home > Network > Technical Information for Advanced Users > Print the WLAN Report

## **Print the WLAN Report**

The WLAN Report reflects your machine's wireless status. If the wireless connection fails, check the error code on the printed report.

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports] > [WLAN Report] > [Yes].

The machine will print the WLAN Report.

If the WLAN Report does not print, check your machine for errors. If there are no visible errors, wait for one minute and then try to print the report again.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports] > [WLAN Report] > [Yes].

The machine will print the WLAN Report.

If the WLAN Report does not print, check your machine for errors. If there are no visible errors, wait for one minute and then try to print the report again.

#### Related Information

- Technical Information for Advanced Users
- Wireless LAN Report Error Codes
- My Brother Machine Cannot Print, Scan, or PC-FAX Receive over the Network
- · I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly
- Configure IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network Using Web Based Management (Web Browser)

▲ Home > Network > Technical Information for Advanced Users > Print the WLAN Report > Wireless LAN Report Error Codes

# Wireless LAN Report Error Codes

If the Wireless LAN Report shows that the connection failed, check the error code on the printed report and see the corresponding instructions in the table:

Error Code	Problem and Recommended Solutions			
TS-01	The wireless setting is not activated, change the wireless setting to ON.			
	If a network cable is connected to your machine, disconnect it and change the wireless setting of your machine to ON.			
TS-02	The wireless access point/router cannot be detected.			
	1. Check the following two points:			
	<ul> <li>Unplug the power to your wireless access point/router, wait for 10 seconds, and then plug it back in.</li> </ul>			
	<ul> <li>If your WLAN access point/router is using MAC address filtering, confirm that the MAC address of the Brother machine is allowed in the filter.</li> </ul>			
	2. If you manually entered the SSID and security information (SSID/authentication method/ encryption method/Network Key), the information may be incorrect.			
	Reconfirm the SSID and security information and re-enter the correct information as necessary.			
	This device does not support a 5GHz SSID/ESSID and you must select a 2.4 GHz SSID/ ESSID. Make sure the access point/router is set to 2.4 GHz or 2.4 GHz/5 GHz mixed mode.			
TS-03	The wireless network and security setting you entered may be incorrect. Reconfirm the wireless network settings.			
	If you do not know this information, ask your network administrator.			
TS-04	The Authentication/Encryption methods used by the selected wireless access point/router are not supported by your machine.			
	Change the authentication and encryption methods of the wireless access point/router. Your machine supports the following authentication methods:			
	WPA-Personal			
	TKIP or AES			
	WPA2-Personal			
	TKIP or AES			
	• Open			
	WEP or None (without encryption)			
	Shared key			
	WEP			
	If your problem is not solved, the SSID or network settings you entered may be incorrect. Confirm the wireless network settings.			
TS-05	The security information (SSID/Network Key) is incorrect.			
	Confirm the SSID and Network Key.			
TS-06	The wireless security information (Authentication method/Encryption method/Network Key) is incorrect.			
	Confirm the wireless security information (Authentication method/Encryption method/Network Key).			
TS-07	The machine cannot detect a WLAN access point/router that has WPS enabled.			
	If you want to connect with WPS, you must operate both your machine and the WLAN access point/router. Confirm the connection method for WPS on WLAN access point/router and try starting again.			
	If you do not know how to operate your WLAN access point/router using WPS, see the documentation provided with your WLAN access point/router, ask the manufacturer of your WLAN access point/router, or ask your network administrator.			

Error Code	Problem and Recommended Solutions		
TS-08	Two or more WLAN access points that have WPS enabled are detected.		
	Confirm that only one WLAN access point/router within range has the WPS method active and try again.		
	Try again after a few minutes to avoid interference from other access points.		

How to confirm wireless security information (SSID/authentication method/encryption method/Network Key) of your WLAN access point/router:

- The Default security settings may be provided on a label attached to the WLAN access point/router. Or the manufacturer's name or model number of the WLAN access point/router may be used as the default security settings.
- 2. See the documentation provided with your WLAN access point/router for information on how to find the security settings.
- If the WLAN access point/router is set to not broadcast the SSID, the SSID will not automatically be detected. You will have to manually enter the SSID name.
- The Network key may also be described as the Password, Security Key or Encryption Key.

If you do not know the SSID and wireless security settings of your WLAN access point/router or how to change the configuration, see the documentation provided with your WLAN access point/router, ask the manufacturer of your access point/router or ask to your Internet provider or network administrator.

## Related Information

- · Print the WLAN Report
- My Brother Machine Cannot Print, Scan, or PC-FAX Receive over the Network
- · I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly

#### Home > Security

## Security

- Before Using Network Security Features
- Secure Function Lock 3.0
- Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS
- Send or Receive an Email Securely
- Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network

Home > Security > Before Using Network Security Features

## **Before Using Network Security Features**

Your Brother machine employs some of the latest network security and encryption protocols available today. These network features can be integrated into your overall network security plan to help protect your data and prevent unauthorised access to the machine.

We recommend disabling the FTP and TFTP protocols. Accessing the machine using these protocols is not secure. However, note that if you disable FTP, the Scan to FTP feature will be disabled.

#### Related Information

Security

Ø

▲ Home > Security > Secure Function Lock 3.0

## **Secure Function Lock 3.0**

Brother's Secure Function Lock 3.0 increases security by restricting the functions available on your Brother machine.

- Before Using Secure Function Lock 3.0
- Configure Secure Function Lock 3.0 Using Web Based Management
- Scan Using Secure Function Lock 3.0
- Configure Public Mode for Secure Function Lock 3.0
- Additional Secure Function Lock 3.0 Features

▲ Home > Security > Secure Function Lock 3.0 > Before Using Secure Function Lock 3.0

## Before Using Secure Function Lock 3.0

Use Secure Function Lock to configure passwords, set specific user page limits, and grant access to some or all of the functions listed here.

You can configure and change the following Secure Function Lock 3.0 settings using Web Based Management or BRAdmin Professional (Windows):

• Print

Print includes print jobs sent via AirPrint, Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> and Brother iPrint&Scan.

If you register users' logon names in advance, the users will not need to enter their passwords when they use the print function.

- Copy
- Scan

Scan includes scan jobs sent via Brother iPrint&Scan.

- Fax (supported models only)
  - Send
  - Receive
- Media
  - Print from
  - Scan to
- Web Connect (supported models only)
- Apps (supported models only)
- Page Limits (\*)
- Color Print
- Page Counters

#### Related Information

• Secure Function Lock 3.0

▲ Home > Security > Secure Function Lock 3.0 > Configure Secure Function Lock 3.0 Using Web Based Management

## **Configure Secure Function Lock 3.0 Using Web Based Management**

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click -
- 4. Click the Administrator tab.
- 5. Click the User Restriction Function menu in the left navigation bar.
- 6. Select Secure Function Lock.
- 7. Click Submit.
- 8. Click the Restricted Functions menu in the left navigation bar.
- 9. In the User List / Restricted Functions field, type a group name or user name.
- 10. In the **Print** and the other columns, select a check box to allow or clear a check box to restrict the function listed.
- 11. To configure the maximum page count, select the **On** check box in the **Page Limits** column, and then type the maximum number in the **Max. Pages** field.
- 12. Click Submit.
- 13. Click the User List menu in the left navigation bar.
- 14. In the User List field, type the user name.
- 15. In the PIN Number field, type a four-digit password.
- 16. Select User List / Restricted Functions from the drop-down list for each user.
- 17. Click Submit.

## Related Information

- Secure Function Lock 3.0
- Register Your Machine with Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> Using Web Based Management

## Scan Using Secure Function Lock 3.0

#### Setting Scan restrictions (for administrators)

Secure Function Lock 3.0 allows an administrator to restrict which users are allowed to scan. When the Scan feature is set to Off for the public user setting, only users who have the **Scan** check box selected will be able to scan.

#### Using the Scan feature (for restricted users)

• To scan using the machine's control panel:

Restricted users must enter their PINs on the machine's control panel to access Scan mode.

• To scan from a computer:

Restricted users must enter their PINs on the machine's control panel before scanning from their computers. If the PIN is not entered on the machine's control panel, an error message will appear on the user's computer.



Secure Function Lock 3.0

▲ Home > Security > Secure Function Lock 3.0 > Configure Public Mode for Secure Function Lock 3.0

# **Configure Public Mode for Secure Function Lock 3.0**

Use the Secure Function Lock screen to set up Public Mode, which limits the functions available to public users. Public users will not need to enter a password to access the features made available through Public Mode settings.

Public Mode includes print jobs sent via AirPrint, Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> and Brother iPrint&Scan.

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example: http://192.168.1.2

Ø

- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click
- 4. Click the Administrator tab.
- 5. Click the User Restriction Function menu in the left navigation bar.
- 6. Select Secure Function Lock.
- 7. Click Submit.
- 8. Click the **Restricted Functions** menu.
- 9. In the Public Mode row, select a check box to allow or clear a check box to restrict the function listed.
- 10. Click Submit.

#### Related Information

Secure Function Lock 3.0

▲ Home > Security > Secure Function Lock 3.0 > Additional Secure Function Lock 3.0 Features

## Additional Secure Function Lock 3.0 Features

Configure the following features in the Secure Function Lock screen:

#### **All Counter Reset**

Click All Counter Reset, in the Page Counters column, to reset the page counter.

#### Export to CSV file

Click **Export to CSV file**, to export the current page counter including **User List / Restricted Functions** information as a CSV file.

#### Last Counter Record

Click Last Counter Record if you want the machine to retain the page count after the counter has been reset.

#### **Counter Auto Reset**

Click **Counter Auto Reset** to configure the time interval you want between page counter reset. Choose a daily, weekly, or monthly interval.



Secure Function Lock 3.0

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS

# Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS

Certificates and Web Based Management

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management

## **Certificates and Web Based Management**

You must configure a certificate to manage your networked Brother machine securely using SSL/TLS. You must use Web Based Management to configure a certificate.

- Supported Security Certificate Features
- Create and Install a Certificate
- Manage Multiple Certificates

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Supported Security Certificate Features

## **Supported Security Certificate Features**

Your Brother machine supports the use of multiple security certificates, which allows secure authentication and communication with the machine. The following security certificate features can be used with the machine:

- SSL/TLS communication
- SSL communication for SMTP/POP3/IMAP4 (only available for certain models)
- IEEE 802.1x authentication

The Brother machine supports the following:

Pre-installed certificate

Your machine has a pre-installed self-signed certificate. This certificate enables you to use SSL/TLS communication without creating or installing a different certificate.

The pre-installed self-signed certificate cannot protect your communication from being compromised. We recommend using a certificate that is issued by a trusted organisation for better security.

· Self-signed certificate

This print server issues its own certificate. Using this certificate, you can easily use the SSL/TLS communication without creating or installing a different certificate from a CA.

Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA)

There are two methods for installing a certificate from a CA. If you already have a certificate from a CA or if you want to use a certificate from an external trusted CA:

- When using a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) from this print server.
- When importing a certificate and a private key.
- Certificate Authority (CA) Certificate

To use a CA certificate that identifies the CA and owns its private key, you must import that CA certificate from the CA before configuring the security features of the Network.

- If you are going to use SSL/TLS communication, we recommend contacting your system administrator first.
  - When you reset the print server back to its default factory settings, the certificate and the private key
    that are installed will be deleted. If you want to keep the same certificate and the private key after
    resetting the print server, export them before resetting, and then reinstall them.

#### **Related Information**

- · Certificates and Web Based Management
- Configure IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network Using Web Based Management (Web Browser)

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate

# **Create and Install a Certificate**

- Step by Step Guide for Creating and Installing a Certificate
- Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate
- Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA)
- Import and Export a CA Certificate

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Step by Step Guide for Creating and Installing a Certificate

## Step by Step Guide for Creating and Installing a Certificate

There are two options when choosing a security certificate: use a self-signed certificate or use a certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA).

These are a brief summary of the actions required, based on the option you choose.

## **Option 1**

## Self-Signed Certificate

- 1. Create a self-signed certificate using Web Based Management.
- 2. Install the self-signed certificate on your computer.

## **Option 2**

## Certificate from a CA

- 1. Create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) using Web Based Management.
- 2. Install the certificate issued by the CA on your Brother machine using Web Based Management.
- 3. Install the certificate on your computer.

## Related Information

Create and Install a Certificate

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate

## Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate

- Create a Self-signed Certificate
- Install the Self-signed Certificate for Windows users with Administrator Rights
- Import and Export the Self-signed Certificate on your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate > Create a Self-signed Certificate

# Create a Self-signed Certificate

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.
  - For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://brnxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

- For Mac, access Web Based Management by clicking the machine's icon on the Status Monitor screen.
- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click
- 4. Click the Network tab.
- 5. Click the **Security** tab.
- 6. Click Certificate.
- 7. Click Create Self-Signed Certificate.
- 8. Enter a Common Name and a Valid Date.
  - The length of the Common Name is less than 64 bytes. Enter an identifier, such as an IP address, node name, or domain name to use when accessing this machine through SSL/TLS communication. The node name is displayed by default.
  - A warning will appear if you use the IPPS or HTTPS protocol and enter a different name in the URL than the **Common Name** that was used for the self-signed certificate.
- 9. Select your setting from the Public Key Algorithm drop-down list. The default setting is RSA(2048bit).
- 10. Select your setting from the Digest Algorithm drop-down list. The default setting is SHA256.
- 11. Click Submit.
- 12. Click Network.
- 13. Click Protocol.
- 14. Click HTTP Server Settings.
- 15. Select the certificate you want to configure from the Select the Certificate drop-down list.
- 16. Click Submit.

The following screen appears.

 $\rightarrow$ 

	The setting for high security in communication was done.
	To activate your new settings, this Device needs to restart.
	Note: Any jobs in progress will be aborted.
	To activate other protocols that have secure settings after restarting, check the box below.
	Activate other protocols that have secure settings.
	Would you like to restart immediately?
Yes	No

17. Click **Yes** to restart your print server.

The self-signed certificate is created and saved in your machine's memory.

To use SSL/TLS communication, the self-signed certificate must be installed on your computer.



Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate > Install the Self-signed Certificate for Windows users with Administrator Rights

# Install the Self-signed Certificate for Windows users with Administrator Rights

The following steps are for Microsoft Internet Explorer. If you use another web browser, consult the documentation for your web browser to get help with installing certificates.

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - (Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008)
    - Click 👩 (Start) > All Programs.
  - (Windows 8)

Right-click the A (Internet Explorer) icon on the taskbar.

- (Windows 10)
  - Click **(Start)** > All apps > Windows Accessories > Internet Explorer.
- (Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2)

Click *C* (Internet Explorer), and then right-click the *C* (Internet Explorer) icon that appears on the taskbar.

2. Right-click Internet Explorer, and then click Run as administrator.



If the User Account Control screen appears,

- (Windows Vista) Click Continue (Allow).
- (Windows 7/Windows 8/Windows 10) Click Yes.
- 3. Type "https://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar to access your machine (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address or the node name that you assigned for the certificate).



4. Click Continue to this website (not recommended).



5. Click Certificate Error, and then click View certificates.

+ ttps://xxx.xx.x /genera	오 Certifi 湿 ㅎ 😂 Brother XXX-XXXX	×	× 回 三 命 ☆ 総
General Status Certificate Invalid The security certificate present website has errors. This problem might indicate a fool you or intercept any data the server.	in attempt to you se		Bother Solutions Center
Auto We recommend that you close Mainter About certificate errors Find De View certificate Contact Coverant Sleep Time Auto Power Off Volume Panel		Ready • Off O On M C Y BK	
	Web Language Device Location	Auto  Contact : Cocation :	

6. Click Install Certificate....

r



- 7. When the Certificate Import Wizard appears, click Next.
- 8. Select Place all certificates in the following store, and then click Browse....



9. Select Trusted Root Certification Authorities, and then click OK.



10. Click Next.



#### 11. Click Finish.

12. Click Yes, if the fingerprint (thumbprint) is correct.

Security W	/arning X		
	You are about to install a certificate from a certification authority (CA) claiming to represent:		
	Preset Certificate		
Windows cannot validate that the certificate is actually from "Preset Certificate". You should confirm its origin by contacting "Preset Certificate". The following number will assist you in this process: Thumbprint (sha1): FBBA7F11 4078EDB6 2D6FC650 BC291ABE 71C4CE04			
	Do you want to install this certificate?		
	<u>Y</u> es		

The fingerprint (thumbprint) is printed on the Network Configuration Report.

#### 13. Click OK.

The self-signed certificate is now installed on your computer, and SSL/TLS communication is available.

#### Related Information

- Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate
- Import the Self-signed Certificate

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate > Import and Export the Self-signed Certificate on your Brother Machine

# Import and Export the Self-signed Certificate on your Brother Machine

You can store the self-signed certificates on your Brother machine and manage them by importing and exporting.

- Import the Self-signed Certificate
- Export the Self-signed Certificate

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate > Import and Export the Self-signed Certificate on your Brother Machine > Import the Self-signed Certificate

# Import the Self-signed Certificate

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.
  - For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://brnxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

- For Mac, access Web Based Management by clicking the machine's icon on the Status Monitor screen.
- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click ->
- 4. Click the Network tab.
- 5. Click the Security tab.
- 6. Click Certificate.
- 7. Click Import Certificate and Private Key.
- 8. Browse to the file you want to import.
- 9. Type the password if the file is encrypted, and then click **Submit**.

The self-signed certificate is imported to your machine.

To use SSL/TLS communication, the self-signed certificate must also be installed on your computer. Contact your network administrator.

## $\checkmark$

## **Related Information**

- · Import and Export the Self-signed Certificate on your Brother Machine
- · Install the Self-signed Certificate for Windows users with Administrator Rights

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate > Import and Export the Self-signed Certificate on your Brother Machine > Export the Self-signed Certificate

# **Export the Self-signed Certificate**

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.
  - For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://brnxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

- For Mac, access Web Based Management by clicking the machine's icon on the Status Monitor screen.
- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click
- 4. Click the Network tab.
- 5. Click the Security tab.
- 6. Click Certificate.
- 7. Click Export shown with Certificate List.
- If you want to encrypt the file, type a password in the Enter password field.
   If the Enter password field is blank, your output file will not be encrypted.
- 9. Type the password again in the Retype password field, and then click Submit.
- 10. Click Save.
- 11. Specify the location where you want to save the file.

The self-signed certificate is exported to your computer.

You can also import the self-signed certificate to your computer.

## Related Information

· Import and Export the Self-signed Certificate on your Brother Machine

 $\rightarrow$ 

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA)

# Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA)

If you already have a certificate from an external trusted CA, you can store the certificate and private key on the machine and manage them by importing and exporting. If you do not have a certificate from an external trusted CA, create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR), send it to a CA for authentication, and install the returned certificate on your machine.

- Create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR)
- Install a Certificate on Your Brother Machine
- · Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA) > Create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR)

# Create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR)

A Certificate Signing Request (CSR) is a request sent to a Certificate Authority (CA) to authenticate the credentials contained within the certificate.

We recommend installing a Root Certificate from the CA on your computer before creating the CSR.

- 1. Start your web browser.
- 2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.
  - For example:
    - http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://brnxxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

For Mac, access Web Based Management by clicking the machine's icon on the **Status Monitor** screen.

3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click

- 4. Click the Network tab.
- 5. Click the Security tab.
- 6. Click Certificate.

ß

- 7. Click Create CSR.
- 8. Type a Common Name (required) and add other information about your Organization (optional).
  - Your company details are required so that a CA can confirm your identity and verify it to the outside world.
    - The length of the **Common Name** must be less than 64 bytes. Enter an identifier, such as an IP address, node name, or domain name to use when accessing this printer through SSL/TLS communication. The node name is displayed by default. The **Common Name** is required.
    - A warning will appear if you type a different name in the URL than the Common Name that was used for the certificate.
    - The length of the **Organization**, the **Organization Unit**, the **City/Locality** and the **State/Province** must be less than 64 bytes.
    - The Country/Region should be a two character ISO 3166 country code.
    - If you are configuring an X.509v3 certificate extension, select the **Configure extended partition** check box, and then select **Auto (Register IPv4)** or **Manual**.
- 9. Select your setting from the Public Key Algorithm drop-down list. The default setting is RSA(2048bit).
- 10. Select your setting from the Digest Algorithm drop-down list. The default setting is SHA256.
- 11. Click Submit.

The CSR appears on your screen. Save the CSR as a file or copy and paste it into an online CSR form offered by a Certificate Authority.

#### 12. Click Save.

- Follow your CA's policy regarding the method to send a CSR to your CA.
  - If you are using the Enterprise root CA of Windows Server 2008/2012/2012 R2, we recommend using the Web Server for the certificate template to securely create the Client Certificate. If you are creating a Client Certificate for an IEEE 802.1x environment with EAP-TLS authentication, we recommend using User for the certificate template. For more information, go to your model's page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u>.

## **Related Information**

Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA)

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA) > Install a Certificate on Your Brother Machine

# Install a Certificate on Your Brother Machine

When you receive a certificate from a CA, follow the steps below to install it into the print server:

Only a certificate issued with your machine's CSR can be installed onto the machine. When you want to create another CSR, make sure that the certificate is installed before creating another CSR. Create another CSR only after installing the certificate on the machine. If you do not, the CSR you create before installing will be invalid.

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

• If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://brnxxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

 For Mac, access Web Based Management by clicking the machine's icon on the Status Monitor screen.

3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click

- 4. Click the **Network** tab.
- 5. Click the **Security** tab.
- 6. Click Certificate.
- 7. Click Install Certificate.
- 8. Browse to the file that contains the certificate issued by the CA, and then click Submit.

The certificate has been created successfully and saved in your machine's memory successfully.

To use SSL/TLS communication, the Root Certificate from the CA must be installed on your computer. Contact your network administrator.



Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA)

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA) > Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key

# Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key

Store the certificate and private key on your machine and manage them by importing and exporting them.

- Import a Certificate and Private Key
- Export the Certificate and Private Key

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA) > Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key > Import a Certificate and Private Key

# Import a Certificate and Private Key

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.
  - For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://brnxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

- For Mac, access Web Based Management by clicking the machine's icon on the Status Monitor screen.
- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click ->
- 4. Click the Network tab.
- 5. Click the **Security** tab.
- 6. Click Certificate.
- 7. Click Import Certificate and Private Key.
- 8. Browse to the file you want to import.
- 9. Type the password if the file is encrypted, and then click **Submit**.

The certificate and private key are imported to your machine.

To use SSL/TLS communication, the Root Certificate from the CA must also be installed on your computer. Contact your network administrator.



#### **Related Information**

· Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA) > Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key > Export the Certificate and Private Key

# **Export the Certificate and Private Key**

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.
  - For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

For example:

http://brnxxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

- For Mac, access Web Based Management by clicking the machine's icon on the Status Monitor screen.
- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click ->
- 4. Click the Network tab.
- 5. Click the Security tab.
- 6. Click Certificate.
- 7. Click Export shown with Certificate List.
- Enter the password if you want to encrypt the file.
   If a blank password is used, the output is not encrypted.
- 9. Enter the password again for confirmation, and then click Submit.
- 10. Click Save.
- 11. Specify the location where you want to save the file.

The certificate and private key are exported to your computer.

You can also import the certificate to your computer.

#### Related Information

· Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Import and Export a CA Certificate

## Import and Export a CA Certificate

You can import, export and store CA certificates on your Brother machine.

- Import a CA Certificate
- Export a CA Certificate

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Import and Export a CA Certificate > Import a CA Certificate

# Import a CA Certificate

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

• If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:
  - http://brnxxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

- For Mac, access Web Based Management by clicking the machine's icon on the Status Monitor screen.
- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click
- 4. Click the Network tab.
- 5. Click the Security tab.
- 6. Click CA Certificate.
- 7. Click Import CA Certificate.
- 8. Browse to the file you want to import.
- 9. Click Submit.

## Related Information

• Import and Export a CA Certificate
▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Create and Install a Certificate > Import and Export a CA Certificate > Export a CA Certificate

# **Export a CA Certificate**

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

• If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:
  - http://brnxxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

- For Mac, access Web Based Management by clicking the machine's icon on the Status Monitor screen.
- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click -
- 4. Click the Network tab.
- 5. Click the Security tab.
- 6. Click CA Certificate.
- 7. Select the certificate you want to export and click Export.
- 8. Click Submit.
- 9. Click Save.

10. Specify where on your computer you want to save the exported certificate, and save it.

#### Related Information

Import and Export a CA Certificate

▲ Home > Security > Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS > Certificates and Web Based Management > Manage Multiple Certificates

# Manage Multiple Certificates

The multiple certificate feature allows you to use Web Based Management to manage each certificate installed on your machine. In Web Based Management, navigate to the **Certificate** or **CA Certificate** screen to view certificate content, delete, or export your certificates.

	Maximum Number of Certificates Stored UP on Brother Machine
Self-signed Certificate or Certificate Issued by a CA	5
CA Certificate	6

We recommend storing one less certificate than allowed, reserving an empty spot in case of certificate expiration. When a certificate expires, import a new certificate into the reserved spot, and then delete the expired certificate. This ensures that you avoid configuration failure.

- Ø
- When you use HTTPS/IPPS, IEEE 802.1x, or Signed PDF, you must select which certificate you are using.
- When you use SSL for SMTP/POP3/IMAP4 communications (only available for certain models), you do not have to choose the certificate. The necessary certificate will be chosen automatically.

#### Related Information

Certificates and Web Based Management

▲ Home > Security > Send or Receive an Email Securely

# Send or Receive an Email Securely

- Configure Email Sending or Receiving Using Web Based Management
- Send an Email with User Authentication
- Send or Receive an Email Securely Using SSL TLS

▲ Home > Security > Send or Receive an Email Securely > Configure Email Sending or Receiving Using Web Based Management

# Configure Email Sending or Receiving Using Web Based Management

We recommend using Web Based Management to configure secured email sending with user authentication, or email sending and receiving using SSL/TLS.

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click



- 4. Click the **Network** tab.
- 5. Click the Protocol menu in the left navigation bar.
- In the POP3/IMAP4/SMTP field, click Advanced Settings and make sure the status of POP3/IMAP4/SMTP is Enabled.
- 7. Configure the POP3/IMAP4/SMTP settings.
  - Confirm that the email settings are correct after configuration by sending a test email.
  - If you do not know the POP3/IMAP4/SMTP server settings, contact your network administrator or Internet Service Provider (ISP).
- 8. When finished, click Submit.

The Test Send/Receive E-mail Configuration dialog box appears.

9. Follow the instructions in the dialog box to test the current settings.

#### Related Information

- · Send or Receive an Email Securely
- · Send or Receive an Email Securely Using SSL TLS

▲ Home > Security > Send or Receive an Email Securely > Send an Email with User Authentication

# Send an Email with User Authentication

Your Brother machine supports the SMTP-AUTH method to send email via an email server that requires user authentication. This method prevents unauthorised users from accessing the email server.

You can use SMTP-AUTH for email notification, email reports and I-Fax.

We recommend using Web Based Management to configure the SMTP authentication.

#### **Email Server Settings**

Ø

Ø

You must configure your machine's SMTP authentication method to match the method used by your email server. For details about your email server settings, contact your network administrator or Internet Service Provider (ISP).

To enable SMTP server authentication: in the Web Based Management **POP3/IMAP4/SMTP** screen, under **Server Authentication Method**, you must select **SMTP-AUTH**.



· Send or Receive an Email Securely

▲ Home > Security > Send or Receive an Email Securely > Send or Receive an Email Securely Using SSL TLS

# Send or Receive an Email Securely Using SSL TLS

Your Brother machine supports SSL/TLS methods to send or receive an email via an email server that requires secure SSL/TLS communication. To send or receive email via an email server that is using SSL/TLS communication, you must configure SMTP over SSL/TLS, POP3 over SSL/TLS, or IMAP4 over SSL/TLS.



#### **Verify Server Certificate**

Under SSL/TLS, if you choose SSL or TLS, the Verify Server Certificate check box will be selected automatically.

Cancel	Submit		
	Status	Enabled	
Send	E-mail Settings(SMTP)		
	Server Address	010.134.040.021	
	Port	25	
	Server Authentication Method	● None ○ SMTP-AUTH	
	SMTP-AUTH Account Name		
	SMTP-AUTH Account Password		
	Enter password		
	Retype password		
	SSL/TLS	None	
		OSSL	
		OTLS	
		□ Verify Server Certificate	
	Device E-mail Address	bfp01@hldec4.dev.dic.brother.co.jp	
Rece	ive E-mail Settings(POP3/I	MAP4)	
	Protocol	● POP3 ○ IMAP4	
	Server Address	010.134.040.021	
	Port	110	
	Mailbox Name	bfp49	

- Before you verify the server certificate, you must import the CA certificate issued by the CA that signed the server certificate. Contact your network administrator or your Internet Service Provider (ISP) to confirm if importing a CA certificate is necessary.
  - If you do not need to verify the server certificate, clear the Verify Server Certificate check box.

#### **Port Number**

If you select **SSL** or **TLS** for SMTP, POP3, or IMAP4, the **Port** value will be changed to match the protocol. To change the port number manually, type the port number after you choose **SSL** or **TLS** for the **SSL/TLS** settings.

You must configure your machine's POP3/IMAP4/SMTP communication method to match the method used by your email server. For details about your email server settings, contact your network administrator or your ISP.

In most cases, the secured webmail services require the following settings:

SMTP	Port	25
	Server Authentication Method	SMTP-AUTH
	SSL/TLS	TLS
POP3	Port	995
	SSL/TLS	SSL
IMAP4	Port	993
	SSL/TLS	SSL

# **Related Information**

- Send or Receive an Email Securely
- Configure Email Sending or Receiving Using Web Based Management

▲ Home > Security > Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network

# **Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network**

- What Is IEEE 802.1x Authentication?
- Configure IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network Using Web Based Management (Web Browser)
- IEEE 802.1x Authentication Methods

▲ Home > Security > Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network > What Is IEEE 802.1x Authentication?

# What Is IEEE 802.1x Authentication?

IEEE 802.1x is an IEEE standard for wired and wireless networks that limits access from unauthorised network devices. Your Brother machine (supplicant) sends an authentication request to a RADIUS server (Authentication server) through your access point or HUB. After your request has been verified by the RADIUS server, your machine can access the network.

#### Related Information

• Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network

▲ Home > Security > Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network > Configure IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network Using Web Based Management (Web Browser)

# Configure IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network Using Web Based Management (Web Browser)

- If you configure your machine using EAP-TLS authentication, you must install the client certificate issued by a CA before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the client certificate. If you have installed more than one certificate, we recommend writing down the certificate name you want to use.
- Before you verify the server certificate, you must import the CA certificate that has been issued by the CA that signed the server certificate. Contact your network administrator or your Internet Service Provider (ISP) to confirm whether a CA certificate import is necessary.

You can also configure IEEE 802.1x authentication using:

- BRAdmin Professional (Wired and wireless network)
- · Wireless setup wizard from the control panel (Wireless network)
- Wireless setup wizard on the CD-ROM (Wireless network)
- 1. Start your web browser.
- 2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.
  - For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://brnxxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

- For Mac, access Web Based Management by clicking the machine's icon on the **Status Monitor** screen.
- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click -
- 4. Click the Network tab.
- 5. Do one of the following:

Option	Description
Wired network	Click the <b>Wired</b> tab, and then select <b>Wired 802.1x Authentication</b> in the left navigation bar.
Wireless network	Click the <b>Wireless</b> tab, and then select <b>Wireless (Enterprise)</b> in the left navigation bar.

6. Configure the IEEE 802.1x authentication settings.

- To enable IEEE 802.1x authentication for wired networks, select **Enabled** for **Wired 802.1x status** on the **Wired 802.1x Authentication** page.
- If you are using **EAP-TLS** authentication, you must select the client certificate that has been installed (shown with certificate name) for verification from the **Client Certificate** drop-down list.
- If you select EAP-FAST, PEAP, EAP-TTLS, or EAP-TLS authentication, select the verification method from the Server Certificate Verification drop-down list. Verify the server certificate using the CA certificate, imported to the machine in advance, that has been issued by the CA that signed the server certificate.

Select one of the following verification methods from the Server Certificate Verification drop-down list:

Option	Description
No Verification	The server certificate can always be trusted. The verification is not performed.
CA Cert.	The verification method to check the CA reliability of the server certificate, using the CA certificate that has been issued by the CA that signed the server certificate.
CA Cert. + ServerID	The verification method to check the common name <sup>1</sup> value of the server certificate, in addition to the CA reliability of the server certificate.

#### 7. When finished with configuration, click **Submit**.

For wired networks: After configuring, connect your machine to the IEEE 802.1x supported network. After a few minutes, print the Network Configuration Report to check the **Wired IEEE 802.1x**> Status.

Option	Description
Success	The wired IEEE 802.1x function is enabled and the authentication was successful.
Failed	The wired IEEE 802.1x function is enabled; however, the authentication failed.
Off	The wired IEEE 802.1x function is not available.

#### **Related Information**

- Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network
- Print the Network Configuration Report
- · Print the WLAN Report
- Supported Security Certificate Features

<sup>1</sup> The common name verification compares the common name of the server certificate to the character string configured for the Server ID. Before you use this method, contact your system administrator about the server certificate's common name and then configure Server ID.

▲ Home > Security > Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network > IEEE 802.1x Authentication Methods

# IEEE 802.1x Authentication Methods

#### LEAP (Wireless network)

Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol (LEAP) is a proprietary EAP method developed by Cisco Systems, Inc., which uses a user ID and password for authentication.

#### EAP-FAST

Extensible Authentication Protocol-Flexible Authentication via Secured Tunneling (EAP-FAST) has been developed by Cisco Systems, Inc., which uses a user ID and password for authentication, and symmetric key algorithms to achieve a tunnelled authentication process.

The Brother machine supports the following inner authentication methods:

- EAP-FAST/NONE
- EAP-FAST/MS-CHAPv2
- EAP-FAST/GTC

#### EAP-MD5 (Wired network)

Extensible Authentication Protocol-Message Digest Algorithm 5 (EAP-MD5) uses a user ID and password for challenge-response authentication.

#### PEAP

Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol (PEAP) is a version of EAP method developed by Cisco Systems, Inc., Microsoft Corporation and RSA Security. PEAP creates an encrypted Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)/Transport Layer Security (TLS) tunnel between a client and an authentication server, for sending a user ID and password. PEAP provides mutual authentication between the server and the client.

The Brother machine supports the following inner authentications:

- PEAP/MS-CHAPv2
- PEAP/GTC

#### EAP-TTLS

Extensible Authentication Protocol-Tunneled Transport Layer Security (EAP-TTLS) has been developed by Funk Software and Certicom. EAP-TTLS creates a similar encrypted SSL tunnel to PEAP, between a client and an authentication server, for sending a user ID and password. EAP-TTLS provides mutual authentication between the server and the client.

The Brother machine supports the following inner authentications:

- EAP-TTLS/CHAP
- EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAP
- EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAPv2
- EAP-TTLS/PAP

#### EAP-TLS

Extensible Authentication Protocol-Transport Layer Security (EAP-TLS) requires digital certificate authentication both at a client and an authentication server.

#### Related Information

Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network

#### ▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect

# **Mobile/Web Connect**

- Brother Web Connect
- Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup>
- AirPrint
- Mobile Printing for Windows
- Mopria<sup>®</sup> Print Service
- Brother iPrint&Scan
- Near-Field Communication (NFC)

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect

# **Brother Web Connect**

- Brother Web Connect Overview
- Online Services Used with Brother Web Connect
- Conditions for Using Brother Web Connect
- Set Up Brother Web Connect
- Scan and Upload Documents Using Brother Web Connect
- Upload a Document from an External Memory Device Using Brother Web Connect
- Download and Print Documents Using Brother Web Connect
- Download and Save a Document to an External Memory Device Using Brother Web Connect
- FaxForward to Cloud or E-mail

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Brother Web Connect Overview

# **Brother Web Connect Overview**

Press 🔁 (Web) or 🜍 (Apps) on the touchscreen to use Brother Web Connect.



Certain websites provide services that allow users to upload and view images and files on the website. Your Brother machine can scan images and upload them to these services, and also download from and print images that are already uploaded to these services.



- 1. Printing
- 2. Scanning
- 3. Photos, images, documents and other files
- 4. Web Service

To use Brother Web Connect, your Brother machine must be connected to a network that has access to the Internet, through either a wired or wireless connection.

For network setups that use a proxy server, the machine must also be configured to use a proxy server. If you are unsure of your network configuration, check with your network administrator.

A proxy server is a computer that serves as an intermediary between computers without a direct Internet connection, and the Internet.



Ø

# **Related Information**

Brother Web Connect

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Online Services Used with Brother Web Connect

# **Online Services Used with Brother Web Connect**

Use Brother Web Connect to access online services from your Brother machine. Some of these web services offer business versions.

To use Brother Web Connect, you must have an account with the online service you want to use. If you do not already have an account, use a computer to access the service's website and create an account.

You do not need to create an account to use Brother Creative Center. (Brother CreativeCenter is available only for some models.)

#### Google Drive<sup>™</sup>

An online document storage, editing, sharing and file synchronisation service.

URL: drive.google.com

#### **Evernote**<sup>®</sup>

An online file storage and management service.

URL: www.evernote.com

#### Dropbox

An online file storage, sharing and synchronisation service.

URL: www.dropbox.com

#### OneDrive

An online file storage, sharing and management service.

URL: <u>https://onedrive.live.com</u>

#### Box

An online document editing and sharing service. URL: www.box.com

----

#### OneNote

An online document editing and sharing service.

URL: www.onenote.com

#### **Brother Creative Center**

A website that offers various templates, such as greeting cards, brochures and calendars that you can print on your Brother machine. (available only for certain countries and models)

www.brother.com/creativecenter

For more information about any of these services, refer to the respective service's website.

The following table describes which file types can be used with each Brother Web Connect feature:

Accessible Services	Google Drive <sup>™</sup> Evernote <sup>®</sup> Dropbox OneDrive Box	OneNote	Brother Creative Center
Download and print images or save them to media	JPEG PDF DOC DOCX XLS XLSX PPT	JPEG PDF DOC DOCX XLS XLSX PPT PPTX	(Print only)

Accessible Services	Google Drive <sup>™</sup> Evernote <sup>®</sup> Dropbox OneDrive Box	OneNote	Brother Creative Center
	PPTX		
	JPEG	JPEG	
	PDF	PDF	
Upload scanned images	DOCX	DOCX	-
	XLSX	XLSX	
	PPTX	PPTX	
Upload images saved on media	JPEG	-	-
FaxForward to the online	JPEG	JPEG	
services	PDF	PDF	-
(available only for certain countries and models)	TIFF	TIFF	

• Not all services are available in all countries.

• For Hong Kong, Taiwan and Korea

Brother Web Connect supports only file names written in English. Files named in the local language will not be downloaded.

#### **Related Information**

Brother Web Connect

Ø

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Conditions for Using Brother Web Connect

# **Conditions for Using Brother Web Connect**

- Brother Software Installation for Using Brother Web Connect
- Configure the Proxy Server Settings Using the Machine's Control Panel
- Configure the Proxy Server Settings Using Web Based Management

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Conditions for Using Brother Web Connect > Brother Software Installation for Using Brother Web Connect

# Brother Software Installation for Using Brother Web Connect

The initial installation of Brother Web Connect requires a computer that has access to the Internet and has the Brother machine's software installed.

For Windows:

To install the Brother Software and configure the machine to be able to print over your wired or wireless network, see the *Quick Setup Guide* included with your Brother machine.

For Mac:

To install the Brother Software, go to your model's **Downloads** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u>.



#### Related Information

Conditions for Using Brother Web Connect

Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Conditions for Using Brother Web Connect > Configure the Proxy Server Settings Using the Machine's Control Panel

# Configure the Proxy Server Settings Using the Machine's Control Panel

If your network uses a proxy server, the following proxy server information must be configured on the machine:

- Proxy server address
- Port number
- User Name
- Password

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Web Connect Settings] > [Proxy
  Settings] > [Proxy Connection].
- 2. Press [On].
- 3. Press the option that you want to set, and then enter the proxy server information. Press [OK].
- 4. Press

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Web Connect Settings] > [Proxy Settings] > [Proxy Connection].
- 2. Press [On].
- 3. Press the option that you want to set, and then enter the proxy server information.

Press [OK].

4. Press

#### Related Information

· Conditions for Using Brother Web Connect

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Conditions for Using Brother Web Connect > Configure the Proxy Server Settings Using Web Based Management

# **Configure the Proxy Server Settings Using Web Based Management**

If your network uses a proxy server, the following proxy server information must be configured using Web Based Management:

- Proxy server address
- Port number
- User Name
- Password

Ø

We recommend Microsoft Internet Explorer 8/11 for Windows and Safari 9 for Mac. Make sure that JavaScript and Cookies are always enabled in whichever browser you use. If you use different web browser, make sure it is compatible with HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1.

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click



- 4. Click the Network tab.
- 5. Click the **Protocol** menu in the left navigation bar.
- 6. Make sure the Proxy check box is selected, and then click Submit.
- 7. In the Proxy field, click Advanced Settings.
- 8. Enter the proxy server information.
- 9. Click Submit.

#### Related Information

Conditions for Using Brother Web Connect

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Set Up Brother Web Connect

# Set Up Brother Web Connect

- Brother Web Connect Setup Overview
- Create an Account for Each Online Service Before Using Brother Web Connect
- Apply for Brother Web Connect Access
- Register an Account on Your Brother Machine for Brother Web Connect
- Set Up Brother Web Connect for Brother CreativeCenter

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Set Up Brother Web Connect > Brother Web Connect Setup Overview

# **Brother Web Connect Setup Overview**

Configure the Brother Web Connect settings using the following procedure (when using Brother CreativeCenter, this procedure is not necessary):

#### Step 1: Create an account with the service you want to use.

Access the service's website using a computer and create an account. (If you already have an account, there is no need to create an additional account.)



- 1. User registration
- 2. Web Service
- 3. Obtain account

#### Step 2: Apply for Brother Web Connect access.

Start Brother Web Connect access using a computer and obtain a temporary ID.



- 1. Enter account information
- 2. Brother Web Connect application page
- 3. Obtain temporary ID

# Step 3: Register your account information on your machine so you can access the service you want to use.

Enter the temporary ID to enable the service on your machine. Specify the account name as you would like it to be displayed on the machine, and enter a PIN if you would like to use one.



- 1. Enter temporary ID
- 2. Web Service

Your Brother machine can now use the service.



#### **Related Information**

Set Up Brother Web Connect

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Set Up Brother Web Connect > Create an Account for Each Online Service Before Using Brother Web Connect

# Create an Account for Each Online Service Before Using Brother Web Connect

To use Brother Web Connect to access an online service, you must have an account with that online service. If you do not already have an account, use a computer to access the service's website and create an account. After creating an account, log on and use the account once with a computer before using the Brother Web Connect feature. Otherwise, you may not be able to access the service using Brother Web Connect.

If you already have an account, there is no need to create an additional account.

After you finish creating an account with the online service you want to use, apply for Brother Web Connect access.

You do not need to create an account if you use the service as a guest. You can use only certain services as a guest. If the service you want to use does not have a guest-user option, you must create an account.



Ø

Set Up Brother Web Connect

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Set Up Brother Web Connect > Apply for Brother Web Connect Access

# Apply for Brother Web Connect Access

To use Brother Web Connect to access online services, you must first apply for Brother Web Connect access using a computer that has the Brother Software installed.

1. Access the Brother Web Connect application website:

Windows	Click 😨 (Start) > All Programs > Brother > Brother Utilities, and then click the drop-	
Vista	down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click Do More in the left	
Windows 7	navigation bar, and then click Brother Web Connect.	
Windows 8	Launch 🙀 (Brother Utilities), and then click the drop-down list and select your model	
Windows 10	name (if not already selected). Click <b>Do More</b> in the left navigation bar, and then click <b>Brother Web Connect</b> .	
Windows 8.1	Move your mouse to the lower left corner of the <b>Start</b> screen and click 🕠 (if you are	
	using a touch-based device, swipe up from the bottom of the <b>Start</b> screen to bring up the <b>Apps</b> screen).	
	Click 🛜 🛱 (Brother Utilities), and then click the drop-down list and select your model	
	name (if not already selected). Click <b>Do More</b> in the left navigation bar, and then click <b>Brother Web Connect</b> .	
Мас	Click Go in the Finder bar, Applications > Brother > Utilities > Brother Web Connec	

The Brother Web Connect page launches.

Ø

The first time you launch Brother Web Connect, you must select your country, language, and model name, and then click Next to move to the next step, selecting the service you want.

2. Select the service you want to use.





The actual screen may differ from the screen shown above.

3. Follow the on-screen instructions and apply for access. When finished, your temporary ID will appear.

	brother
Get connected with Brother Web Connect	
Finished the registration.	
Please enter the following temporary ID on the LCD screen of your machine.	
Temporary ID (11 digits)	
XXX XXXX XXXX	
NOTE : The temporary ID will expire in 24 hours.	
ТОР	

- 4. Make a note of your temporary ID, as you will need it to register accounts to the machine. The temporary ID is valid for 24 hours.
- 5. Close the web browser.

Now that you have a Brother Web Connect access ID, you must register this ID on your machine, and then use your machine to access the web service you want to use.



**Related Information** 

Set Up Brother Web Connect

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Set Up Brother Web Connect > Register an Account on Your Brother Machine for Brother Web Connect

# Register an Account on Your Brother Machine for Brother Web Connect

You must enter your Brother Web Connect account information and configure your machine so that it can use Brother Web Connect to access the service you want.

- · You must apply for Brother Web Connect access to register an account on your machine.
- Before you register an account, confirm that the correct date and time are set on the machine's control panel.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Press < or ► to display [Web].

Press [Web].

- If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read the information and press [OK].
  - Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].
- Press ▲ or ▼ to display the service with which you want to register. Press the service name.
- 3. If information regarding Brother Web Connect appears, press [OK].
- 4. **Press** [Register/Delete Account] > [Register Account].
- 5. The machine will prompt you to enter the temporary ID you received when you applied for Brother Web Connect access.

Press [OK].

6. Enter the temporary ID using the LCD, and then press [OK].

An error message will appear on the LCD if the information you entered does not match the temporary ID you received when you applied for access, or if the temporary ID has expired. Either enter the temporary ID correctly, or apply for access again and receive a new temporary ID.

- 7. The machine will prompt you to enter the account name that you want to be displayed on the LCD. Press [OK].
- 8. Enter the name using the LCD, and then press [OK].
- 9. Do one of the following:
  - To set a PIN for the account, press [Yes]. (A PIN prevents unauthorized access to the account.) Enter a
    four-digit number, and then press [OK].
  - If you do not want to set a PIN, press [No].

When the account information you entered appears, confirm that it is correct.

- 10. Press [Yes] to register your information as entered.
- 11. Press [OK].

Account registration is complete and your machine can now access the service.



#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Swipe left or right or press < or ► to display [Web].

Press [Web].

- If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read the information and press [OK].
  - Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].
- Swipe left or right or press 
   or ► to display the service with which you want to register. Press the service name.
- 3. If information regarding Brother Web Connect appears, press [OK].
- 4. Press [Register/Delete Account] > [Register Account].
- 5. The machine will prompt you to enter the temporary ID you received when you applied for Brother Web Connect access.

Press [OK].

6. Enter the temporary ID using the LCD, and then press [OK].

An error message will appear on the LCD if the information you entered does not match the temporary ID you received when you applied for access, or if the temporary ID has expired. Either enter the temporary ID correctly, or apply for access again and receive a new temporary ID.

- 7. The machine will prompt you to enter the account name that you want to be displayed on the LCD. Press [OK].
- 8. Enter the name using the LCD, and then press [OK].
- 9. Do one of the following:
  - To set a PIN for the account, press [Yes]. (A PIN prevents unauthorized access to the account.) Enter a four-digit number and press [OK].
  - If you do not want to set a PIN, press [No].

When the account information you entered appears, confirm that it is correct.

- 10. Press [Yes] to register your information as entered.
- 11. Press [OK].

Account registration is complete and your machine can now access the service.

12. Press

#### Related Information

• Set Up Brother Web Connect

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Set Up Brother Web Connect > Set Up Brother Web Connect for Brother CreativeCenter

# Set Up Brother Web Connect for Brother CreativeCenter

Brother Web Connect is set up to work with Brother CreativeCenter automatically. No configuration is needed to create the calendars, business cards, posters and greeting cards available at <u>www.brother.com/creativecenter</u>.



Brother CreativeCenter is not available in all countries.

#### Related Information

Set Up Brother Web Connect

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Scan and Upload Documents Using Brother Web Connect

# Scan and Upload Documents Using Brother Web Connect

Upload your scanned photos and documents directly to a web service without using a computer.

- When scanning and uploading JPEG files, monochrome scanning is not available.
- When scanning and uploading Searchable PDF or Microsoft Office files, monochrome and grey scanning is not available.
- When scanning and uploading JPEG files, each page is uploaded as a separate file.
- Uploaded documents are saved in an album named From\_BrotherDevice.

For information regarding restrictions, such as the size or number of documents that can be uploaded, refer to the respective service's website.

If you are a restricted Web Connect user due to the Secure Function Lock feature (available for certain models), you cannot upload the scanned data.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Press ◀ or ► to display [Web].

Press [Web].

• You can also press [Scan] > [to Web].

- If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read the information and press [OK].
- Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].
- Press ▲ or ▼ to display the service that hosts the account to which you want to upload. Press the service name.
- 4. Press ▲ or ▼ to display your account name, and then press it.
- 5. If the PIN entry screen appears, enter the four-digit PIN and press [OK].
- 6. Press ▲ or V to display [Upload from Scanner].

Press [Upload from Scanner].

- If you pressed [Scan] > [to Web], this option does not appear.
- This option may not appear depending on the service.

7. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete this operation.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Swipe left or right or press ◀ or ► to display [Web].

Press [Web].



You can also press [Scan] > [to Web].

- If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read the information and press [OK].
- Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].

- 3. Swipe left or right or press ◀ or ► to display the service that hosts the account to which you want to upload. Press the service name.
- 4. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display your account name, and then press it.
- 5. If the PIN entry screen appears, enter the four-digit PIN and press [OK].
- 6. Press [Upload from Scanner].

This option may not appear depending on the service.

7. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete this operation.

#### Related Information

Brother Web Connect

Ø

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Upload a Document from an External Memory Device Using Brother Web Connect

# Upload a Document from an External Memory Device Using Brother Web Connect

Documents saved on media (such as a USB flash drive) connected to the machine can be uploaded directly to a web service.

- Uploaded documents are saved in an album named From\_BrotherDevice.
- USB flash drive support is available only for some models.

For information regarding restrictions, such as the size or number of documents that can be uploaded, refer to the respective service's website.

If you are a restricted Web Connect user due to the Secure Function Lock feature (available for certain models), you cannot upload documents saved on media.

#### IMPORTANT

DO NOT remove the USB flash drive while the message appears on the LCD. Otherwise, the USB flash drive, or data stored on the USB flash drive could be damaged.

(For Hong Kong, Taiwan and Korea)

Brother Web Connect supports only file names written in English. Files named in the local language will not be uploaded.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

 Insert a USB flash drive into your machine. The LCD automatically changes.

2. Press < or ► to display [Web].

Press [Web].

• If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read the information and press [OK].

- Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].
- 3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the service that hosts the account to which you want to upload. Press the service name.
- 4. Press ▲ or ▼ to display your account name, and then press it.
- 5. If the PIN entry screen appears, enter the four-digit PIN and press [OK].
- 6. Press ▲ or V to display [Upload from Media].

**Press** [Upload from Media].

7. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete this operation.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- Insert a USB flash drive into your machine. The LCD screen automatically changes.
- 2. Press [Web].

- If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read the information and press [OK].
  - Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].
- 3. Swipe left or right or press ◀ or ► to display the service that hosts the account to which you want to upload. Press the service name.
- 4. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display your account name, and then press it.
- 5. If the PIN entry screen appears, enter the four-digit PIN and press [OK].
- 6. Press [Upload from Media].
- 7. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete this operation.

#### Related Information

Brother Web Connect

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Download and Print Documents Using Brother Web Connect

# **Download and Print Documents Using Brother Web Connect**

Documents that have been uploaded to your account can be downloaded directly to your machine and printed. Documents that other users have uploaded to their own accounts for sharing can also be downloaded to your machine and printed, as long as you have viewing privileges for those documents. Certain services allow guest users to view documents that are public. When accessing a service or an account as a guest user, you can view documents that the owner has made public, that is, documents with no viewing restrictions.

To download other users' documents, you must have access privileges to view the corresponding albums or documents.

If you are a restricted user for Web Connect due to the Secure Function Lock feature (available for certain models), you cannot download the data.

The Secure Function Lock Page Limit feature applies to the print job using Web Connect.



For Hong Kong, Taiwan and Korea

Brother Web Connect supports only file names written in English. Files named in the local language will not be downloaded.



- Brother Web Connect
- Download and Print Using Web Services
- Download and Print Brother CreativeCenter Templates
▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Download and Print Documents Using Brother Web Connect > Download and Print Using Web Services

### **Download and Print Using Web Services**

For information on Brother CreativeCenter Templates, see Related Information.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Press < or ► to display [Web].

Press [Web].

- If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read the information and press [OK].
  - Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].
- Press ▲ or ▼ to display the service that hosts the document you want to download and print. Press the service name.
- 3. Do one of the following:
  - To log on to the service, press ▲ or ▼ to display your account name, and then press it. If the PIN entry screen appears, enter the four-digit PIN and press [OK].
  - To access the service as a guest user, press ▲ or ▼ to display [Use Service as a Guest User], and then press it. When the information regarding access as a guest user appears, press [OK].
- 4. Press ▲ or V to display [Download to Print].

Press [Download to Print].

If you accessed the service as a guest user, enter or select the account name of the user whose documents you want to download.

5. Press  $\blacktriangle$  or  $\lor$  to display the desired album, and then press it.

- An album is a collection of documents. However, the actual term may differ depending on the service you use. When using Evernote<sup>®</sup>, you must select the notebook, and then select the note.
- Some services do not require documents to be saved in albums. For documents not saved in albums, select [Show Unsorted Files] or [Show Unsorted Photos] to select documents. You cannot download documents from other users if the documents are not saved in an album.
- 6. Press the thumbnail of the document you want to print. Confirm the document on the LCD and press [OK]. Select additional documents to print (you can select up to 10 documents).
- 7. When finished, press [OK].
- 8. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete this operation.

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Swipe left or right or press deltor or ► to display [Web].

Press [Web].

- If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read the information and press [OK].
  - Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].

2. Swipe left or right or press ◀ or ► to display the service that hosts the document you want to download and print.

Press the service name.

- 3. Do one of the following:
  - To log on to the service with your account, swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display your account name, and then press it. If the PIN entry screen appears, enter the four-digit PIN and press [OK].
  - To access the service as a guest user, swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display [Use Service as a Guest User], and then press it. When the information regarding access as a guest user appears, press [OK].
- 4. Press [Download to Print].

Ø

Ø

 If you accessed the service as a guest user, enter or select the account name of the user whose documents you want to download.

- 5. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the desired album, and then press it.
  - An album is a collection of documents. However, the actual term may differ depending on the service you use. When using Evernote<sup>®</sup>, you must select the notebook, and then select the note.
  - Some services do not require documents to be saved in albums. For documents not saved in albums, select [Show Unsorted Files] or [Show Unsorted Photos] to select documents. You cannot download documents from other users if the documents are not saved in an album.
- 6. Press the thumbnail of the document you want to print. Confirm the document on the LCD and press [OK]. Select additional documents to print (you can select up to 10 documents).
- 7. When finished, press [OK].
- 8. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete this operation.

### Related Information

- Download and Print Documents Using Brother Web Connect
- Download and Print Brother CreativeCenter Templates

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Download and Print Documents Using Brother Web Connect > Download and Print Brother CreativeCenter Templates

### **Download and Print Brother CreativeCenter Templates**

Brother CreativeCenter is not available in all countries.

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Press < or ► to display [Apps].

Press [Apps].

- If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read it, and then press [OK].
- Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].
- 2. Press ▲ or V to display [Print "CreativeCenter" Templates].

Press [Print "CreativeCenter" Templates].

- 3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the desired category, and then press it.
- 4. Select the desired file. Enter the number of copies you want to print and then press [OK]. Repeat this step until you have selected all the files that you want to print.
- 5. When finished, press [OK].

If information regarding the recommended print settings appears on the machine's LCD, read the information and press [OK].

6. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete this operation.

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Swipe left or right or press < or ► to display [Apps].

Press [Apps].

- If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read it, and then press [OK].
  - Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].
- 2. Press [Print "CreativeCenter" Templates].
- 3. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the desired category, and then press it.
- 4. Select the desired file. Enter the number of copies to print and then press [OK]. Repeat this step until you have selected all the files that you want to print.
- 5. When finished, press [OK].

If information regarding the recommended print settings appears on the machine's LCD, read the information and press [OK].

6. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete this operation.

Related Information

- Download and Print Documents Using Brother Web Connect
- Download and Print Using Web Services

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > Download and Save a Document to an External Memory Device Using Brother Web Connect

# Download and Save a Document to an External Memory Device Using Brother Web Connect

JPEG, PDF and Microsoft Office files can be downloaded from a service and saved directly on media connected to the machine. Documents that other users have uploaded to their own accounts for sharing can also be downloaded to your machine as long as you have viewing privileges for those documents. Certain services allow guest users to view documents that are public. When accessing a service or an account as a guest user, you can view documents that the owner has made public, that is, documents with no viewing restrictions.

- · Make sure there is enough available space on your USB flash drive.
- To download other users' documents, you must have access privileges to view the corresponding albums or documents.
- USB flash drive support is available only for some models.
- Downloaded files are renamed based on the current date. For example, the first image saved on July 1, would be named 07010001.jpg. Note that the region setting also determines the date format of the file name.
- Images are saved in the "BROTHER" folder, which can be found on the root level of the media.

### IMPORTANT

DO NOT remove the USB flash drive while the message appears on the LCD. Otherwise, the USB flash drive, or data stored on the USB flash drive could be damaged.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Insert a USB flash drive into your machine.

The LCD automatically changes.

2. Press ◀ or ► to display [Web].

Press [Web].

- If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read the information and press [OK].
  - Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].
- 3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the service that hosts the document you want to download.

Press the service name.

- 4. Do one of the following:
  - To log on to the service, press ▲ or ▼ to display your account name, and then press it. If the PIN entry screen appears, enter the four-digit PIN and press [OK].
  - To access the service as a guest user, press ▲ or ▼ to display [Use Service as a Guest User], and then press it. When the information regarding access as a guest user appears, press [OK].
- 5. Press ▲ or V to display [Download to Media].

```
Press [Download to Media].
```

• If you accessed the service as a guest user, enter or select the account name of the user whose documents you want to download.

6. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete this operation.

- An album is a collection of documents. However, the actual term may differ depending on the service you use. When using Evernote<sup>®</sup>, you must select the notebook, and then select the note.
  - Some services do not require documents to be saved in albums. For documents not saved in albums, select [Show Unsorted Files] or [Show Unsorted Photos] to select documents. You cannot download documents from other users if the documents are not saved in an album.

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Insert a USB flash drive into your machine.
  - The LCD screen automatically changes.
- 2. Press [Web].
  - If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read the information and press [OK].
    - Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].
- 3. Swipe left or right or press ◀ or ► to display the service that hosts the document you want to download. Press the service name.
- 4. Do one of the following:
  - To log on to the service with your account, swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display your account name, and then press it. If the PIN entry screen appears, enter the four-digit PIN and press [OK].
  - To access the service as a guest user, swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display [Use Service as a Guest User], and then press it. When the information regarding access as a guest user appears, press [OK].
- 5. Press [Download to Media].
  - If you accessed the service as a guest user, enter or select the account name of the user whose documents you want to download.
- 6. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete this operation.
  - An album is a collection of documents. However, the actual term may differ depending on the service you use. When using Evernote<sup>®</sup>, you must select the notebook, and then select the note.
    - Some services do not require documents to be saved in albums. For documents not saved in albums, select [Show Unsorted Files] or [Show Unsorted Photos] to select documents. You cannot download documents from other users if the documents are not saved in an album.

### **Related Information**

Brother Web Connect

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > FaxForward to Cloud or E-mail

# FaxForward to Cloud or E-mail

• Use the FaxForward to Cloud feature to automatically forward incoming faxes to your accounts with the available online services.



- 1. Web Service
- Use the FaxForward to E-mail feature to automatically forward incoming faxes to an inbox as email attachments.



### Related Information

- Brother Web Connect
- Turn On FaxForward to Cloud or E-mail
- Turn Off FaxForward to Cloud or E-mail

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > FaxForward to Cloud or E-mail > Turn On FaxForward to Cloud or E-mail

### Turn On FaxForward to Cloud or E-mail

Turn on the FaxForward feature to automatically forward incoming faxes to either an online service or an inbox as email attachments.

- This feature is available only for monochrome faxes.
- If you turn on FaxForward, you cannot use the following features:
  - [Fax Forward]
  - [Fax Storage]
  - [PC Fax Receive]
- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Press < or ▶ to display [Apps].

Press [Apps].

- If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read it, and then press [OK].
  - Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].
- 2. Press ▲ or V to display [FaxForward to Cloud/E-mail].

**Press** [FaxForward to Cloud/E-mail].

If information regarding [FaxForward to Cloud/E-mail] appears, read it, and then press [OK].

- 3. Press [On].
- 4. Press [Forward to Cloud] or [Forward to E-mail].
  - If you selected [Forward to Cloud], choose the online service you want to receive the faxes, and then specify your account name.
  - If you selected [Forward to E-mail], select the email address you want to receive the faxes as email attachments.
- 5. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete this operation.

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Swipe left or right or press < or ► to display [Apps].

Press [Apps].

- If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read it, and then press [OK].
- Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].
- 2. Press [FaxForward to Cloud/E-mail].

<sup>•</sup> If information regarding [FaxForward to Cloud/E-mail] appears, read it, and then press [OK].

- 3. Press [On].
- 4. Press [Forward to Cloud] or [Forward to E-mail].

- If you selected [Forward to Cloud], choose the online service you want to receive the faxes, and then specify your account name.
- If you selected [Forward to E-mail], select the email address you want to receive the faxes as email attachments.
- 5. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete this operation.

### Related Information

- FaxForward to Cloud or E-mail
- Memory Receive Options

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother Web Connect > FaxForward to Cloud or E-mail > Turn Off FaxForward to Cloud or E-mail

### Turn Off FaxForward to Cloud or E-mail

Turn off FaxForward when you want to stop incoming faxes from automatically going to either an online service or an inbox as email attachments.

If there are received faxes still in your machine's memory, you cannot turn off FaxForward.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Press < or ► to display [Apps].

Press [Apps].

- If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read it, and then press [OK].
- Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].
- 2. Press ▲ or V to display [FaxForward to Cloud/E-mail].

Press [FaxForward to Cloud/E-mail].

<sup>•</sup> If information regarding [FaxForward to Cloud/E-mail] appears, read it, and then press [OK].

- 3. Press [Off].
- 4. Press [OK].

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Swipe left or right or press < or ► to display [Apps].

Press [Apps].

- If information regarding the Internet connection appears on the machine's LCD, read it, and then press [OK].
- Occasionally, updates or announcements about Brother Web Connect's features will appear on the LCD. Read the information, and then press [OK].
- 2. Press [FaxForward to Cloud/E-mail].

If information regarding [FaxForward to Cloud/E-mail] appears, read it, and then press [OK].

- 3. Press [Off].
- 4. Press [OK].

Ø

Related Information

· FaxForward to Cloud or E-mail

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup>

- Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> Overview
- Before Using Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup>
- Print from Google Chrome<sup>™</sup> or Chrome OS<sup>™</sup>
- Print from Google Drive<sup>™</sup> for Mobile
- Print from Gmail<sup>™</sup> Webmail Service for Mobile

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> > Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> Overview

# Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> Overview

Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> is a Google service that allows you to print to a printer registered to your Google account using a network-compatible device (such as a mobile phone or computer) without installing the printer driver on the device.

Printing from Android<sup>™</sup> applications requires installing the Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> application from the Google Play<sup>™</sup> Store app.



# Related Information

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> > Before Using Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup>

# Before Using Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup>

- Network Settings for Using Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup>
- Register Your Machine with Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> Using Google Chrome<sup>™</sup>
- Register Your Machine with Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> Using Web Based Management

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> > Before Using Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> > Network Settings for Using Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup>

# Network Settings for Using Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup>

In order to use Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup>, your Brother machine must be connected to a network that has access to the Internet, either through a wired or wireless connection. To connect and configure your machine correctly, see the *Quick Setup Guide* or related topics in this guide.

### Related Information

Before Using Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup>

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> > Before Using Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> > Register Your Machine with Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> Using Google Chrome<sup>™</sup>

# Register Your Machine with Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> Using Google Chrome<sup>™</sup>

Make sure you have already created a Google Account. If you do not have an account, use a computer or mobile device to access the Google website (<u>https://accounts.google.com/signup</u>) and create an account. Make sure your Brother machine is idle before starting the registration process.

The steps in this section are examples for Windows users. Screens on your computer may vary depending on your operating system and environment.

1. Open Google Chrome<sup>™</sup> on your computer.

Ø

Ø

- 2. Click the Google Chrome<sup>™</sup> menu icon, and then **Settings > Show advanced settings...**.
- 3. In the Google Cloud Print section, click Manage.

You must sign in to your Google Account to see available devices.

- 4. Follow the on-screen instructions to register your machine.
- 5. When a confirmation message appears on your machine, press the OK button.

If the confirmation message does not appear on your machine's LCD, repeat these steps.

6. When your Brother machine is successfully registered, it will appear in the My devices field.

### Related Information

Before Using Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup>

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> > Before Using Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> > Register Your Machine with Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> Using Web Based Management

# Register Your Machine with Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> Using Web Based Management

Make sure you have already created a Google Account. If you do not have an account, use a computer or mobile device to access the Google website (<u>https://accounts.google.com/signup</u>) and create an account.

Make sure your Brother machine is idle before starting the registration process.

Before you begin to register your machine, confirm that the correct date and time are set on the machine's control panel. See *Related Information*.

- 1. Confirm that your Brother machine is connected to the same network as your computer or mobile device.
- 2. Start your web browser.
- 3. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

- You can see your machine's IP address in the Network menu on the control panel of your machine.
- If you have set a login password for Web Based Management, type your password in the Login box, then click ->.

General Address Book Fax Pr	int Scan Administrator Network	S Broth	her tions Center
			Bottom ▼
Status  Auto Refresh Interval	Status		
Maintenance Information Find Device	Device Status	Ready	
Contact & Location Sleep Time Auto Power Off Volume Panel	Automatic Refresh Ink Level	● Off ○ On M C Y BK	
	Web Language	Auto V	
	Device Location	Contact :	

- 4. Click the Network tab.
- 5. Click the Protocol menu in the left navigation bar.
- 6. Make sure that Google Cloud Print is selected, and then click Advanced Settings.

☑ Web Based Management (Web Server)		HTTP Server Settings
	Advanced Settings	
✓ Remote Setup		
✓ LPD (PC Fax Send)	Advanced Settings	
Raw Port		
<b>✓</b> IPP		HTTP Server Settings
✓ AirPrint	Advanced Settings	HTTP Server Settings
✓ Mopria		
Web Services	Advanced Settings	HTTP Server Settings
Mobile printing for Windows		
Google Cloud Print	Advanced Settings	
	Advanced Settings	

- 7. Make sure that Status is set to Enabled. Click Register.
- 8. When a confirmation message appears on your machine's LCD, press [OK].

If the confirmation message does not appear on your machine's LCD, repeat these steps.

- 9. Click Google.
- 10. The sign-in screen for Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> appears. Sign in with your Google Account and follow the onscreen instructions to register your machine.
- 11. When you have finished registering your machine, return to the Web Based Management screen and make sure that **Registration Status** is set to **Registered**.

Submit OK		
Status	Enabled	
Registration Status	Registered	
	□ Unregister this device	
Google Account		
E-mail	xxxxxxx@gmail.com	
Device Name	Brother XXX-XXXX	
Device Name	Brother XXX-XXXX	

If your machine supports the Secure Function Lock feature, printing via Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> is possible even if PC print for each user is restricted. To restrict printing via Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup>, disable Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> using Web Based Management or set the Secure Function Lock feature to Public Mode, and then restrict print for public users. See *Related Information*.

# **Related Information**

- Before Using Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup>
- Set the Date & Time
- Configure Secure Function Lock 3.0 Using Web Based Management

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> > Print from Google Chrome<sup>™</sup> or Chrome OS<sup>™</sup>

# Print from Google Chrome<sup>™</sup> or Chrome OS<sup>™</sup>

- 1. Make sure your Brother machine is turned on.
- 2. Open the web page that you want to print.
- 3. Click the Google Chrome<sup>™</sup> menu icon.
- 4. Click Print.
- 5. Select your machine from the printer list.
- 6. Change print options, if needed.
- 7. Click Print.

### Related Information

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> > Print from Google Drive<sup>™</sup> for Mobile

# Print from Google Drive<sup>™</sup> for Mobile

- 1. Make sure your Brother machine is turned on.
- 2. Access Google Drive<sup>™</sup> from your Android<sup>™</sup> or Apple device's web browser.
- 3. Open the document that you want to print.
- 4. Tap the menu icon.
- 5. Tap Print.
- 6. Select your machine from the printer list.
- 7. Change print options, if needed.
- 8. Tap Print.

### Related Information

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> > Print from Gmail<sup>™</sup> Webmail Service for Mobile

# Print from Gmail<sup>™</sup> Webmail Service for Mobile

- 1. Make sure your Brother machine is turned on.
- 2. Access the Gmail<sup>™</sup> webmail service from your Android<sup>™</sup> or Apple device's web browser.
- 3. Open the email that you want to print.
- 4. Tap the menu icon.

If Print appears beside the attachment name, you can also print the attachment. Tap Print, and then follow the instructions on your mobile device.

- 5. Tap Print.
- 6. Select your machine from the printer list.
- 7. Change print options, if needed.
- 8. Tap Print.



▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > AirPrint

# AirPrint

- AirPrint Overview
- Before Using AirPrint
- Print Using AirPrint
- Scan Using AirPrint
- Send a Fax Using AirPrint (For MFC Models)

# **AirPrint Overview**

AirPrint is a printing solution for Apple operating systems that allows you to wirelessly print photos, email, web pages and documents from your iPad, iPhone, iPod touch and Mac computer without the need to install a driver.

AirPrint also lets you send faxes directly from your Mac computer without printing them and lets you scan documents to your Mac computer.

For more information, visit Apple's website.

Use of the Works with Apple badge means that an accessory has been designed to work specifically with the technology identified in the badge and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.



• AirPrint



▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > AirPrint > Before Using AirPrint

# **Before Using AirPrint**

- Network Settings for Using AirPrint
- Disable and Enable AirPrint Using Web Based Management (Web Browser)

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > AirPrint > Before Using AirPrint > Network Settings for Using AirPrint

# **Network Settings for Using AirPrint**

In order to use AirPrint, your mobile device must connect to the wireless network to which your Brother machine is connected. AirPrint supports wireless connections that use infrastructure mode or Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup>.

To configure your mobile device for a wireless network, refer to your mobile device's user's guide. A link to your mobile device's user's guide on Apple's website can be found by tapping in Safari.

To configure your Brother machine for a wireless network, see the *Quick Setup Guide* or related topics in this guide. If your Brother machine supports a wired network, you can use a network cable to connect to the wireless access point/router.

If your Brother machine supports Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup> and you want to configure your Brother machine for a Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup> network, see related topics in this Online Guide.

### Related Information

- Before Using AirPrint
- Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup<sup>™</sup> (WPS)
- Use Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup>

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > AirPrint > Before Using AirPrint > Disable and Enable AirPrint Using Web Based Management (Web Browser)

# Disable and Enable AirPrint Using Web Based Management (Web Browser)

Confirm that your Brother machine is connected to the same network as your computer.

- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click



- 4. Click the **Network** tab.
- 5. Click the Protocol menu in the left navigation bar.
- 6. To disable AirPrint, clear the AirPrint check box. To enable AirPrint, select the AirPrint check box.

By default, AirPrint is enabled.

7. Click Submit.

Ø

8. Restart your machine to activate the configuration.

#### Related Information

- Before Using AirPrint
- Print the Network Configuration Report

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > AirPrint > Print Using AirPrint

- Print from iPad, iPhone, or iPod Touch
- Before Printing Using AirPrint (OS X)
- Print Using AirPrint (OS X)

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > AirPrint > Print Using AirPrint > Print from iPad, iPhone, or iPod Touch

# Print from iPad, iPhone, or iPod Touch

The procedure used to print may vary by application. Safari is used in the example below.

- 1. Make sure your Brother machine is turned on.
- 2. Use Safari to open the page that you want to print.



- 4. Tap Print.
- 5. Make sure your Brother machine is selected.
- If a different machine (or no printer) is selected, tap Printer.
  A list of available machines appears.
- 7. Tap your machine's name in the list.
- 8. Select the desired options, such as the number of pages to print and 2-sided printing (if supported by your machine).
- 9. Tap Print.

### Related Information

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > AirPrint > Print Using AirPrint > Before Printing Using AirPrint (OS X)

# Before Printing Using AirPrint (OS X)

Before printing using OS X, add your Brother machine to the printer list on your Mac computer.

- 1. Select System Preferences from the Apple Menu.
- 2. Click Print & Scan or Printers & Scanners.
- 3. Click the + icon below the Printers pane on the left.
- 4. Click Add Printer or Scanner.... The Add screen appears.
- 5. Select your Brother machine, and then select AirPrint from the Use pop-up menu.
- 6. Click Add.

### Related Information

#### ▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > AirPrint > Print Using AirPrint > Print Using AirPrint (OS X)

# Print Using AirPrint (OS X)

The procedure used to print may vary by application. Safari is used in the example below. Before printing, make sure your Brother machine is in the printer list on your Mac computer.

- 1. Make sure your Brother machine is turned on.
- 2. On your Mac computer, use Safari to open the page that you want to print.
- 3. Click the File menu, and then select Print.
- 4. Make sure your Brother machine is selected. If a different machine (or no printer) is selected, click the **Printer** pop-up menu, and then select your Brother machine.
- 5. Select the desired options, such as the number of pages to print and 2-sided printing (if supported by your machine).
- 6. Click Print.



▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > AirPrint > Scan Using AirPrint

# **Scan Using AirPrint**

- Before Scanning Using AirPrint (OS X)
- Scan Using AirPrint (OS X)

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > AirPrint > Scan Using AirPrint > Before Scanning Using AirPrint (OS X)

# Before Scanning Using AirPrint (OS X)

- Before scanning using OS X, add your Brother machine to the scanner list on your Mac computer.
- Monochrome scan is not currently supported by OS X v10.9.
- 1. Select System Preferences from the Apple Menu.
- 2. Click Printers & Scanners.
- 3. Click the + icon below the Scanners pane on the left.
- 4. Click Add Printer or Scanner.... The Add screen appears.
- 5. Select your Brother machine, and then select AirPrint from the Use pop-up menu.
- 6. Click Add.



Scan Using AirPrint

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > AirPrint > Scan Using AirPrint > Scan Using AirPrint (OS X)

# Scan Using AirPrint (OS X)

Before scanning, make sure your Brother machine is in the scanner list on your Mac computer.

- 1. Load your document.
- 2. Select System Preferences from the Apple Menu.
- 3. Click Printers & Scanners.
- 4. Select your Brother machine from the scanner list.
- 5. Click the **Scan** tab, and then click the **Open Scanner...** button.

The Scanner screen appears.

- 6. If you place the document in the ADF, select **Use Document Feeder** check box, and then select the size of your document from the scan size setting pop-up menu.
- 7. Select the destination folder or destination application from the destination setting pop-up menu.
- 8. Click Show Details to change the scanning settings if needed.

You can crop the image manually by dragging the mouse pointer over the portion you want to scan when scanning from the scanner glass.

9. Click Scan.

### Related Information

Scan Using AirPrint

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > AirPrint > Send a Fax Using AirPrint (For MFC Models)

# Send a Fax Using AirPrint (For MFC Models)

- Before Sending a Fax Using AirPrint (OS X)
- Send a Fax Using AirPrint (OS X)

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > AirPrint > Send a Fax Using AirPrint (For MFC Models) > Before Sending a Fax Using AirPrint (OS X)

# Before Sending a Fax Using AirPrint (OS X)

Before sending a fax, add your Brother machine to the printer list on your Mac computer. Make sure your Brother machine is connected to the telephone line and works correctly.

- 1. Select **System Preferences** from the Apple Menu.
- 2. Click Print & Scan or Printers & Scanners.
- 3. Click the + icon below the Printers pane on the left.
- 4. Click Add Printer or Scanner.... The Add screen appears.
- 5. Select your Brother machine, and then select AirPrint from the Use pop-up menu.
- 6. Click Add.

### **Related Information**

• Send a Fax Using AirPrint (For MFC Models)

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > AirPrint > Send a Fax Using AirPrint (For MFC Models) > Send a Fax Using AirPrint (OS X)

# Send a Fax Using AirPrint (OS X)

Make sure your Brother machine is in the printer list on your Mac computer. Apple TextEdit is used in the example below.

- AirPrint supports only monochrome fax documents.
- Your machine supports the Secure Function Lock feature. Sending faxes via AirPrint is not available if Fax Tx for each user is restricted.
- 1. Make sure your Brother machine is turned on.
- 2. On your Mac computer, open the file that you want to send as a fax.
- 3. Click the File menu, and then select Print.
- 4. Click the **Printer** pop-up menu, and then select **Brother MFC-XXXX Fax** (where XXXX is your model name).
- 5. Type the fax recipient information.
- 6. Click Fax.

Ø

### Related Information

• Send a Fax Using AirPrint (For MFC Models)

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Mobile Printing for Windows

# **Mobile Printing for Windows**

Mobile printing for Windows is a function to print wirelessly from your Windows mobile device. You can connect to the same network that your Brother machine is connected to and print without installing the printer driver on the device. Many Windows apps support this function.



- 1. Windows mobile device (Windows 10 Mobile or later)
- 2. Wi-Fi<sup>®</sup> connection
- 3. Your Brother machine



### **Related Information**

Mobile/Web Connect
### ▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Mopria<sup>®</sup> Print Service

# Mopria<sup>®</sup> Print Service

Mopria<sup>®</sup> Print Service is a print feature on Android<sup>™</sup> mobile devices (Android<sup>™</sup> version 4.4 or later) developed by the Mopria<sup>®</sup> Alliance. With this service, you can connect to the same network as your machine and print without additional setup. Many native Android<sup>™</sup> apps, including Google Chrome<sup>™</sup>, Gmail<sup>™</sup>, and Gallery, support printing.



- 1. Android<sup>™</sup> 4.4 or later
- 2. Wi-Fi<sup>®</sup> Connection
- 3. Your Brother machine

You must download the Mopria<sup>®</sup> Print Service from the Google Play<sup>™</sup> Store and install it on your Android<sup>™</sup> device. Before using this service, you must turn it on.



### **Related Information**

Mobile/Web Connect

▲ Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Brother iPrint&Scan

### **Brother iPrint&Scan**

Use Brother iPrint&Scan to print and scan from various mobile devices.

For Android<sup>™</sup> Devices

Brother iPrint&Scan allows you to use features of your Brother machine directly from your Android<sup>™</sup> device, without using a computer.

Download and install Brother iPrint&Scan from the Google Play<sup>™</sup> Store app.

For Apple Devices

Brother iPrint&Scan allows you to use features of your Brother machine directly from your Apple device.

Download and install Brother iPrint&Scan from the App Store.

For Windows Devices

Brother iPrint&Scan allows you to use features of your Brother machine directly from your Windows device, without using a computer.

Download and install Brother iPrint&Scan from the Microsoft Store.

For more detailed information, see the *Mobile Print/Scan Guide for Brother iPrint&Scan*. Go to your model's **Manuals** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u>.

### Related Information

Mobile/Web Connect

Home > Mobile/Web Connect > Near-Field Communication (NFC)

## **Near-Field Communication (NFC)**

#### Related Models: MFC-J5930DW

Near-Field Communication (NFC) allows for simple transactions, data exchange and wireless connections between two devices that are close to each other.

If your Android<sup>™</sup> device is NFC-enabled, you can print data (photos, PDF files, text files, web pages and email messages) from the device or scan photos and documents to the device by touching it to the NFC symbol on the machine's control panel.



You must download and install Brother iPrint&Scan to your Android<sup>™</sup> device to use this feature. For more detailed information, see the *Mobile Print/Scan Guide for Brother iPrint&Scan*. Go to your model's **Manuals** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u>.

- Mobile/Web Connect
- Control Panel Overview

#### Home > ControlCenter

## ControlCenter

Use Brother's ControlCenter software utility to quickly access your frequently-used applications. Using ControlCenter gives you direct access to specific applications.

- ControlCenter4 (Windows)
- ControlCenter2 (Mac)

Home > ControlCenter > ControlCenter4 (Windows)

## **ControlCenter4 (Windows)**

- Change the Operation Mode in ControlCenter4 (Windows)
- Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Set Up the Brother Machine Using ControlCenter4 (Windows)
- Create a Custom Tab Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Set Up the Brother Machine from Your Computer (Windows)
- Set Up Your Machine's Address Book Using ControlCenter4 (Windows)

▲ Home > ControlCenter > ControlCenter4 (Windows) > Change the Operation Mode in ControlCenter4 (Windows)

## Change the Operation Mode in ControlCenter4 (Windows)

ControlCenter4 has two operation modes: **Home Mode** and **Advanced Mode**. You can change modes at any time.

#### **Home Mode** Model MFC-XXXX -? Control Center 4 Configuration Help $\Box \times$ \_\_\_\_ -Scan PC-FAX Device Settings Support ň Document Type K 7 E 3 Ċ Ð Q - /0 💽 🔘 Photo Text and Graph Monochrome Text Save Custom <u>≞∎</u> 300 x 300 dpi 24bit Colour Print Custom Settings • Open with an Scan Size Application A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 i 💌 $\langle$ Send E-mail Scan T Clear OCR м с у вк Sleep brother

#### Advanced Mode



Home Mode

ControlCenter4 Home Mode lets you access your machine's main features easily.

Advanced Mode

ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode gives you more control over the details of your machine's features and allows you to customise one-button scan actions.

To change operation mode:

- 1. Click the **CCA** (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then select **Open**.
- 2. Click the Configuration button, and then select Mode Select.
- 3. The mode selection dialog box appears. Select either the Home Mode or Advanced Mode option.



4. Click OK.



- ControlCenter4 (Windows)
- Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

▲ Home > ControlCenter > ControlCenter4 (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

## Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

Use ControlCenter4 Home Mode to access your machine's main features.

- Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Scan Settings for ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
- Change the Operation Mode in ControlCenter4 (Windows)

Home > ControlCenter > ControlCenter4 (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

## Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode gives you more control over the details of your machine's features and allows you to customise one-button scan actions.

- Scan Photos and Graphics Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Scan Both Sides of an ID Card Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Scan to Email Attachment Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Scan to an Editable Text File (OCR) Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Scan to an Office File Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Scan Settings for ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)
- Change the Operation Mode in ControlCenter4 (Windows)

▲ Home > ControlCenter > ControlCenter4 (Windows) > Set Up the Brother Machine Using ControlCenter4 (Windows)

## Set Up the Brother Machine Using ControlCenter4 (Windows)

If Secure Function Lock is set to On, you cannot use Remote Setup.

- 1. Click the **CCA** (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
- 2. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
- 3. Click the Remote Setup button.
- 4. Configure the settings as needed.

2	Remote Setup Program - MFC-XX	(XX				
[	⊡. MFC-XXXX	General Setup				
	General Setup ⊟- Fax	Check Paper		On	© Off	
	···· Address Book	Volume				
	···· Report Setting ···· Remote Fax Opt		Ring	Med •		
	Media ⊟ Network		Веер			
	···· TCP/IP(Wired)		Speaker			
	···· Ethernet ····· TCP/IP(WLAN)		эреаке	Med 🔻		
	Initial Setup	LCD Settings				
			Backlight	Light 🔻		
			Dim Timer	30 Secs -		
		Sleep Mode		5 Mins 🔹		
		Auto Power Off		1h •		
	Export Import	Print		ОК	Cancel	Apply

#### Export

Click to save the current configuration settings to a file.

Click Export to save your address book or all settings for your machine.

#### Import

Click to import a file and read its settings.

#### Print

Click to print the selected items on the machine. You cannot print the data until it is uploaded to the machine. Click **Apply** to upload the new data to the machine, and then click **Print**.

#### οκ

Click to start uploading data to the machine, and then exit the Remote Setup Program. If an error message appears, confirm that your data is correct, and then click **OK**.

#### Cancel

Click to exit the Remote Setup Program without uploading data to the machine.

#### Apply

Click to upload data to the machine without exiting the Remote Setup Program.

- 5. Click **OK**.
- If your computer is protected by a firewall and is unable to use Remote Setup, you may need to configure the firewall settings to allow communication through port numbers 137 and 161.
- If you are using Windows Firewall and you installed the Brother software and drivers from the CD-ROM, the
  necessary firewall settings have already been set.

- ControlCenter4 (Windows)
- Remote Setup (Windows)

Home > ControlCenter > ControlCenter4 (Windows) > Create a Custom Tab Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

## Create a Custom Tab Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

You can create up to three customised tabs, each including up to five customised buttons, with your preferred settings.

Select **Advanced Mode** as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

- 1. Click the **CCA** (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
- Click the Configuration button, and then select Create custom tab. A custom tab is created.
- 3. To change the name of a custom tab, right-click the custom tab, and then select Rename custom tab.
- 4. Click the **Configuration** button, select **Create custom button**, and then select the button you want to create. The settings dialog box appears.
- 5. Type the button name, and then change the settings, if needed. Click **OK**.

The setting options vary depending on the button you select.

Image - ControlCenter4	
Button Name	
Image	
File Type	File Size Priority
JPEG (*.jpg)	<ul> <li>Small Large</li> <li>(Speed) (Quality)</li> </ul>
Target Application	
Windows Photo Viewer	▼
File Name	
CCI_000001.jpg	Change
Destination Folder	
C:\Users\User\Pictures\ControlCenter4\Scan	
PreScan	
Resolution	Brightness
300 x 300 dpi	▼
Scan Type	0
24bit Colour	<ul> <li>Contrast</li> </ul>
Document Size	
A4 210 x 297 mm (8.3 x 11.7 in)	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	Continuous Scanning
2-sided Scanning	
Long-edge binding	
Short-edge binding	ID Card Scan
Show settings dialog before scan.	
Default Advanced Settings	OK Cancel Help

You can change or remove the created tab, button, or settings. Click the **Configuration** button, and then follow the menu.

### Related Information

ControlCenter4 (Windows)

▲ Home > ControlCenter > ControlCenter2 (Mac)

## ControlCenter2 (Mac)

- Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Set Up the Brother Machine Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Turn the AutoLoad Feature On (Mac)
- Set Up Your Machine's Address Book Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

▲ Home > ControlCenter > ControlCenter2 (Mac) > Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

## Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

Use Brother's ControlCenter software to scan photos and save them as JPEGs, PDFs, or other file formats.

- Scan Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Scan Both Sides of an ID Card Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Scan to Email Attachment Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Scan to an Editable Text File (OCR) Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Scan to an Office File Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Scan Settings for ControlCenter2 (Mac)

▲ Home > ControlCenter > ControlCenter2 (Mac) > Set Up the Brother Machine Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

## Set Up the Brother Machine Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

If Secure Function Lock is set to On, you cannot use Remote Setup.

 In the Finder menu bar, click Go > Applications > Brother, and then double-click the (ControlCenter) icon.

The ControlCenter2 screen appears.

- 2. Click the DEVICE SETTINGS tab.
- 3. Click the Remote Setup button.

Ø

The Remote Setup Program screen appears.

000	Remote Setup Prog	gram
MFC-XXXX	General Setup	
General Setup Fax	Check Paper	On Off
<ul> <li>Fax         <ul> <li>Address Book</li> <li>Report Setting</li> <li>Remote Fax Opt</li> <li>Media</li> </ul> </li> <li>Network         <ul> <li>TCP/IP(Wired)</li> <li>Ethernet</li> <li>TCP/IP(WLAN)</li> <li>Initial Setup</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		ght Light ᅌ
Export Import	Print	OK Cancel Apply

4. Configure the settings as needed.

#### Export

Click to save the current configuration settings to a file.

Click Export to save your address book or all settings for your machine.

#### Import

Click to import a file and read its settings.

#### Print

Click to print the selected items on the machine. You cannot print the data until it is uploaded to the machine. Click **Apply** to upload the new data to the machine, and then click **Print**.

#### οκ

Click to start uploading data to the machine, and then exit the Remote Setup Program. If an error message appears, enter the correct data again, and then click **OK**.

#### Cancel

Click to exit the Remote Setup Program without uploading data to the machine.

#### Apply

Click to upload data to the machine without exiting the Remote Setup Program.

5. When finished, click **OK**.

- ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Remote Setup (Mac)

▲ Home > ControlCenter > ControlCenter2 (Mac) > Turn the AutoLoad Feature On (Mac)

## Turn the AutoLoad Feature On (Mac)

Turn AutoLoad on to launch ControlCenter2 automatically each time you start your Mac.

 In the Finder menu bar, click Go > Applications > Brother, and then double-click the (ControlCenter) icon.

The ControlCenter2 screen appears.

- 2. Click the Configuration button, and then select Preferences.
- 3. Select the Start ControlCenter on computer startup check box.
- 4. Click OK.

### Related Information

ControlCenter2 (Mac)



#### Home > Troubleshooting

## Troubleshooting

If you think there is a problem with your machine, first check each of the items below, then try to identify the problem, and follow our troubleshooting tips.

You can correct most problems yourself. If you need additional help, the Brother Solutions Center offers the latest FAQs and troubleshooting tips.

Visit us at <u>support.brother.com</u>.

Click FAQs & Troubleshooting and search for your model name.

First, check the following:

- The machine's power cord is connected correctly and the machine's power is on.
- All of the machine's orange protective parts have been removed.
- The ink cartridges are installed correctly.
- The Scanner Cover and the Jam Clear Cover are fully closed.
- Paper is inserted correctly in the paper tray.
- The interface cables are securely connected to the machine and the computer, or the wireless connection is set up on both the machine and your computer.
- (For network models) The access point (for wireless), router, or hub is turned on and its link button is blinking.
- The machine's LCD is displaying messages.

If you did not solve the problem with the checks, identify the problem and then see Related Information.

- Error and Maintenance Messages
- Document Jams
- Printer Jam or Paper Jam
- · If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine
- Check the Machine Information
- Reset Your Brother Machine
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems
- Telephone and Fax problems
- Other Problems
- Network Problems
- Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> Problems
- AirPrint Problems

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > Error and Maintenance Messages

### **Error and Maintenance Messages**

As with any sophisticated office product, errors may occur and supply items may have to be replaced. If this happens, your machine identifies the error or required routine maintenance and shows the appropriate message. The most common error and maintenance messages are shown in the table.

You can correct most errors and perform routine maintenance yourself. If you need more tips, go to your model's **FAQs & Troubleshooting** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u>.

Related Information references are at the bottom of this page.

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

Ø

Error Message	Cause	Action
B&W Print Only	One or more of the colour ink cartridges	Replace the ink cartridges.
Replace ink.	have reached the end of their lives.	See Related Information: Replace the Ink
	You can use the machine in monochrome mode for approximately four weeks depending on the number of pages you print. While this message appears on the touchscreen, each operation works in the	<i>Cartridges.</i> Although the Cause column lists options for using the machine after this error appears, you may not be able to use the machine until you replace the ink cartridge(s) under the following
	following way: • Printing	<ul><li>conditions:</li><li>If you unplug the machine or remove</li></ul>
	If the media type is set to <b>Plain Paper</b> in the <b>Basic</b> tab, and <b>Greyscale</b> is chosen in the <b>Advanced</b> tab of the printer driver, you can use the machine as a monochrome printer.	<ul> <li>the ink cartridge.</li> <li>If you select the Slow Drying Paper option on the machine or in the printer driver.</li> </ul>
	Copying	
	If the paper type is set to Plain Paper, you can make copies in monochrome.	
	Faxing	
	If the paper type is set to Plain Paper, the machine will receive and print the faxes in monochrome.	
Cannot Detect	You installed a new ink cartridge too quickly and the machine did not detect it.	Take out the new ink cartridge and reinstall it slowly and firmly until it locks
	An ink cartridge is not installed correctly.	into place. See Related Information: Replace the Ink Cartridges.
	A used ink cartridge was reinstalled.	Remove the used ink cartridge and install a new one.
	If you are using non Brother Original ink, the machine may not detect the ink cartridge.	Replace the cartridge with a Brother Original ink cartridge. If the error message remains, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.
	The ink cartridge must be replaced.	Replace the cartridge with a Brother Original ink cartridge.
	The new ink cartridge has an air bubble.	Slowly turn the ink cartridge so that the ink supply port is pointing downwards, and then reinstall the cartridge.
	The wrong Brother model ink cartridge was installed.	Check the model numbers of the ink cartridges and install the correct ink cartridges.

Error Message	Cause	Action
Cannot Detect Ink Volume	If you are using non Brother Original ink, the machine may not detect the ink volume.	Replace the cartridge with a Brother Original ink cartridge. If the error message remains, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.
Comm.Error	Poor telephone line quality caused a communication error.	Send the fax again or connect the machine to another telephone line. If the problem continues, contact the telephone company and ask them to check your telephone line.
Connection Error	Other devices are trying to connect to the Wi-Fi Direct network at the same time.	Make sure there are no other devices trying to connect to the Wi-Fi Direct network, and then try to configure the Wi- Fi Direct settings again.
Connection Failed	The Brother machine and your mobile device cannot communicate during the Wi-Fi Direct network configuration.	<ul> <li>Move the mobile device closer to your Brother machine.</li> <li>Move your Brother machine and the mobile device to an obstruction-free area.</li> <li>If you are using the PIN Method of WPS, make sure you have entered the correct PIN.</li> </ul>
Cover is Open.	The scanner cover is not locked in the closed position.	Lift the scanner cover and then close it again. Make sure the telephone line cord and interface cable (if used) have been guided correctly through the cable channel and out the back of the machine.
	The ink cartridge cover is not locked in the closed position.	
Data Remaining in Memory	Print data is left in the machine's memory.	Press X. The machine will cancel the job and clear it from the memory. Try to print again.
Disconnected	The other person or other person's fax machine stopped the call.	Try to send or receive again. If calls are stopped repeatedly and you are using a VoIP (Voice over IP) system, try changing the Compatibility to Basic (for VoIP). See Related Information: Telephone Line Interference/VoIP.
Document Jam/too Long	The document was not inserted or fed correctly, or the document scanned from the ADF was too long.	Remove the jammed document, and then press A. Set the document in the ADF correctly. See Related Information: Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF). See Related Information: Document Jams.
DR Mode in Use	The machine is in Distinctive Ring mode. You cannot change the Receive Mode from Manual to another mode.	Set Distinctive Ring to Off. See Related Information: Turn off Distinctive Ring.
FaxAbility On	The machine is in FaxAbility mode. You cannot change the Receive Mode from Manual to another mode.	Set FaxAbility to Off. See Related Information: Turn FaxAbility Off or On.

Error Message	Cause	Action
High Temperature	The room temperature is too high.	After cooling the room, allow the machine to cool down to room temperature. Try again when the machine has cooled down.
Hub is Unusable.	A hub or USB flash drive with hub has been connected to the USB direct interface.	Hubs, including a USB flash drive with a built-in hub, are not supported. Unplug the device from the USB direct interface.
Ink Absorber NearFull	The ink absorber box or flushing box is nearly full.	The ink absorber box or flushing box must be replaced soon. Contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.
Ink Absorber Pad Full	The ink absorber box or flushing box is full. These components are periodic maintenance items that may require replacement after a period of time to ensure optimum performance from your Brother machine. Because these components are periodic maintenance items, the replacement is not covered under the warranty. The need to replace these items and the time period before replacement is dependent on the number of purges and flushes required to clean the ink system. These boxes acquire amounts of ink during the different purging and flushing operations. The number of times a machine purges and flushes for cleaning varies depending on different situations. For example, frequently powering the machine on and off will cause numerous cleaning cycles since the machine automatically cleans upon power up. The use of non-Brother ink may cause frequent cleanings because non-Brother ink could cause poor print quality which is resolved by cleaning. The more cleaning the machine requires, the faster these boxes will fill up. <b>Repairs resulting from the use of non-</b> <b>Brother supplies may not be covered under the stated product warranty.</b>	<ul> <li>The ink absorber box or flushing box must be replaced. Contact Brother customer service or your local Brother Authorised Service Centre to have your machine serviced.</li> <li>Reasons for cleaning are: <ol> <li>The machine automatically cleans itself after you remove the power cord and plug it back in.</li> </ol> </li> <li>After a paper jam has been cleared, the machine automatically cleans itself before the next received page is printed.</li> <li>The machine automatically cleans itself after sitting idle for more than 30 days (infrequent use).</li> <li>The machine automatically cleans itself after ink cartridges of the same colour have been replaced 12 times.</li> </ul>
Ink Low	One or more of the ink cartridges are near the end of their lives. If the sending machine has the ability to convert it, the colour fax will be printed at your machine as a monochrome fax.	<ul> <li>Order a new ink cartridge. You can continue printing until the touchscreen displays Replace Ink.</li> <li>See Related Information: Replace the Ink Cartridges.</li> <li>You can still scan even if the ink is low or needs to be replaced.</li> </ul>
Install Ink	An ink cartridge is not installed correctly.	Remove the new ink cartridge and re- install it slowly and firmly until it locks into place. See Related Information: Replace the Ink Cartridges.
Jam Front/Rear Jam Front Jam Rear	The paper is jammed in the machine.	Remove the jammed paper. See Related Information: Printer Jam or Paper Jam.
Jam Manual Feed Slot		If there is a repeat paper jam, try another paper jam clear operation.

Error Message	Cause	Action
Jam Front/Manual Feed Slot		See Related Information: Remove Paper Scraps.
Jam Tray2 Repeat Jam XX	The paper guides are not set to the correct paper size.	Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct paper size.
	The machine's paper support is not set correctly.	Make sure the paper support is fully inserted into the machine.
		See Related Information: Paper is Jammed in the Front of the Machine.
	More than one sheet of paper was placed in the manual feed slot. - <b>OR</b> - Another sheet of paper was placed in the manual feed slot before the touchscreen prompted you to load another sheet of paper.	Do not put more than one sheet of paper in the manual feed slot at any one time. Wait until the touchscreen prompts you to load another sheet of paper before you feed the next sheet of paper in the manual feed slot. Remove the jammed paper.
		See Related Information: Printer Jam or Paper Jam.
	Paper dust has accumulated on the surface of the paper pick-up rollers.	Clean the paper pick-up rollers. See Related Information: Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers.
Low Temperature	The room temperature is too low.	After warming the room, allow the machine to warm up to room temperature. Try again when the machine has warmed up.
Media is Full.	The USB flash drive you are using already contains 999 files.	Your machine can only save to your USB flash drive if it contains fewer than 999 files. Delete unused files and try again.
	The USB flash drive you are using does not have enough free space to scan the document.	Delete unused files from your USB flash drive to make some free space, and then try again.
No Caller ID	There is no incoming call history. You did not receive calls or you have not subscribed to the Caller ID service from	To use the Caller ID feature, contact your telephone company.
	your telephone company.	See Related Information: Caller ID.
No Device	When configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, the Brother machine cannot find	<ul> <li>Make sure your machine and mobile device are in the Wi-Fi Direct mode.</li> </ul>
	your mobile device.	Move the mobile device closer to your Brother machine.
		<ul> <li>Move your Brother machine and the mobile device to an obstruction-free area.</li> </ul>
		• If you are manually configuring the Wi- Fi Direct network, make sure you have entered the correct password.
		<ul> <li>If your mobile device has a configuration page for how to obtain an IP address, make sure the IP address of your mobile device has been configured via DHCP.</li> </ul>
No File	The USB flash drive in the media drive does not contain a .JPG file.	Put the correct USB flash drive into the slot again.
No Paper Fed No Paper Fed [Tray #1]	The machine is out of paper or paper is not correctly loaded in the paper tray.	<ul><li>Do one of the following:</li><li>Refill the paper tray, and then follow the LCD instructions.</li></ul>

Error Message	Cause	Action
No Paper Fed [Tray #2]		Remove and reload the paper, and then follow the LCD instructions. See Related Information: Load Paper.
	The paper was not inserted in the centre position of the manual feed slot.	Remove the paper and reinsert it in the centre of the manual feed slot, and then follow the LCD instructions.
		See Related Information: Load Paper in the Manual Feed Slot.
	The Jam Clear Cover is not closed correctly.	Make sure the Jam Clear Cover is closed evenly at both ends.
		See Related Information: Printer Jam or Paper Jam.
	Paper dust has accumulated on the	Clean the paper pick-up rollers.
	surface of the paper pick-up rollers.	See Related Information: Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers.
No Response/Busy	The number you dialled does not answer or is busy.	Verify the number and try again.
Out of Fax Memory	The fax memory is full.	Do one of the following:
		Clear the data from the memory. To gain extra memory, you can turn off Memory Receive.
		See Related Information: Turn Off Memory Receive.
		• Print the faxes that are in the memory.
		See Related Information: Print a Fax Stored in the Machine's Memory.
Out of Memory	The machine's memory is full.	If a fax-sending or copy operation is in progress:
		• Press X or Quit or Close and wait
		until the other operations that are in progress finish, and then try again.
		• Press Send Now to send the pages scanned so far.
		• Press Partial Print to copy the pages scanned so far.
		Clear the data in the memory. To gain extra memory, you can turn Memory Receive off.
		See Related Information: Turn Off Memory Receive.
		• Print the faxes stored in the memory.
		See Related Information: Print a Fax Stored in the Machine's Memory.
Paper Size Mismatch Paper Size Mismatch	The paper size setting does not match the size of paper in the tray.	1. Check that the paper size you selected on the machine's display matches the size of the paper in the tray.
[Tray #1] Paper Size Mismatch	- <b>OR</b> - The paper orientation is not proper for the	See Related Information: Change the Paper Size and Paper Type.
[Tray #2]	paper size. - <b>OR</b> -	2. Make sure you loaded the paper in the
	You did not set the paper guides in the tray to the indicators for the paper size you are using.	proper orientation and set the paper guides at the indicators for your paper size.
		See Related Information: Load Paper.

Error Message	Cause	Action
		3. After you have checked the paper size and the paper orientation, follow the LCD instructions.
		If printing from your computer, make sure the paper size you selected in the printer driver matches the size of paper in the tray. See <i>Related Information: Print Settings</i>
		(Windows) or Print Options (Mac).
Paper Tray not detected	The paper tray is not completely inserted.	Slowly push the paper tray completely into the machine.
Paper Tray #1 not detected Paper Tray #2 not detected	Paper or a foreign object has prevented the paper tray from being inserted properly.	Pull the paper tray out of the machine, and remove the jammed paper or foreign object. If you cannot find or remove the jammed paper, see <i>Related Information</i> : <i>Printer Jam or Paper Jam</i> .
Repetitive No Paper Fed	Paper dust has accumulated on the surface of the paper pick-up rollers.	Clean the paper pick-up rollers. See Related Information: Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers.
Repetitive Paper Jams	A foreign object, such as a paper clip or a piece of ripped paper, is in the machine.	Remove any foreign objects and paper scraps in the machine. See Related Information: Remove Paper Scraps.
Replace Ink	One or more of the ink cartridges have reached the end of their lives. The machine will stop all print operations. While memory is available, monochrome faxes will be stored in the memory. If the sending machine has the ability to convert it, the colour fax will be stored in the memory as a monochrome fax.	<ul> <li>Replace the ink cartridges.</li> <li>See Related Information: Replace the Ink Cartridges.</li> <li>You can still scan even if the ink is low or needs to be replaced.</li> </ul>
The maximum number of devices are already connected using Wi-Fi Direct.	Two mobile devices are already connected to the Wi-Fi Direct network when the Brother machine is the Group Owner (G/O).	After the current connection between your Brother machine and another mobile device has shut down, try to configure the Wi-Fi Direct settings again. You can confirm the connection status by printing the Network Configuration Report. See Related Information: Print the Network Configuration Report.
Touchscreen Init. Failed	The touchscreen was pressed before the power on initialisation was completed.	Make sure nothing is touching or resting on the touchscreen, especially when plugging the machine in.
	Debris may be stuck between the lower part of the touchscreen and its frame.	Insert a piece of stiff paper between the lower part of the touchscreen and its frame and slide it back and forth to push out the debris.
Tray Settings	This message is displayed when the	To not display this confirmation message,
Tray #1 Settings Tray #2 Settings	setting to confirm the paper type and size is enabled.	change the setting to Off. See Related Information: Change the Check Paper Size Setting.
Unable to Clean XX Unable to Initialize XX Unable to Print XX	The machine has a mechanical problem. - <b>OR</b> - A foreign object, such as a paper clip or a piece of ripped paper, is in the machine.	Open the scanner cover and remove any foreign objects and paper scraps from inside the machine. If the error message continues, disconnect the machine from the power for several minutes, and then reconnect it.

Error Message	Cause	Action
		You can try additional paper jam clear operations.
		See Related Information: Remove Paper Scraps.
		(If you cannot print received faxes, transfer them to another fax machine or to your computer.)
		See Related Information: Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report.
Unable to Scan XX	The machine has a mechanical problem.	Disconnect the machine from the power for several minutes, and then reconnect it. (If you cannot print received faxes, transfer them to another fax machine or to your computer.)
		See Related Information: Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report.
Unusable Device	A broken device is connected to the USB	Unplug the device from the USB direct
Disconnect device	direct interface.	interface, then press 🕐 to turn the
<pre>from front connector &amp; turn machine off &amp; then on</pre>		machine off and then on again.
Unusable Device	A USB device or USB flash drive that is	Unplug the device from the USB direct
Please disconnect USB device.	not supported has been connected to the USB direct interface.	interface. Turn the machine off and then on again.
Wrong Ink Cartridge	The ink cartridge model number is not compatible with your machine.	Verify whether the cartridge model number will work with your machine.
Wrong Ink Colour	An ink cartridge has been installed in the wrong position.	Check which ink cartridges are not matched by colour to their ink cartridge positions and move them to their correct positions.
Wrong Tray Settings	The machine's Paper Size and Tray Use settings do not match the size of paper in the tray you are using.	Follow the instructions on the touchscreen and try to print again.
		Configure the paper size setting for the tray according to the LCD instructions.

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

Error Message	Cause	Action
Black and White Print Only	One or more of the colour ink cartridges have reached the end of their lives.	Replace the ink cartridges. See Related Information: Replace the Ink
Replace ink.	You can use the machine in monochrome mode for approximately four weeks depending on the number of pages you print. While this message appears on the touchscreen, each operation works in the following way:	<i>Cartridges.</i> Although the Cause column lists options for using the machine after this error appears, you may not be able to use the machine until you replace the ink cartridge(s) under the following conditions:
	<ul> <li>Printing         If the media type is set to Plain Paper             in the Basic tab, and Greyscale is             chosen in the Advanced tab of the             printer driver, you can use the machine             as a monochrome printer.         </li> <li>Copying</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>If you unplug the machine or remove the ink cartridge.</li> <li>If you select the Slow Drying Paper option on the machine or in the printer driver.</li> </ul>

Error Message	Cause	Action
	<ul> <li>If the paper type is set to Plain Paper you can make copies in monochrome.</li> <li>Faxing If the paper type is set to Plain Paper, the machine will receive and print the faxes in monochrome.</li> </ul>	
Cannot Detect	You installed a new ink cartridge too quickly and the machine did not detect it. An ink cartridge is not installed correctly.	Take out the new ink cartridge and reinstall it slowly and firmly until it locks into place. See <i>Related Information</i> : <i>Replace the Ink</i>
	A used ink cartridge was reinstalled.	<i>Cartridges.</i> Remove the used ink cartridge and install a new one.
	If you are using non Brother Original ink, the machine may not detect the ink cartridge.	Replace the cartridge with a Brother Original ink cartridge. If the error message remains, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.
	The ink cartridge must be replaced.	Replace the cartridge with a Brother Original ink cartridge.
	The new ink cartridge has an air bubble.	Slowly turn the ink cartridge so that the ink supply port is pointing downwards, and then reinstall the cartridge.
	The wrong Brother model ink cartridge was installed.	Check the model numbers of the ink cartridges and install the correct ink cartridges.
Cannot Detect Ink Volume	If you are using non Brother Original ink, the machine may not detect the ink volume.	Replace the cartridge with a Brother Original ink cartridge. If the error message remains, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.
Comm.Error	Poor telephone line quality caused a communication error.	Send the fax again or connect the machine to another telephone line. If the problem continues, contact the telephone company and ask them to check your telephone line.
Connection Error	Other devices are trying to connect to the Wi-Fi Direct network at the same time.	Make sure there are no other devices trying to connect to the Wi-Fi Direct network, and then try to configure the Wi- Fi Direct settings again.
Connection Failed	The Brother machine and your mobile device cannot communicate during the Wi-Fi Direct network configuration.	<ul> <li>Move the mobile device closer to your Brother machine.</li> <li>Move your Brother machine and the mobile device to an obstruction-free area.</li> <li>If you are using the PIN Method of WPS, make sure you have entered the correct PIN.</li> </ul>
Cover is Open.	The scanner cover is not locked in the closed position.	Lift the scanner cover and then close it again. Make sure the telephone line cord and interface cable (if used) have been guided correctly through the cable channel and out the back of the machine.
	The ink cartridge cover is not locked in the closed position.	

Error Message	Cause	Action
Data Remaining in Memory	Print data is left in the machine's memory.	Press X. The machine will cancel the job and clear it from the memory. Try to print again.
Disconnected	The other person or other person's fax machine stopped the call.	Try to send or receive again. If calls are stopped repeatedly and you are using a VoIP (Voice over IP) system, try changing the Compatibility to Basic (for VoIP). See Related Information: Telephone Line Interference/VoIP.
Document Jam/too Long	The document was not inserted or fed correctly, or the document scanned from the ADF was too long.	Remove the jammed document, and then press A. Set the document in the ADF correctly. See Related Information: Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF). See Related Information: Document Jams.
DR Mode in Use	The machine is in Distinctive Ring mode. You cannot change the Receive Mode from Manual to another mode.	Set Distinctive Ring to Off. See Related Information: Turn off Distinctive Ring.
FaxAbility On	The machine is in FaxAbility mode. You cannot change the Receive Mode from Manual to another mode.	Set FaxAbility to Off. See Related Information: Turn FaxAbility Off or On.
High Temperature	The room temperature is too high.	After cooling the room, allow the machine to cool down to room temperature. Try again when the machine has cooled down.
Hub is Unusable.	A hub or USB flash drive with hub has been connected to the USB direct interface.	Hubs, including a USB flash drive with a built-in hub, are not supported. Unplug the device from the USB direct interface.
Ink Absorber NearFull	The ink absorber box or flushing box is nearly full.	The ink absorber box or flushing box must be replaced soon. Contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.
Ink Absorber Pad Full	The ink absorber box or flushing box is full. These components are periodic maintenance items that may require replacement after a period of time to ensure optimum performance from your Brother machine. Because these components are periodic maintenance items, the replacement is not covered under the warranty. The need to replace these items and the time period before replacement is dependent on the number of purges and flushes required to clean the ink system. These boxes acquire amounts of ink during the different purging and flushing operations. The number of times a machine purges and flushes for cleaning varies depending on different situations. For example, frequently powering the machine on and off will cause numerous cleaning cycles since the machine automatically cleans upon power up. The use of non-Brother ink may cause	<ol> <li>The machine automatically cleans itself after sitting idle for more than 30 days (infrequent use).</li> <li>The machine automatically cleans itself after ink cartridges of the same</li> </ol>

Error Message	Cause	Action
	frequent cleanings because non-Brother ink could cause poor print quality which is resolved by cleaning. The more cleaning the machine requires, the faster these boxes will fill up. <b>Repairs resulting from the use of non- Brother supplies may not be covered under the stated product warranty.</b>	
Ink Low	One or more of the ink cartridges are near the end of their lives. If the sending machine has the ability to convert it, the colour fax will be printed at your machine as a monochrome fax.	<ul> <li>Order a new ink cartridge. You can continue printing until the touchscreen displays Replace Ink.</li> <li>See Related Information: Replace the Ink Cartridges.</li> <li>You can still scan even if the ink is low or needs to be replaced.</li> </ul>
Install Ink	An ink cartridge is not installed correctly.	Remove the new ink cartridge and re- install it slowly and firmly until it locks into place. See Related Information: Replace the Ink Cartridges.
Jam Front/Rear Jam Front Jam Rear Jam MP Tray Jam Front/MP Tray Jam Tray2 Repeat Jam XX	The paper is jammed in the machine.	Remove the jammed paper. See Related Information: Printer Jam or Paper Jam.
		If there is a repeat paper jam, try another paper jam clear operation. See <i>Related Information: Remove Paper</i> <i>Scraps.</i>
	The paper guides are not set to the correct paper size.	Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct paper size.
	The machine's paper support is not set correctly.	Make sure the paper support is fully inserted into the machine. See Related Information: Paper is Jammed in the Front of the Machine.
	Paper dust has accumulated on the surface of the paper pick-up rollers.	Clean the paper pick-up rollers. See Related Information: Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers.
Low Temperature	The room temperature is too low.	After warming the room, allow the machine to warm up to room temperature. Try again when the machine has warmed up.
Media is Full.	The USB flash drive you are using already contains 999 files.	Your machine can only save to your USB flash drive if it contains fewer than 999 files. Delete unused files and try again.
	The USB flash drive you are using does not have enough free space to scan the document.	Delete unused files from your USB flash drive to make some free space, and then try again.
No Caller ID	There is no incoming call history. You did not receive calls or you have not subscribed to the Caller ID service from your telephone company.	To use the Caller ID feature, contact your telephone company. See <i>Related Information</i> : <i>Caller ID</i> .
No Device	When configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, the Brother machine cannot find your mobile device.	<ul> <li>Make sure your machine and mobile device are in the Wi-Fi Direct mode.</li> <li>Move the mobile device closer to your Brother machine.</li> </ul>

Error Message	Cause	Action
		Move your Brother machine and the mobile device to an obstruction-free area.
		• If you are manually configuring the Wi- Fi Direct network, make sure you have entered the correct password.
		<ul> <li>If your mobile device has a configuration page for how to obtain an IP address, make sure the IP address of your mobile device has been configured via DHCP.</li> </ul>
No File	The USB flash drive in the media drive does not contain a .JPG file.	Put the correct USB flash drive into the slot again.
No Paper Fed	The machine is out of paper or paper is	Do one of the following:
No Paper Fed [Tray #1]	not correctly loaded in the paper tray.	Refill the paper tray, and then follow the LCD instructions.
No Paper Fed [MP Tray]		• Remove and reload the paper, and then follow the LCD instructions.
No Paper Fed [Tray		See Related Information: Load Paper.
#2]	The paper was not inserted in the centre position of the MP tray.	Remove the paper and reinsert it in the centre of the MP tray, and then follow the LCD instructions.
		See Related Information: Load Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray (MP Tray).
	The Jam Clear Cover is not closed correctly.	Make sure the Jam Clear Cover is closed evenly at both ends.
		See Related Information: Printer Jam or Paper Jam.
	Paper dust has accumulated on the	Clean the paper pick-up rollers.
	surface of the paper pick-up rollers.	See Related Information: Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers.
No Response/Busy	The number you dialled does not answer or is busy.	Verify the number and try again.
Out of Fax Memory	The fax memory is full.	Do one of the following:
		Clear the data from the memory. To gain extra memory, you can turn off Memory Receive.
		See Related Information: Turn Off Memory Receive.
		• Print the faxes that are in the memory.
		See Related Information: Print a Fax Stored in the Machine's Memory.
Out of Memory	The machine's memory is full.	If a fax-sending or copy operation is in progress:
		• Press 🗙 or Quit or Close and wait
		until the other operations that are in progress finish, and then try again.
		• Press Send Now to send the pages scanned so far.
		• Press Partial Print to copy the pages scanned so far.
		Clear the data in the memory. To gain extra memory, you can turn Memory Receive off.

Error Message	Cause	Action
		See Related Information: Turn Off Memory Receive.
		Print the faxes stored in the memory.
		See Related Information: Print a Fax Stored in the Machine's Memory.
Paper Low Tray #1 Paper Low Tray #2	The paper tray is nearly empty.	Refill the paper in the paper tray indicated on the LCD.
Paper Size Mismatch Paper Size Mismatch [Tray #1]	The paper size setting does not match the size of paper in the tray. - <b>OR</b> -	1. Check that the paper size you selected on the machine's display matches the size of the paper in the tray.
Paper Size Mismatch [MP Tray]	The paper orientation is not proper for the paper size.	See Related Information: Change the Paper Size and Paper Type.
Paper Size Mismatch [Tray #2]	-OR- You did not set the paper guides in the tray to the indicators for the paper size you are using.	2. Make sure you loaded the paper in the proper orientation and set the paper guides at the indicators for your paper size.
		See Related Information: Load Paper.
		<ol> <li>After you have checked the paper size and the paper orientation, follow the LCD instructions.</li> </ol>
		If printing from your computer, make sure the paper size you selected in the printer driver matches the size of paper in the tray.
		See Related Information: Print Settings (Windows) or Print Options (Mac).
Paper Tray #1 not detected	The paper tray is not completely inserted.	Slowly push the paper tray completely into the machine.
Paper Tray #2 not detected	Paper or a foreign object has prevented the paper tray from being inserted properly.	Pull the paper tray out of the machine, and remove the jammed paper or foreign object. If you cannot find or remove the jammed paper, see <i>Related Information</i> : <i>Printer Jam or Paper Jam</i> .
Repetitive No Paper Fed	Paper dust has accumulated on the surface of the paper pick-up rollers.	Clean the paper pick-up rollers.
		See Related Information: Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers.
Repetitive Paper Jams	A foreign object, such as a paper clip or a piece of ripped paper, is in the machine.	Remove any foreign objects and paper scraps in the machine.
		See Related Information: Remove Paper Scraps.
Replace Ink	One or more of the ink cartridges have	Replace the ink cartridges.
	reached the end of their lives. The machine will stop all print operations. While memory is available, monochrome faxes will be stored in the memory. If the sending machine has the ability to convert it, the colour fax will be stored in the memory as a monochrome fax.	See Related Information: Replace the Ink Cartridges.
		<ul> <li>You can still scan even if the ink is low or needs to be replaced.</li> </ul>
The maximum number of devices are already connected using Wi-Fi Direct.	Two mobile devices are already connected to the Wi-Fi Direct network when the Brother machine is the Group Owner (G/O).	After the current connection between your Brother machine and another mobile device has shut down, try to configure the Wi-Fi Direct settings again. You can confirm the connection status by printing the Network Configuration Report.
		See Related Information: Print the Network Configuration Report.

Error Message	Cause	Action
Touchscreen Initialisation Failed	The touchscreen was pressed before the power on initialisation was completed.	Make sure nothing is touching or resting on the touchscreen, especially when plugging the machine in.
	Debris may be stuck between the lower part of the touchscreen and its frame.	Insert a piece of stiff paper between the lower part of the touchscreen and its frame and slide it back and forth to push out the debris.
Tray #1 Settings Tray #2 Settings MP Tray Settings	This message is displayed when the setting to confirm the paper type and size is enabled.	To not display this confirmation message, change the setting to Off. See <i>Related Information: Change the</i> <i>Check Paper Size Setting</i> .
Unable to Clean XX Unable to Initialize XX Unable to Print XX	The machine has a mechanical problem. <b>-OR</b> - A foreign object, such as a paper clip or a piece of ripped paper, is in the machine.	Open the scanner cover and remove any foreign objects and paper scraps from inside the machine. If the error message continues, disconnect the machine from the power for several minutes, and then reconnect it. You can try additional paper jam clear
		operations. See Related Information: Remove Paper Scraps. (If you cannot print received faxes, transfer them to another fax machine or to your computer.) See Related Information: Transfer Your
Unable to Scan XX	The machine has a mechanical problem.	Faxes or Fax Journal Report.Disconnect the machine from the power for several minutes, and then reconnect it.(If you cannot print received faxes, transfer them to another fax machine or to
		your computer.) See Related Information: Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report.
Unusable Device Disconnect device from front connector & turn machine off & then on	A broken device is connected to the USB direct interface.	Unplug the device from the USB direct interface, then press to turn the machine off and then on again.
Unusable Device Please disconnect USB device.	A USB device or USB flash drive that is not supported has been connected to the USB direct interface.	Unplug the device from the USB direct interface. Turn the machine off and then on again.
Wrong Ink Cartridge	The ink cartridge model number is not compatible with your machine.	Verify whether the cartridge model number will work with your machine.
Wrong Ink Colour	An ink cartridge has been installed in the wrong position.	Check which ink cartridges are not matched by colour to their ink cartridge positions and move them to their correct positions.
Wrong Tray Settings	The machine's Paper Size and Tray Use settings do not match the size of paper in the tray you are using.	Follow the instructions on the touchscreen and try to print again.
		Configure the paper size setting for the tray according to the LCD instructions.



### Related Information

• Troubleshooting

- Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report
- Error Messages When Using the Brother Web Connect Feature
- Touchscreen LCD Overview
- Print the Network Configuration Report
- Replace the Ink Cartridges
- Change the Check Paper Size Setting
- Telephone Line Interference/VoIP
- Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
- Document Jams
- Turn FaxAbility Off or On
- Turn off Distinctive Ring
- Caller ID
- Load Paper
- · Load Paper in the Manual Feed Slot
- Printer Jam or Paper Jam
- Paper is Jammed in the Front of the Machine
- Remove Paper Scraps
- Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers
- Turn Off Memory Receive
- · Print a Fax Stored in the Machine's Memory
- Change the Paper Size and Paper Type
- Print Settings (Windows)
- Print Options (Mac)
- Load Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray (MP Tray)
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > Error and Maintenance Messages > Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report

### **Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report**

#### If the LCD shows:

- [Unable to Clean XX]
- [Unable to Initialize XX]
- [Unable to Print XX]
- [Unable to Scan XX]

We recommend transferring your faxes to another fax machine or to your computer.

See Related Information: Transfer Faxes to Another Fax Machine.

See Related Information: Transfer Faxes to Your Computer.

You can also transfer the Fax Journal report to see if there are any faxes you must transfer.

See Related Information: Transfer the Fax Journal Report to Another Fax Machine.

- Error and Maintenance Messages
- Transfer Faxes to Another Fax Machine
- Transfer Faxes to Your Computer
- Transfer the Fax Journal Report to Another Fax Machine
- · Use PC-Fax Receive to Transfer Received Faxes to Your Computer (Windows only)
- · Reset the Network Settings to Factory Default
- Reset Your Brother Machine
- Reset Functions Overview
- Paper is Jammed in the Front of the Machine
- · Paper is Jammed in the Back of the Machine

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > Error and Maintenance Messages > Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report > Transfer Faxes to Another Fax Machine

## **Transfer Faxes to Another Fax Machine**

If you have not set up your Station ID, you cannot enter Fax Transfer mode.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press X to interrupt the error temporarily.
- 2. Press 👔 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Service] > [Data Transfer] > [Fax Transfer].
- 3. Do one of the following:
  - If the touchscreen displays [No Data], there are no faxes left in the machine's memory.
    - Press [Close], and then press
  - Enter the fax number where faxes will be forwarded.
- 4. Press [Fax Start].

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press X to interrupt the error temporarily.
- 2. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Service] > [Data Transfer] > [Fax Transfer].
- 3. Do one of the following:
  - If the touchscreen displays [No Data], there are no faxes left in the machine's memory.

Press [Close], and then press

- Enter the fax number where faxes will be forwarded.
- 4. Press [Fax Start].

- Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report
- Set Your Station ID

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > Error and Maintenance Messages > Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report > Transfer Faxes to Your Computer

## **Transfer Faxes to Your Computer**

You can transfer the faxes from your machine's memory to your computer.

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press to interrupt the error temporarily.
- Make sure you have installed the Brother software and drivers on your computer, and then turn on PC-FAX Receive on the computer. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista and Windows 7

From the (Start) menu, select All Programs > Brother > Brother Utilities.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Receive**.

• Windows 8 and Windows 10

Click **F** (Brother Utilities), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Receive**.

3. Read and confirm the instructions on your computer.

Faxes in the machine's memory will be sent to your computer automatically.

#### When faxes in the machine's memory are not sent to your computer:

Make sure you have set [PC Fax Receive] on the machine.

If faxes are in the machine's memory when you set up PC-Fax Receive, the touchscreen will ask if you want to transfer the faxes to your computer. If Fax Preview is set to Off, you will be asked if you want to print backup copies.

Press [Yes] to transfer all faxes in the memory to your computer.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press X to interrupt the error temporarily.
- 2. Make sure you have installed the Brother software and drivers on your computer, and then turn on **PC-FAX Receive** on the computer. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista and Windows 7

From the (Start) menu, select All Programs > Brother > Brother Utilities.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Receive**.

Windows 8 and Windows 10

Click **F** (Brother Utilities), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Receive**.

3. Read and confirm the instructions on your computer.

Faxes in the machine's memory will be sent to your computer automatically.
# When faxes in the machine's memory are not sent to your computer:

Make sure you have set [PC Fax Receive] on the machine.

If faxes are in the machine's memory when you set up PC-Fax Receive, the touchscreen will ask if you want to transfer the faxes to your computer. If Fax Preview is set to Off, you will be asked if you want to print backup copies.

Press [Yes] to transfer all faxes in the memory to your computer.

- Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report
- Use PC-Fax Receive to Transfer Received Faxes to Your Computer (Windows only)

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > Error and Maintenance Messages > Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report > Transfer the Fax Journal Report to Another Fax Machine

### **Transfer the Fax Journal Report to Another Fax Machine**

If you have not set up your Station ID, you cannot enter fax transfer mode.

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press X to interrupt the error temporarily.
- 2. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Service] > [Data Transfer] > [Report Transfer].
- 3. Enter the fax number where the Fax Journal report will be forwarded.
- 4. Press [Fax Start].

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press X to interrupt the error temporarily.
- 2. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Service] > [Data Transfer] > [Report Transfer].
- 3. Enter the fax number where the Fax Journal report will be forwarded.
- 4. Press [Fax Start].

- Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report
- Set Your Station ID

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > Error and Maintenance Messages > Error Messages When Using the Brother Web Connect Feature

## **Error Messages When Using the Brother Web Connect Feature**

Your Brother machine displays an error message if an error occurs. The most common error messages are shown in the following chart.

You can correct most errors yourself. If, after reading this table, you still need help, the Brother Solutions Center offers the latest FAQs and troubleshooting tips.

Visit us at <u>support.brother.com</u>.

#### **Connection Error**

Error Messages	Cause	Action
(MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW) Connection Error 02 Network is not connected. Check that the machine is connected to the network. (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/ MFC-J5930DW) Connection Error 02 Network is not connected. Check that the machine is connected to the network.	The machine is not connected to a network.	<ul> <li>Verify that the network connection is good.</li> <li>If the Web or Apps option was pressed soon after the machine was turned on, the network connection may not have been established yet. Wait and try again.</li> </ul>
<pre>(MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW) Connection Error 03 Connection failed to server. Check network settings. (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/ MFC-J5930DW) Connection Error 03 Connection failed to server. Check network settings.</pre>	<ul> <li>Network or server settings are incorrect.</li> <li>There is a problem with the network or server.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Confirm that network settings are correct, or wait and try again later.</li> <li>If the Web or Apps option was pressed soon after the machine was turned on, the network connection may not have been established yet. Wait and try again.</li> </ul>
<pre>(MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW) Connection Error 07 Connection failed to server. Set the correct Date&amp;Time. (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/ MFC-J5930DW) Connection Error 07 Connection failed to server. Set the correct Date&amp;Time.</pre>	Date and time settings are incorrect.	Set the date and time correctly. Note that if the machine's power cord is disconnected, the date and time settings may have reset to factory settings.

#### **Authentication Error**

Error Messages	Cause	Action
Authentication Error 01 Incorrect PIN code. Enter PIN correctly.	The PIN you entered to access the account is incorrect. The PIN is the four-digit number that was entered when registering the account to the machine.	Enter the correct PIN.
Authentication Error 02 Incorrect or expired ID, or	The temporary ID that was entered is incorrect.	Enter the correct temporary ID.
this temporary ID is already used. Enter correctly or reissue temporary ID. Temporary ID is valid for 24 hours after it is issued.	The temporary ID that was entered has expired. A temporary ID is valid for 24 hours.	Apply for Brother Web Connect access again and receive a new temporary ID, and then use the new ID to register the account to the machine.
Authentication Error 03 Display name has already been registered. Enter another display name.	The name you entered as the display name has already been registered to another service user.	Enter a different display name.

### Server Error

Error Messages	Cause	Action
Server Error 01 Authentication failed. Do the following: 1. Go to http://bwc.brother.com to get a new temporary ID. 2. Press OK and enter your new temporary ID in the next screen.	The machine's authentication information (needed to access the service) has expired or is invalid.	Apply for Brother Web Connect access again to receive a new temporary ID, and then use the new ID to register the account to the machine.
Server Error 03 Failed to upload. Unsupported file or corrupt data. Confirm data of file.	<ul> <li>The file you are trying to upload may have one of the following problems:</li> <li>The file exceeds the service's limit on number of pixels, file size, etc.</li> <li>The file type is not supported.</li> <li>The file is corrupted.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>The file cannot be used:</li> <li>Check the service's size or format restrictions.</li> <li>Save the file as a different type.</li> <li>If possible, get a new, uncorrupted version of the file.</li> </ul>
Server Error 13 Service temporarily unavailable. Try again later.	There is a problem with the service and it cannot be used now.	Wait and try again. If you get the message again, access the service from a computer to confirm if it is unavailable.

### **Shortcut Error**

Error Messages	Cause	Action
Shortcut Error 02 Account is invalid. Please register account and shortcut again after deleting this shortcut.	The shortcut cannot be used because the account was deleted after the shortcut was registered.	Delete the shortcut, and then register the account and shortcut again.

### **Related Information**

• Error and Maintenance Messages

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > Document Jams

- Document is Jammed in the Top of the ADF Unit
- Document is Jammed in the Bottom of the ADF Unit
- Document is Jammed inside the ADF Unit
- Remove Paper Scraps Jammed in the ADF
- Error and Maintenance Messages

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > Document Jams > Document is Jammed in the Top of the ADF Unit

### Document is Jammed in the Top of the ADF Unit

- 1. Remove any paper that is not jammed from the ADF.
- 2. Open the ADF cover.
- 3. Remove the jammed document by pulling it upwards.



- 4. Close the ADF cover.
- 5. Press X.

### IMPORTANT

To avoid future document jams, close the ADF cover correctly by pressing it down in the centre.



▲ Home > Troubleshooting > Document Jams > Document is Jammed in the Bottom of the ADF Unit

# Document is Jammed in the Bottom of the ADF Unit

- 1. Remove any paper that is not jammed from the ADF.
- 2. Lift the ADF document support, and remove the jammed paper.



3. Press X.



#### ▲ Home > Troubleshooting > Document Jams > Document is Jammed inside the ADF Unit

### Document is Jammed inside the ADF Unit

- 1. Remove any paper that is not jammed from the ADF.
- 2. Lift the document cover.
- 3. Pull the jammed document out to the right.



- 4. Close the document cover.
- 5. Press X.

Related Information

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > Document Jams > Remove Paper Scraps Jammed in the ADF

## **Remove Paper Scraps Jammed in the ADF**

- 1. Lift the document cover.
- 2. Insert a piece of stiff paper, such as cardstock, into the ADF to push any small paper scraps through.



- 3. Close the document cover.
- 4. Press X.



▲ Home > Troubleshooting > Printer Jam or Paper Jam

### Printer Jam or Paper Jam

Locate and remove the jammed paper.

- Paper is Jammed in the Front of the Machine
- Paper is Jammed in the Back of the Machine
- Remove Paper Scraps
- Error and Maintenance Messages
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > Printer Jam or Paper Jam > Paper is Jammed in the Front of the Machine

### Paper is Jammed in the Front of the Machine

If the LCD displays the following paper jam messages, follow these steps:

- [Jam Front/Rear], [Repeat Jam Front/Rear]
- [Jam Front], [Repeat Jam Front]
- [Jam Front/MP Tray], [Repeat Jam Front/MP Tray]
- [Jam Front/Manual Feed Slot], [Repeat Jam Front/Manual Feed]
- 1. Unplug the machine from the electrical socket.
- 2. If the paper is loaded in the MP tray, remove the paper. (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)
- 3. Pull Tray #1 (1) completely out of the machine as shown by the arrow.



If your LCD error message was repeat paper jam messages, for example [Repeat Jam Front/Rear], lift the paper support (1), and then pull it at an angle completely out of the machine as shown by the arrow.



When finished, continue with the next step.

4. Slowly pull out the jammed paper (1).



// If your LCD error message was repeat paper jam messages, for example [Repeat Jam Front/Rear], do the following:

a. Lift the Jam Clear Flap, and remove the jammed paper.



b. Make sure you look carefully inside (1) for any scraps of paper.



When finished, continue with the next step.

5. Using both hands, use the finger holds on each side of the machine to lift the scanner cover (1) into the open position.



6. Slowly pull the jammed paper (1) out of the machine.



Ø

If your LCD error message was repeat paper jam messages, for example [Repeat Jam Front/Rear], move the print head (if necessary) to take out any paper remaining in this area. Make sure pieces of paper are not left in the corners of the machine (1) and (2).



When finished, continue with the next step.

### IMPORTANT

• If the print head is in the right corner as shown in the illustration, you cannot move the print head. Close the scanner cover, and then reconnect the power cord. Open the scanner cover again, and then hold down value until the print head moves to the centre. Then unplug the machine from the power source and take out the paper.



• If the paper is jammed under the print head, unplug the machine from the power source, and then move the print head to take out the paper.

- If ink gets on your skin or clothing, immediately wash it off with soap or detergent.
- 7. Gently close the scanner cover using the finger holds on each side.



- - a. Open the Jam Clear Cover (1) at the back of the machine.



b. Make sure you look carefully inside for jammed paper and slowly pull it out of the machine.



c. Close the Jam Clear Cover. Make sure the cover is closed completely.



9. If your LCD error message was [Jam Front/MP Tray] or [Repeat Jam Front/MP Tray], make sure you look carefully inside the MP tray for jammed paper. Push the release lever (1) towards the back of the machine, and then slowly pull the jammed paper out of the MP tray.



10. If your LCD error message was [Jam Front/Manual Feed Slot] or [Repeat Jam Front/Manual Feed], make sure you look carefully inside the manual feed slot for jammed paper and slowly pull it out of the machine.



11. If your LCD error message was repeat paper jam messages, for example [Repeat Jam Front/Rear], and you removed the paper support, put it firmly back in the machine. Make sure you fit the paper support into the channels.



12. Slowly push Tray #1 completely into the machine.



13. Reconnect the power cord.

Ø

If there is a repeat paper jam, a small piece of paper may be stuck in the machine. See *Related Information: Remove Paper Scraps*.

- Printer Jam or Paper Jam
- Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report
- Error and Maintenance Messages
- Remove Paper Scraps

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > Printer Jam or Paper Jam > Paper is Jammed in the Back of the Machine

## Paper is Jammed in the Back of the Machine

If the LCD displays the following paper jam messages, follow these steps:

- [Jam Rear], [Repeat Jam Rear]
- [Jam MP Tray], [Repeat Jam MP Tray]
- [Jam Manual Feed Slot], [Repeat Jam Manual Feed Slot]
- [Jam Tray2], [Repeat Jam Tray2]
- 1. Unplug the machine from the electrical socket.
- 2. If the paper is loaded in the MP tray, remove the paper. (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)
- 3. Pull Tray #1 (1) completely out of the machine as shown by the arrow.



#### (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)

If your LCD error message was [Jam Tray2] or [Repeat Jam Tray2], also pull Tray #2 (2) completely out of the machine as shown by the arrow.



When finished, continue with the next step.

- 4. If your LCD error message was [Jam Rear], [Repeat Jam Rear], [Jam Tray2] or [Repeat Jam Tray2], do the following:
  - a. Open the Jam Clear Cover (1) at the back of the machine.



b. Slowly pull the jammed paper out of the machine.



c. Close the Jam Clear Cover. Make sure the cover is closed completely.



5. If your LCD error message was [Jam MP Tray] or [Repeat Jam MP Tray], push the release lever (1) towards the back of the machine, and then slowly pull the jammed paper out of the MP tray.



6. If your LCD error message was [Jam Manual Feed Slot] or [Repeat Jam Manual Feed Slot], slowly pull the jammed paper out of the manual feed slot.



7. Using both hands, use the finger holds on each side of the machine to lift the scanner cover (1) into the open position.



8. Slowly pull the jammed paper (1) out of the machine.



Ø

If your LCD error message was repeat paper jam messages, for example [Repeat Jam Rear], move the print head (if necessary) to take out any paper remaining in this area. Make sure pieces of paper are not left in the corners of the machine (1) and (2).



When finished, continue with the next step.

### **IMPORTANT**

 If the print head is in the right corner as shown in the illustration, you cannot move the print head. Close the scanner cover, and then reconnect the power cord. Open the scanner cover again, and then hold down via until the print head moves to the centre. Then unplug the machine from the power source and take out the paper.



- If the paper is jammed under the print head, unplug the machine from the power source, and then move the print head to take out the paper.
- If ink gets on your skin or clothing, immediately wash it off with soap or detergent.
- 9. Gently close the scanner cover using the finger holds on each side.



10. (MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW) Slowly push Tray #1 completely into the machine.



(MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW) Slowly push Tray #1 and Tray #2 (if removed) completely into the machine.



11. Reconnect the power cord.

If there is a repeat paper jam, a small piece of paper may be stuck in the machine. See *Related Information: Remove Paper Scraps*.

- Printer Jam or Paper Jam
- Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report
- Remove Paper Scraps

Home > Troubleshooting > Printer Jam or Paper Jam > Remove Paper Scraps

### **Remove Paper Scraps**

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. If you repeatedly experience paper jams (3 times or more), the LCD displays a message asking if you want to remove the scraps.

Press [Yes] to return to the Home screen.

- 2. Press [Settings] > [Maintenance] > [Remove Paper Scraps].
- 3. Follow the instructions on the LCD to locate and remove the jammed paper.

During the procedure, you must load the Maintenance sheet (included with your machine) in Landscape orientation in the manual feed slot. (If you do not have the Maintenance sheet, use one sheet of A4 or Letter size thicker paper, such as glossy paper.)



#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. If you repeatedly experience paper jams (3 times or more), the LCD displays a message asking if you want to remove the scraps.

Press [Yes] to return to the Home screen.

- 2. Press [Settings] > [Maintenance] > [Remove Paper Scraps].
- 3. Follow the instructions on the LCD to locate and remove the jammed paper.

- Printer Jam or Paper Jam
- Error and Maintenance Messages
- · Paper Handling and Printing Problems
- · Paper is Jammed in the Front of the Machine
- · Paper is Jammed in the Back of the Machine

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine

## If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine

For technical help, you must contact Brother customer support.

If you think there is a problem with your machine, check the following topics. You can correct most problems yourself.

If you need additional help, the Brother Solutions Center offers the latest FAQs and troubleshooting tips. Visit <u>support.brother.com</u>.

Using non-Brother supplies may affect the print quality, hardware performance, and machine reliability.

- Paper Handling and Printing Problems
- Telephone and Fax problems
- Other Problems

Ø

- Network Problems
- Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> Problems
- AirPrint Problems

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine > Paper Handling and Printing Problems

## Paper Handling and Printing Problems

## **Printing Difficulties**

Difficulties	Suggestions
No printout	Check that the correct printer driver has been installed and selected.
	Check to see if the machine's display is showing an error message.
	See Related Information: Error and Maintenance Messages.
	Check that the machine is online:
	Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008
	Click 🚯 / Start > Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers. Right-
	click <b>Brother MFC-XXXX Printer</b> (where XXXX is your model name). Make sure <b>Use Printer Online</b> is not listed. If it is listed, click this option to set the driver Online.
	Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2
	Click 🚯 / Start > Devices and Printers . Right-click Brother MFC-XXXX
	<ul> <li>Printer (where XXXX is your model name) and click See what's printing. Click Printer in the menu bar. Make sure Use Printer Offline is not selected.</li> <li>Windows 8</li> </ul>
	Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click Settings > Control Panel. In the Hardware and Sound group, click View devices and printers. Right-click the Brother MFC-XXXX Printer (where XXXX is your model name). Click See what's printing. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver. Click Printer in the menu bar and make sure Use Printer Offline is not selected.
	Windows 10
	Click 🛃 > All apps > Windows System > Control Panel. In the Hardware
	and Sound group, click View devices and printers. Right-click the Brother MFC-XXXX Printer (where XXXX is your model name). Click See what's printing. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver. Click Printer in the menu bar and make sure Use Printer Offline is not selected.
	<ul> <li>Windows Server 2012         Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click Settings &gt; Control Panel. In the Hardware group, click View devices and printers. Right-click the Brother MFC-XXXX Printer (where XXXX is your model name). Click See what's printing. If printer drive options appear, select your printer driver. Click Printer in the menu bar and make sure Use Printer Offline is not selected.     </li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Windows Server 2012 R2</li> </ul>
	Click Control Panel on the Start screen. In the Hardware group, click View devices and printers. Right-click the Brother MFC-XXXX Printer (where XXXX is your model name). Click See what's printing. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver. Click Printer in the menu bar and make sure Use Printer Offline is not selected.
	One or more ink cartridges have reached the end of their life.
	See Related Information: Replace the Ink Cartridges.
	If old, unprinted data remains in the printer driver spooler, it will prevent new prin jobs from printing. Open the printer icon and delete all data as follows:
	Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008
	Click  Start > Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers.
	Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2

Difficulties	Suggestions
	Click S/Start > Devices and Printers > Printers and Faxes.
	Windows 8
	<ul> <li>Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click Settings &gt; Control Panel. In the Hardware and Sound group, click View devices and printers &gt; Printers.</li> <li>Windows 10</li> </ul>
	Click 🛖 > All apps > Windows System > Control Panel. In the Hardware
	and Sound group, click View devices and printers > Printers.
	Windows Server 2012
	Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click <b>Settings &gt; Control Panel</b> . In the <b>Hardware</b> group, click <b>View devices and printers &gt; Printers</b> .
	Windows Server 2012 R2
	Click <b>Control Panel</b> on the <b>Start</b> screen. In the <b>Hardware</b> group, click <b>View devices and printers &gt; Printers</b> .
	• OS X v10.9.5, 10.10.x, 10.11.x
	Click the System Preferences > Printers & Scanners.
The headers or footers appear when the document is displayed	There is an unprintable area on the top and bottom of the page. Adjust the top and bottom margins in your document to allow for this.
on the screen but do not appear when the document is printed.	See Related Information: Unprintable Area.
Cannot perform 'Page Layout' printing.	Check that the paper size setting in the application and in the printer driver are the same.
Print speed is too slow.	Try changing the printer driver setting. The highest resolution needs longer data processing, sending and printing time. Try the other quality settings in the printer driver as follows:
	Windows
	In the printer driver, clear the <b>Colour Enhancement</b> check box on the <b>Advanced</b> tab.
	• Mac
	In the printer driver, choose <b>Color Settings</b> , click <b>Advanced Color Settings</b> , and make sure you clear the <b>Color Enhancement</b> check box.
	Turn the Borderless feature off. Borderless printing is slower than normal printing.
	See Related Information: Print Settings (Windows) or Print a Photo (Mac).
	Turn the Quiet Mode setting off. Print speed is slower in Quiet Mode.
	See Related Information: Reduce Printing Noise.

# **Print Quality Difficulties**

Difficulties	Suggestions
Poor print quality	Check the print quality.
	See Related Information: Check the Print Quality.
	Make sure the Media Type setting in the printer driver or the Paper Type setting in the machine's menu matches the type of paper you are using.
	See Related Information: Change the Paper Size and Paper Type.
	See Related Information: Print Settings (Windows) or Print Options (Mac).
	Make sure your ink cartridges are fresh. The following may cause ink to clog:
	The expiration date written on the cartridge package has passed.
	The ink cartridge has been in your machine for over six months.
	The ink cartridge may not have been stored correctly before use.

Difficulties	Suggestions
	Make sure you are using Brother Original ink. Brother does not recommend the use of cartridges other than Brother Original cartridges or the refilling of used cartridges with ink from other sources.
	Make sure you are using one of the recommended types of paper.
	See Related Information: Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media.
	The recommended environment for your machine is between 20 °C to 33 °C.
White lines appear in text or	Clean the print head.
graphics.	See Related Information: Clean the Print Head from Your Brother Machine.
	See Related Information: Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Windows) or Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Mac).
	Make sure you are using Brother Original ink.
	Try using the recommended types of paper.
	See Related Information: Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media.
	To prolong print head life, provide the best ink cartridge economy and maintain print quality, we do not recommend frequently unplugging the machine and/or leaving the machine unplugged for extended periods of time. We recommend
	using (1) to power down the machine. Using (1) allows minimal power to the
	machine, resulting in periodic, but less frequent, cleaning of the print head.
The machine prints blank pages.	Check the print quality.
	See Related Information: Check the Print Quality.
	Make sure you are using Brother Original ink.
	To prolong print head life, provide the best ink cartridge economy and maintain print quality, we do not recommend frequently unplugging the machine and/or leaving the machine unplugged for extended periods of time. We recommend using (1) to power down the machine. Using (1) allows minimal power to the
	machine, resulting in periodic, but less frequent, cleaning of the print head.
Characters and lines are blurred.	Check the printing alignment.
	See Related Information: Check the Print Alignment from Your Brother Machine.
A B C A B C	See Related Information: Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Windows) or Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Mac).
ABC	Change the print setting options.
	See Related Information: Change the Print Setting Options When Having Printing Problems.
Printed text or images are skewed.	Make sure the paper is loaded correctly in the paper tray and the paper guides are adjusted correctly.
	See Related Information: Load Paper.
	Make sure the Jam Clear Cover is closed correctly.
Smudge or stain at the top centre	Make sure the paper is not too thick or curled.
of the printed page.	See Related Information: Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media.
Printing appears dirty or ink seems to run.	Make sure you are using the recommended types of paper. Do not handle the paper until the ink is dry.
	See Related Information: Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media.
	Make sure the printing surface is face down in the paper tray.
	Make sure you are using Brother Original ink.
	If you are using photo paper, make sure the glossy side of the photo paper is face down in the tray and you have set the correct paper type. If you are printing a photo from your computer, set the Media Type in the printer driver.
Ink is smudged or wet when using glossy photo paper.	Be sure to check the front and back of the paper. Place the glossy surface (printing surface) face down.

Difficulties	Suggestions
	See Related Information: Change the Paper Size and Paper Type.
	If you use glossy photo paper, make sure the paper type setting is correct.
Stains appear on the reverse side	Make sure the printer platen is not dirty with ink.
or at the bottom of the page.	See Related Information: Clean the Machine's Printer Platen.
	Make sure you are using Brother Original ink.
	Make sure you are using the paper support flap.
	See Related Information: Load Paper.
	Make sure the paper feed rollers are not dirty with ink.
	See Related Information: Clean the Paper Feed Rollers.
The machine prints dense lines on	Windows
the page.	Select <b>Reverse Order</b> in the <b>Basic</b> tab of the printer driver.
The printouts are wrinkled.	Windows
	In the printer driver, choose the <b>Advanced</b> tab, click <b>Other Print Options</b> , and then click <b>Advanced Colour Settings</b> . Clear the <b>Bi-Directional Printing</b> check box.
	• Mac
	In the printer driver, choose <b>Print Settings</b> , click <b>Advanced</b> , choose <b>Other</b> <b>Print Options</b> , and clear the <b>Bi-Directional Printing</b> check box.
	Make sure you are using Brother Original ink.

# Paper Handling Difficulties

Difficulties	Suggestions
The machine does not feed paper.	Make sure the paper tray is pushed in all the way until it locks into place.
	Make sure the Jam Clear Cover at the back of the machine is closed.
	If the machine's LCD displays a Paper Jam message and you still have a problem, see <i>Related Information: Error and Maintenance Messages</i> .
	If the paper tray is empty, load a new stack of paper into the paper tray.
	If there is paper in the paper tray, make sure it is straight. If the paper is curled, straighten it. Sometimes it is helpful to remove the paper, turn the stack over and put it back in the paper tray.
	Reduce the amount of paper in the paper tray, and then try again.
	Clean the paper pick-up rollers.
	See Related Information: Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers.
	Make sure that the paper is within specifications for the machine.
	See Related Information: Paper Weight and Thickness.
Photo paper does not feed correctly.	When you print on Brother Photo paper, load one extra sheet of the same photo paper in the paper tray. An extra sheet has been included in the paper package for this purpose.
Machine feeds multiple pages.	Make sure the paper is loaded correctly in the paper tray.
	• Remove all the paper from the tray and fan the stack of paper well, then put it back in the tray.
	Make sure you do not push the paper in too far.
	See Related Information: Load Paper.
	Make sure the Jam Clear Cover is closed correctly.
	See Related Information: Printer Jam or Paper Jam.
	Make sure the Base Pad in the paper tray is not dirty.
	See Related Information: Clean the Base Pad.

Difficulties	Suggestions
There is a paper jam.	See Related Information: Printer Jam or Paper Jam.
	Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct paper size.
	Use the jam prevention settings.
	For copying
	See Related Information: Change the Print Setting Options When Having Printing Problems.
	For printing
	See Related Information: Prevent Smudged Printouts and Paper Jams (Windows) or Prevent Smudged Printouts and Paper Jams (Mac).
Paper jam reoccurs.	If there is a repeat paper jam, a small piece of paper may be stuck in the machine. Make sure paper is not still jammed in the machine.
	See Related Information: Remove Paper Scraps.
The paper jams when you use 2- sided copy or 2-sided print.	If paper jams occur frequently during 2-sided copying or 2-sided printing, the paper feed rollers may be stained with ink. Clean the paper feed rollers.
	See Related Information: Clean the Paper Feed Rollers.

### **Printing Received Faxes**

Difficulties	Suggestions
<ul> <li>Condensed print</li> <li>Horizontal streaks</li> <li>Top and bottom sentences are</li> </ul>	This is usually caused by a poor telephone connection. Make a copy; if your copy looks good, you probably had a bad connection, with static or interference on the telephone line. Ask the other party to send the fax again.
cut off	
Missing lines	
Black lines when receiving	The sender's scanner may be dirty. Ask the sender to make a copy to see if the problem is with the sending machine. Try receiving from another fax machine.
Left and right margins are cut off or a single page is printed on two pages.	If the received faxes are divided and printed on two pages or if you get an extra blank page, your paper size setting may not be correct for the paper you are using.
	See Related Information: Change the Paper Size and Paper Type.
	Turn on Auto Reduction.
	See Related Information: Shrink Page Size of an Oversized Incoming Fax.
Received colour fax prints only in monocrome.	Replace the colour ink cartridges that have reached the end of their life, and then ask the other person to send the colour fax again.
	See Related Information: Replace the Ink Cartridges.

- If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine
- Troubleshooting
- Error and Maintenance Messages
- Replace the Ink Cartridges
- Unprintable Area
- Check the Print Quality
- Change the Paper Size and Paper Type
- Acceptable Paper and Other Print Media
- Clean the Print Head from Your Brother Machine
- Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Windows)
- Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Mac)
- Check the Print Alignment from Your Brother Machine

- Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Windows)
- Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)
- Load Paper
- Clean the Machine's Printer Platen
- Clean the Paper Feed Rollers
- Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers
- Printer Jam or Paper Jam
- Shrink Page Size of an Oversized Incoming Fax
- Paper Weight and Thickness
- Print Settings (Windows)
- Print Options (Mac)
- Print a Photo (Mac)
- Prevent Smudged Printouts and Paper Jams (Windows)
- Prevent Smudged Printouts and Paper Jams (Mac)
- Clean the Base Pad
- · Change the Print Setting Options When Having Printing Problems
- Reduce Printing Noise
- Remove Paper Scraps

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine > Telephone and Fax problems

## **Telephone and Fax problems**

## **Telephone Line or Connections**

Difficulties	Suggestions
Dialling does not work. (No dial tone)	Check all line cord connections. Make sure the telephone line cord is plugged into the telephone wall socket and the LINE socket of the machine. Make sure your machine has a dial tone by pressing the Hook button in Fax mode. If you subscribe to DSL or VoIP services, contact your service provider for connection instructions.
	If you are using a VoIP system, try changing the VoIP setting to <i>Basic (for VoIP)</i> . This will lower modem speed and turn off Error Correction Mode (ECM). See <i>Related Information: Telephone Line Interference/VoIP</i> .
	(Available only for some countries.)
	Change the Tone/Pulse setting.
	See Related Information: Set Tone or Pulse Dialling Mode.
	(Not available for South Africa)
	Send a manual fax by pressing the Hook button, and dialing the number. Wait to hear fax-receiving tones before pressing the Start button.
	(South Africa)
	If an external phone is connected to the machine, send a manual fax by lifting the handset of the external telephone and dialling the number using the external telephone. Wait to hear the fax receiving tones before sending the fax.
	If there is no dial tone, connect a known working telephone and telephone line cord to the socket. Then lift the external telephone's handset and listen for a dial tone. If there is still no dial tone, ask your telephone company to check the line and/or wall socket.
The machine does not answer	Make sure the machine is in the correct receive mode for your setup.
when called.	See Related Information: Choose the Correct Receive Mode.
	Check for a dial tone. If possible, call your machine to hear it answer. If there is still no answer, check that the telephone line cord is plugged into the telephone wall socket and the LINE socket of the machine. Make sure your machine has a dial tone by pressing the Hook button in Fax mode. If there is no ringing when you call your machine, ask your telephone company to check the line.

## Handling Incoming Calls

Difficulties	Suggestions
The machine 'Hears' a voice as a CNG Tone.	If Fax Detect is set to On, your machine is more sensitive to sounds. It may mistakenly interpret certain voices or music on the line as a fax machine calling
	and respond with fax receiving tones. Deactivate the machine by pressing 🗙.
	Try avoiding this problem by turning Fax Detect to Off.
	See Related Information: Set Fax Detect.
Sending a Fax Call to the machine.	If you answered on an extension or external telephone, press your Remote Activation Code (the factory setting is *51 (*91 for New Zealand)). If you answered on the external telephone, press the Start button to receive the fax. When your machine answers, hang up.
Custom features on a single line.	If you have Call Waiting, Call Waiting/Caller ID, Caller ID, Voice Mail, an answering machine, an alarm system or other custom feature on a single telephone line with your machine, it may create a problem sending or receiving faxes.
	<b>For Example:</b> If you subscribe to Call Waiting or some other custom service and its signal comes through the line while your machine is sending or receiving a fax, the signal can temporarily interrupt or disrupt the faxes. Brother's ECM (Error

Difficulties	Suggestions
	Correction Mode) feature should help overcome this problem. This condition is related to the telephone system industry and is common to all devices that send and receive information on a single, shared line with custom features. If avoiding a slight interruption is crucial to your business, we recommend using a separate telephone line with no custom features.

## **Receiving Faxes**

Difficulties	Suggestions
Cannot receive a fax.	(Not available for South Africa)
	Make sure your machine has a dial tone by pressing the Hook button in Fax mode. If you hear static or interference on your fax line, contact your local telephone provider.
	Check all line cord connections. Make sure the telephone line cord is plugged into the telephone wall socket and the LINE socket of the machine. If you subscribe to DSL or VoIP services, contact your service provider for connection instructions. If you are using a VoIP system, try changing the VoIP setting to <i>Basic (for VoIP)</i> . This will lower modem speed and turn off Error Correction Mode (ECM).
	See Related Information: Telephone Line Interference/VoIP.
	Make sure the machine is in the correct Receive Mode. This is determined by the external devices and telephone subscriber services you have on the same line as the Brother machine.
	See Related Information: Choose the Correct Receive Mode.
	If you have a dedicated fax line and want your Brother machine to     automatically answer all incoming faxes, you should select Fax only mode.
	• If your Brother machine shares a line with an external answering machine, you should select the External TAD mode. In External TAD mode, your Brother machine will receive incoming faxes automatically and voice callers will be able to leave a message on your answering machine.
	• If your Brother machine shares a line with other telephones and you want it to automatically answer all incoming faxes, you should select the Fax/Tel mode. In Fax/Tel mode, your Brother machine will receive faxes automatically and produce a pseudo/double-ring to alert you to answer voice calls.
	• If you do not want your Brother machine to answer any incoming faxes automatically, you should select the Manual mode. In Manual mode, you must answer every incoming call and activate the machine to receive faxes.
	Another device or service at your location may be answering the call before your Brother machine answers. To test this, lower the Ring Delay setting:
	If the Receive Mode is set to Fax Only or Fax/Tel, reduce the Ring Delay to one ring.
	See Related Information: Set the Number of Rings Before the Machine Answers (Ring Delay).
	If the Receive Mode is set to External TAD, reduce the number of rings programmed on your answering machine to two.
	• If the Receive Mode is set to Manual, DO NOT adjust the Ring Delay setting.
	Have someone send you a test fax:
	• If you received the test fax successfully, your machine is operating correctly. Remember to reset your Ring Delay or answering machine setting back to your original setting. If receiving problems recur after resetting the Ring Delay, then a person, device, or subscriber service is answering the fax call before the machine has a chance to answer.
	• If you were not able to receive the fax, then another device or subscriber service may be interfering with your fax reception or there may be a problem with your fax line.

Difficulties	Suggestions
	If you are using a telephone answering machine (External TAD mode) on the same line as the Brother machine, make sure your answering machine is set up correctly.
	See Related Information: Connect an External TAD.
	1. Connect the external TAD as shown in the illustration.
	See Related Information: External TAD (Telephone Answering Device).
	2. Set your answering machine to answer in one or two rings.
	3. Record the outgoing message on your answering machine.
	Record five seconds of silence at the beginning of your outgoing message.
	<ul> <li>Limit your speaking to 20 seconds.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>End your outgoing message with your Remote Activation Code for people sending manual faxes. For example: "After the beep, leave a message or press *51 (*91 for New Zealand) and Start to send a fax."</li> </ul>
	4. Set your answering machine to answer calls.
	5. Set your Brother machine's Receive Mode to External TAD.
	See Related Information: Choose the Correct Receive Mode.
	Make sure your Brother machine's Fax Detect feature is turned On. Fax Detect is a feature that allows you to receive a fax even if you answered the call on an external or extension telephone.
	See Related Information: Set Fax Detect.
	If you often get transmission errors due to possible interference on the telephone line or if you are using a VoIP system, try changing the Compatibility setting to <i>Basic(for VoIP)</i> .
	See Related Information: Telephone Line Interference/VoIP.
	(Available only for some countries.)
	If you connect your machine to a PBX or ISDN line, set the menu setting of Telephone Line Type to your telephone line type.
	See Related Information: Set the Telephone Line Type.

# Sending Faxes

Difficulties	Suggestions
Cannot send a fax.	Check all line cord connections. Make sure the telephone line cord is plugged into the telephone wall socket and the LINE socket of the machine. Make sure your machine has a dial tone by pressing the Hook button in Fax mode. If you subscribe to DSL or VoIP services, contact your service provider for connection instructions.
	If you are using a VoIP system, try changing the VoIP setting to <i>Basic (for VoIP)</i> . This will lower modem speed and turn off Error Correction Mode (ECM).
	See Related Information: Telephone Line Interference/VoIP.
	Print the Transmission Verification Report and check for an error.
	See Related Information: Print Reports.
	Contact your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock Settings.
	Ask the other party to check that the receiving machine has paper.
Poor sending quality.	Try changing your resolution to Fine or S.Fine. Make a copy to check your machine's scanner operation. If the copy quality is poor, clean the scanner. See <i>Related Information</i> : <i>Clean the Scanner</i> .
Transmission Verification Report says RESULT:NG.	There is probably temporary noise or static on the line. Try sending the fax again. If you are sending a PC-Fax message and get RESULT:NG on the Transmission Verification Report, your machine may be out of memory. To free up extra memory, you can turn off Fax Storage, print fax messages in memory or cancel a delayed fax. If the problem continues, ask the telephone company to check your telephone line.

Difficulties	Suggestions
	See Related Information: Turn Off Memory Receive.
	See Related Information: Print a Fax Stored in the Machine's Memory.
	See Related Information: Cancel a Fax in Progress.
	See Related Information: Check and Cancel a Pending Fax.
	(Available only for some countries.)
	If you connect your machine to a PBX or ISDN line, set the menu setting of Telephone Line Type to your telephone line type.
	See Related Information: Set the Telephone Line Type.
	If you often get transmission errors due to possible interference on the telephone line or if you are using a VoIP system, try changing the Compatibility setting to Basic(for VoIP).
	See Related Information: Telephone Line Interference/VoIP.
Sent faxes are blank.	Make sure you are loading the document correctly.
	See Related Information: Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF).
	See Related Information: Load Documents on the Scanner Glass.
Vertical black lines when sending.	Black vertical lines on faxes you send are typically caused by dirt or correction fluid on the glass strip. Clean the glass strip.
	See Related Information: Clean the Scanner.

- If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine
- Set Dial Tone Detection
- Telephone Line Interference/VoIP
- Troubleshooting
- Set Tone or Pulse Dialling Mode
- Choose the Correct Receive Mode
- Set Fax Detect
- Set the Number of Rings Before the Machine Answers (Ring Delay)
- Connect an External TAD
- External TAD (Telephone Answering Device)
- Set the Telephone Line Type
- Print Reports
- Clean the Scanner
- Turn Off Memory Receive
- · Print a Fax Stored in the Machine's Memory
- Cancel a Fax in Progress
- Check and Cancel a Pending Fax
- Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
- Load Documents on the Scanner Glass

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine > Telephone and Fax problems > Set Dial Tone Detection

## **Set Dial Tone Detection**

Setting the Dial Tone to [Detection] will shorten the Dial Tone detect pause.

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 👔 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Dial Tone].
- 2. Press [Detection] or [No Detection].
- 3. Press

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Dial Tone].
- 2. Press [Detection] or [No Detection].
- 3. Press

#### Related Information

• Telephone and Fax problems

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine > Telephone and Fax problems > Telephone Line Interference/VoIP

### **Telephone Line Interference/VoIP**

If you are having problems sending or receiving a fax due to possible interference on the telephone line or if you are using a VoIP system, we recommend changing the modem speed to minimise errors in fax operations.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 👔 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Compatibility].
- 2. Press the option you want.
  - [Basic(for VoIP)] reduces the modem speed to 9,600 bps and turns off colour fax receiving and ECM, except for colour fax-sending. Unless interference is a recurring problem on your telephone line, you may prefer to use it only when needed.

To improve compatibility with most VoIP services, Brother recommends changing the compatibility setting to [Basic(for VoIP)].

• [Normal] sets the modem speed at 14,400 bps.



- VoIP (Voice over IP) is a type of phone system that uses an Internet connection, rather than a traditional phone line.
  - Brother does not recommend the use of a VoIP line. VoIP limitations in general can cause some functions of the fax machine not to work correctly.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Compatibility].
- 2. Press the option you want.
  - [Basic(for VoIP)] reduces the modem speed to 9,600 bps and turns off colour fax receiving and ECM, except for colour fax-sending. Unless interference is a recurring problem on your telephone line, you may prefer to use it only when needed.

To improve compatibility with most VoIP services, Brother recommends changing the compatibility setting to [Basic(for VoIP)].

- [Normal] sets the modem speed at 14,400 bps.
- [High] sets the modem speed at 33,600 bps.

```
3. Press
```

- VoIP (Voice over IP) is a type of phone system that uses an Internet connection, rather than a traditional phone line.
- Brother does not recommend the use of a VoIP line. VoIP limitations in general can cause some functions of the fax machine not to work correctly.

- Telephone and Fax problems
- Voice Over Internet Protocol (VoIP/Telephone Line Interference)
- Error and Maintenance Messages

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine > Other Problems

## **Other Problems**

# **Copying Difficulties**

Difficulties	Suggestions
Cannot make a copy.	Contact your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock Settings.
Black lines or streaks appear in copies.	Black lines on copies are typically caused by dirt or correction fluid on the glass strip. Clean the glass strip, scanner glass, and the white bar and white plastic above them. See <i>Related Information</i> : <i>Clean the Scanner</i> .
Black marks or spots appear in copies.	Black marks or spots on copies are typically caused by dirt or correction fluid on the scanner glass. Clean the scanner glass and white plastic above it. See <i>Related Information</i> : <i>Clean the Scanner</i> .
Dark lines appear at regular intervals.	Check and adjust the paper feed. See <i>Related Information</i> : <i>Correct the Paper Feed to Clear Vertical Lines</i> .
Copies are blank.	Make sure you are loading the document correctly. See Related Information: Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF). See Related Information: Load Documents on the Scanner Glass.
Poor copy results when using the ADF.	Try using the scanner glass. See <i>Related Information: Load Documents on the Scanner Glass</i> .
Fit to Page does not work correctly.	Make sure the document is not skewed on the scanner glass. Reposition the document and try again.

## **Scanning Difficulties**

Difficulties	Suggestions
TWAIN or WIA errors appear when starting to scan. (Windows)	Make sure the Brother TWAIN or WIA driver is selected as the primary source in your scanning application. For example, in Nuance <sup>™</sup> PaperPort <sup>™</sup> 14, click <b>Desktop</b> > <b>Scan Settings</b> > <b>Select</b> to choose the Brother TWAIN/WIA driver.
TWAIN error appears when starting to scan. (Mac)	Make sure the Brother TWAIN driver is selected as the primary source in your scanning application.
	You can also scan documents using the ICA Scanner Driver.
OCR does not work.	Try increasing the scanning resolution.
Poor scanning results when using the ADF. (Black lines appear in the scanned data.)	Clean the white bar and the glass strip underneath it.
	See Related Information: Clean the Scanner.
	Try using the scanner glass.
	See Related Information: Load Documents on the Scanner Glass.

## **Direct Photo Printing Difficulties**
Difficulties	Suggestions
	Make sure Borderless printing and Cropping are turned off.
printed.	See Related Information: Print Borderless Photos from a USB Flash Drive.
	See Related Information: Print Photos with Auto Cropping.

# **Software Difficulties**

Difficulties	Suggestions
Cannot print.	Uninstall and reinstall the Brother driver.
"Device Busy" appears on the computer screen.	Make sure the machine is not showing an error message on the machine's display.

- If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine
- Troubleshooting
- Clean the Scanner
- Correct the Paper Feed to Clear Vertical Lines
- Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
- Load Documents on the Scanner Glass
- Print Borderless Photos from a USB Flash Drive
- Print Photos with Auto Cropping
- Important Note

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine > Network Problems

# **Network Problems**

- Use the Network Connection Repair Tool (Windows)
- Where Can I Find My Brother Machine's Network Settings?
- I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration
- My Brother Machine Cannot Print, Scan, or PC-FAX Receive over the Network
- I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly
- Troubleshooting

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine > Network Problems > Use the Network Connection Repair Tool (Windows)

# Use the Network Connection Repair Tool (Windows)

Use the Network Connection Repair Tool to fix the Brother machine's network settings. It will assign the correct IP address and Subnet Mask.

- Windows Vista/Windows 7/Windows 8/Windows 10
- You must log on with Administrator rights.
- Make sure the Brother machine is turned on and is connected to the same network as your computer.
- 1. Do one of the following:

Option	Description
Windows Vista/	Click 👩 (Start) > All Programs > Brother > Brother Utilities.
Windows 7	Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click <b>Tools</b> in the left navigation bar, and then click <b>Network Connection Repair Tool</b> .
Windows 8/ Windows 10	Launch <b>Repair</b> ( <b>Brother Utilities</b> ), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click <b>Tools</b> in the left navigation bar, and then click <b>Network Connection Repair Tool</b> .

- If the User Account Control screen appears, do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista: Click **Allow**.
  - Windows 7/Windows 8/Windows 10: Click **Yes**.
- 2. Follow the on-screen instructions.
- 3. Check the diagnosis by printing the Network Configuration Report.

The Network Connection Repair Tool will start automatically if you select the **Enable Connection Repair Tool** option in the Status Monitor. Right-click the Status Monitor screen, and then click **Other Settings** > **Enable Connection Repair Tool**. This is not recommended when your network administrator has set the IP address to Static, since it will automatically change the IP address.

If the correct IP address and the Subnet Mask are still not assigned even after using the Network Connection Repair Tool, ask your network administrator for this information.



- Network Problems
- Print the Network Configuration Report
- My Brother Machine Cannot Print, Scan, or PC-FAX Receive over the Network
- · I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine > Network Problems > Where Can I Find My Brother Machine's Network Settings?

# Where Can I Find My Brother Machine's Network Settings?

- Change Machine Settings from Your Computer
- Print the Network Configuration Report

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine > Network Problems > I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration

# I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration

Turn your wireless router off and back on. Then try to configure the wireless settings again. If you are unable to resolve the problem, follow the instructions below:

Investigate the problem using the WLAN Report.

Cause	Action	Interface
Your security settings (SSID/ Network Key) are not correct.	<ul> <li>Confirm the security settings using the Wireless Setup Helper utility. For more information and to download the utility, go to your model's <b>Downloads</b> page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u>.</li> <li>Select and confirm that you are using the correct security</li> </ul>	Wireless
	settings.	
	- See the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router for information on how to find the security settings.	
	<ul> <li>The manufacturer's name or model number of the wireless LAN access point/router may be used as the default security settings.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Consult with the access point/router manufacturer, your Internet provider, or network administrator.</li> </ul>	
Your Brother machine's MAC address is not allowed.	Confirm that the Brother machine's MAC Address is allowed in the filter. You can find the MAC Address on your Brother machine's control panel.	Wireless
Your wireless LAN access	Enter the correct SSID name or Network Key manually.	Wireless
point/router is in stealth mode (not broadcasting the SSID).	<ul> <li>Check the SSID name or the Network Key in the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router and reconfigure the wireless network setup.</li> </ul>	
Your security settings (SSID/	Confirm the SSID and password.	Wi-Fi Direct
password) are not correct.	- When you are configuring the network manually, the SSID and password are displayed on your Brother machine. If your mobile device supports the manual configuration, the SSID and password will be displayed on your mobile device's screen.	
You are using Android <sup>™</sup> 4.0.	If your mobile device disconnects (approximately six minutes after using Wi-Fi Direct), try the one-push configuration using WPS (recommended) and set the Brother machine as a G/O.	Wi-Fi Direct
Your Brother machine is placed too far from your mobile device.	Move your Brother machine within about 3.3 feet (1 metre) of the mobile device when you configure the Wi-Fi Direct network settings.	Wi-Fi Direct
There are some obstructions (walls or furniture, for example) between your machine and the mobile device.	Move your Brother machine to an obstruction-free area.	Wi-Fi Direct
There is a wireless computer, Bluetooth- supported device, microwave oven, or digital cordless phone near the Brother machine or the mobile device.	Move other devices away from the Brother machine or the mobile device.	Wi-Fi Direct
If you have checked and tried all of the above, but still cannot complete the Wi-Fi	Turn your Brother machine off and back on. Then try to configure the Wi-Fi Direct settings again.	Wi-Fi Direct

Cause	Action	Interface
Direct configuration, do the following:	<ul> <li>If you are using your Brother machine as a client, confirm how many devices are allowed in the current Wi-Fi Direct network, and then check how many devices are connected.</li> </ul>	

#### **For Windows**

If your wireless connection has been interrupted, and you have checked and tried all of the above, we recommend using the Network Connection Repair Tool.

- Network Problems
- Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID is Not Broadcast
- Use Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup>

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine > Network Problems > My Brother Machine Cannot Print, Scan, or PC-FAX Receive over the Network

# My Brother Machine Cannot Print, Scan, or PC-FAX Receive over the Network

Cause	Action	Interface
Your security software blocks your machine's access to the network. (The Network scanning feature does not work. )	<ul> <li>Windows Configure the third-party Security/Firewall Software to allow Network scanning. To add port 54925 for Network scanning, type the information below: <ul> <li>In Name: Type any description, for example Brother NetScan.</li> <li>In Port number: Type 54925.</li> <li>In Protocol: UDP is selected.</li> </ul> </li> <li>See the instruction manual that came with your third-party Security/Firewall Software or contact the software manufacturer.</li> <li>Mac Launch ControlCenter2. Click the Model pop-up menu, and then select Other The Device Selector window appears. Reselect your network machine, make sure Status is idle, and then click OK.</li> </ul>	Wired/Wireless
Your security software blocks your machine's access to the network. (The network PC-Fax Receive feature does not work.) (Windows)	<ul> <li>Set the third-party Security/Firewall Software to allow PC-FAX Rx. To add port 54926 for Network PC-FAX Rx, type the information below:</li> <li>In Name: Type any description, for example Brother PC-FAX Rx.</li> <li>In Port number: Type 54926.</li> <li>In Protocol: UDP is selected.</li> <li>See the instruction manual that came with your third-party Security/ Firewall Software or contact the software manufacturer.</li> </ul>	Wired/Wireless
Your security software blocks your machine's access to the network.	Some security software might block access without showing a security alert dialog box even after successful installation. To allow access, see the instructions for your security software or ask the software manufacturer.	Wired/Wireless
Your Brother machine was not assigned an available IP address.	<ul> <li>Confirm the IP address and the Subnet Mask. Verify that both the IP addresses and Subnet Masks of your computer and the Brother machine are correct and located on the same network.</li> <li>For more information about how to verify the IP address and the Subnet Mask, ask your network administrator.</li> <li>Windows</li> <li>Confirm the IP address and the Subnet Mask using the Network Connection Repair Tool.</li> <li>Mac</li> <li>Check your network devices using the ping command. For more information on how to confirm your network settings, see <i>Related</i> <i>Information:Check Network Devices Using the Ping Command</i>.</li> </ul>	Wired/Wireless
The failed print job is still in your computer's print queue.	<ul> <li>If the failed print job is still in your computer's print queue, delete it.</li> <li>Otherwise, double-click the printer icon in the following folder and cancel all documents:</li> </ul>	Wired/Wireless

Cause	Action	Interface
	- Windows Vista	
	Click 🚱 (Start) > Control Panel > Hardware and Sound >	
	Printers.	
	- Windows 7	
	Click 🚱 (Start) > Devices and Printers > Printers and	
	Faxes.	
	- Windows 8	
	Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click <b>Settings &gt; Control Panel</b> . In the <b>Hardware and Sound</b> group, click <b>View devices and</b> <b>printers &gt; Printers</b> .	
	- Windows 10	
	Click 📑 > All apps > Windows System > Control Panel. In	
	the Hardware and Sound group, click View devices and printers > Printers.	
	- Windows Server 2008	
	Click Start > Control Panel > Printers.	
	- Windows Server 2012	
	Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click <b>Settings &gt; Control Panel</b> . In the <b>Hardware</b> group, click <b>View devices and printers &gt;</b> <b>Printers</b> .	
	- Windows Server 2012 R2	
	Click <b>Control Panel</b> on the <b>Start</b> screen. In the <b>Hardware</b> group, click <b>View devices and printers</b> .	
	- OS X v10.9.5, 10.10.x, 10.11.x	
	Click System Preferences > Printers & Scanners.	
Your Brother machine is not connected to the wireless network.	Print the WLAN Report to check the error code on the printed report.	Wireless

If you have checked and tried all of the above, but your Brother machine still cannot print and scan, uninstall the Brother software and drivers and reinstall them.

- Network Problems
- Print the WLAN Report
- Use the Network Connection Repair Tool (Windows)
- Wireless LAN Report Error Codes
- Check Network Devices Using the Ping Command
- I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine > Network Problems > I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly

# I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly

Check	Action	Interface
Check that your Brother	Check the following:	Wired/Wireless
machine, access point/ router, or network hub is	• The power cord is connected correctly and the Brother machine is turned on.	
turned on.	<ul> <li>The access point/router or hub is turned on and its link button is blinking.</li> </ul>	
	All protective packaging has been removed from the machine.	
	The ink cartridges are installed correctly.	
	The Scanner Cover and the Jam Clear Cover are fully closed.	
	<ul> <li>Paper is inserted correctly in the paper tray.</li> </ul>	
	(For wired networks) A network cable is securely connected to the Brother machine and to the router or hub.	
Check that you can "ping" the Brother machine from your	Ping the Brother machine from your computer using the IP address or the node name in the Windows command prompt or Mac Terminal application:	Wired/Wireless
computer.	<pre>ping <ipaddress> or <nodename>.</nodename></ipaddress></pre>	
	<ul> <li>Successful: Your Brother machine is working correctly and connected to the same network as your computer.</li> </ul>	
	Unsuccessful: Your Brother machine is not connected to the same network as your computer.	
	(Windows)	
	Ask the network administrator and use the Network Connection Repair Tool to fix the IP address and the subnet mask.	
	(Mac)	
	Confirm that the IP address and the Subnet Mask are set correctly.	
Check that your Brother machine is connected to the wireless network.	Print the WLAN Report to check the error code on the printed report.	Wireless

If you have checked and tried all of the above but you are still having problems, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router to find the SSID and the Network Key information and set them correctly.

- Network Problems
- · Check Network Devices Using the Ping Command
- Print the Network Configuration Report
- Print the WLAN Report
- Use the Network Connection Repair Tool (Windows)
- My Brother Machine Cannot Print, Scan, or PC-FAX Receive over the Network
- Wireless LAN Report Error Codes

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine > Network Problems > I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly > Check Network Devices Using the Ping Command

# **Check Network Devices Using the Ping Command**

Check the IP addresses of both your computer and your Brother machine, and then confirm whether the network is operating correctly.

>> Configure the IP Address on your computer (Windows)

- >> Configure the IP Address on your computer (Mac)
- >> Configure the IP Address on your Brother machine

#### Configure the IP Address on your computer (Windows)

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - Windows Vista and Windows7

Click (S)/Start > All Programs > Accessories > Command Prompt

• Windows 8

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Search > Command Prompt**.

• Windows 10

#### Click -> All apps > Windows System > Command Prompt.

- 2. Type "ipconfig" and then press the Enter key on your keyboard.
- 3. Confirm the values for the IPv4 address and subnet mask.
- 4. Type "exit" and then press the Enter key on your keyboard.

#### Configure the IP Address on your computer (Mac)

- 1. Select **System Preferences** from the Apple menu.
- 2. Click Network > Advanced > TCP/IP
- 3. Confirm the values for the IPv4 address and subnet mask.

#### Configure the IP Address on your Brother machine

Print the Network Configuration Report, and confirm the values for the IP address and subnet mask.

<ip settings=""></ip>		
IP Address	192.168.11.250	(set manually)
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	_
IP Gateway	192.168.100.200	
Boot Method	STATIC	
Boot Tries	3	
IP Filter	Disabled	

Check the IP addresses for both your computer and your Brother machine. Confirm that the network address portions are the same. For example, if the subnet mask is "255.255.255.0", it is normal for only the host address portions to be different.

	Network Address	Host Address	
IP Address	192.168.100.	250	Set the final number, which corresponds to "0" in the subnet mask, to 1–254.
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.	0	Usually, there are no problems when the subnet mask is "255.255.255.0". Use the same value for all of your computers.

**Related Information** 

• I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly

• My Brother Machine Cannot Print, Scan, or PC-FAX Receive over the Network

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine > Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> Problems

# Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> Problems

Difficulty	Suggestions
My Brother machine is not displayed in the printer list.	Make sure your machine is turned on.
	Confirm that Google Cloud Print <sup>™</sup> is enabled.
	Confirm that your machine is registered with Google Cloud Print <sup>™</sup> . If it is not registered, try to register again.
I cannot print.	Make sure your machine is turned on.
	Confirm your network settings. See Related Information.
	Certain files may not be printable, or may not appear exactly as they are displayed.
I cannot register my Brother machine with Google Cloud Print <sup>™</sup> .	Make sure your machine is connected to a network with Internet access.
	Verify that the date and time are set correctly on your machine.
I do not see a confirmation message on my Brother machine when I try to register with Google Cloud Print <sup>™</sup> , even after repeating the registration steps.	Make sure your Brother machine is idle while you are registering with Google Cloud Print <sup>™</sup> .

- If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine
- Troubleshooting

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine > AirPrint Problems

# **AirPrint Problems**

Difficulty	Suggestions
My Brother machine is not displayed in the printer list.	Make sure your Brother machine is turned on.
	Confirm the network settings. See Related Information.
	Move the mobile device closer to the wireless access point/router, or to your Brother machine.
I cannot print.	Make sure your Brother machine is turned on.
	Confirm the network settings. See Related Information.
I am trying to print a multiple-page document from an	Make sure you are running the latest version of iOS.
Apple device, but ONLY the first page is printing.	Refer to the following Apple support article for more information about AirPrint: <u>support.apple.com/kb/HT4356</u> .

- If You Are Having Difficulty with Your Machine
- Troubleshooting

Home > Troubleshooting > Check the Machine Information

# **Check the Machine Information**

Follow these instructions to check your Brother machine's serial number, firmware version, and firmware update.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Machine Info.].
- 2. Press one of the following options:
  - [Serial No.] Check your machine's serial number.
  - [Firmware Version]

Check your machine's firmware version.

• [Firmware Update]

Update your machine to the latest firmware.

- [Firmware Auto Check] View firmware information on the Home screen.
- 3. Press

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press 🎦 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Machine Info.].
- 2. Press one of the following options:
  - [Serial No.]

Check your machine's serial number.

• [Firmware Version]

Check your machine's firmware version.

• [Firmware Update]

Update your machine to the latest firmware.

• [Firmware Auto Check]

View firmware information on the Home screen.

3. Press

#### Related Information

Troubleshooting

# **Reset Your Brother Machine**

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 🎦 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Reset].
- 2. Press the reset option you want to use.
- 3. Press [OK] for two seconds to reboot the machine.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Reset].
- 2. Press the reset option you want to use.
- 3. Press [OK] for two seconds to reboot the machine.

- Troubleshooting
- Reset Functions Overview
- Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report

▲ Home > Troubleshooting > Reset Your Brother Machine > Reset Functions Overview

# **Reset Functions Overview**

The following reset functions are available:

1. [Machine Reset]

You can reset all the machine's settings that you have changed, such as Date and Time and Ring Delay. The Address Book, Fax Reports, and Call History will remain.

2. [Network]

Reset the print server back to its default factory settings (includes Password and IP Address information).

3. [Address Book & Fax]

Address Book & Fax resets the following settings:

Address Book

(Address Book and Setup Groups)

Programmed fax jobs in the memory

(Delayed Fax and Delayed Batch Transmission)

Station ID

(Name and Number)

- Remote Fax Options (Fax Forwarding)
- Report

(Transmission Verification Report, Address Book and Fax Journal)

History

(Caller ID history (Not available for Taiwan and some countries) and Outgoing Call)

- Faxes in memory
- 4. [All Settings]

Use the Settings Reset function to reset all machine's settings to the settings originally set at the factory. Brother strongly recommends you perform this operation when you dispose of the machine.

Unplug the interface cable before you choose [Network] or [All Settings].

- Reset Your Brother Machine
- Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance

# **Routine Maintenance**

- Replace the Ink Cartridges
- Clean Your Brother Machine
- Check Your Brother Machine
- Correct the Paper Feed to Clear Vertical Lines
- Change the Print Setting Options When Having Printing Problems
- Pack and Ship Your Brother Machine

Home > Routine Maintenance > Replace the Ink Cartridges

# **Replace the Ink Cartridges**

Your Brother machine is equipped with an ink dot counter. The ink dot counter automatically monitors the level of ink in each of the four cartridges. When the machine detects an ink cartridge is running out of ink, the machine will display a message.

The LCD displays which ink cartridge is low or needs replacing. Be sure to follow the LCD prompts to replace the ink cartridges in the correct order.

Even though the machine tells you to replace an ink cartridge, there will be a small amount of ink left in the ink cartridge. It is necessary to keep some ink in the ink cartridge to prevent air from drying out and damaging the print head assembly.

# 

If ink gets in your eyes, wash it out with water at once and call a doctor if you are concerned.

# IMPORTANT

Brother strongly recommends that you do not refill the ink cartridges provided with your machine. We also strongly recommend that you continue to use only Brother Original replacement ink cartridges. Use or attempted use of potentially incompatible ink and/or cartridges in the Brother machine may cause damage to the machine and/or may result in unsatisfactory print quality. Our warranty coverage does not apply to any problem that is caused by the use of unauthorised third-party ink and/or cartridges. To protect your investment and obtain premium performance from the Brother machine, we strongly recommend the use of Brother Original ink cartridges.

1. Open the ink cartridge cover (1).

If one or more of the ink cartridges needs replacing, the LCD displays [Black and White Print Only] or [Replace Ink].



If the black cartridge is empty, the only message that will appear is [Replace Ink]. You must replace the black cartridge.

2. Press the lock release lever to release the cartridge colour indicated on the LCD and remove the cartridge from the machine, as shown in the illustration.



3. Open the new ink cartridge bag for the colour indicated on the LCD, and take out the ink cartridge.

# IMPORTANT

• DO NOT touch the cartridge in the area indicated (1); this can prevent the machine from detecting the cartridge.



• Quickly shake just the **black** ink cartridge horizontally 15 times as shown, before inserting it into the machine.



4. Insert the ink cartridge in the direction of the arrow on the label. Each colour has its own correct position.



5. Gently push the area marked "PUSH" until the ink cartridge locks into place, and then close the ink cartridge cover.



The machine will automatically reset the ink dot counter.

- If you replaced an ink cartridge, for example, the Black cartridge, the LCD may ask you to verify that it is a brand new one (for example, [Did you change Black]). For each new cartridge you installed, select [Yes] to reset the ink dot counter for that colour. If the ink cartridge you installed is not a brand new one, be sure to select [No].
- If the LCD displays [No Ink Cartridge] or [Cannot Detect] after you install the ink cartridge, check that the ink cartridge is installed correctly. Remove the ink cartridge and reinstall it slowly until it locks into place.

#### IMPORTANT

- DO NOT shake the ink cartridges. If ink stains your skin or clothing, wash with soap or detergent at once.
- DO NOT take out ink cartridges if you do not need to replace them; the machine will not know the quantity of ink left in the cartridge.
- DO NOT touch the cartridge insertion slots; the ink may stain your skin.
- If you mix the colours by installing an ink cartridge in the wrong position, the LCD shows [Wrong Ink Colour].

Check which ink cartridges are not matched by colour to their ink cartridge positions and move them to their proper positions.

- When you open an ink cartridge, install it in the machine and use it up within six months of installation. Use unopened ink cartridges by the expiration date written on the cartridge package.
- DO NOT dismantle or tamper with the ink cartridge; this can cause the ink to leak out of the cartridge.

- Routine Maintenance
- Error and Maintenance Messages
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems
- Pack and Ship Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Clean Your Brother Machine

# **Clean Your Brother Machine**

- Clean the Scanner
- Clean the Print Head from Your Brother Machine
- Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Windows)
- Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Mac)
- Clean the Machine's LCD
- Clean the Outside of the Machine
- Clean the Machine's Printer Platen
- Clean the Paper Feed Rollers
- Clean the Base Pad
- Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers
- Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers for Paper Tray #2

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Clean Your Brother Machine > Clean the Scanner

# **Clean the Scanner**

- 1. Unplug the machine from the electrical socket.
- 2. Lift the document cover (1). Clean the scanner glass (2) and the white plastic (3) with a soft lint-free cloth moistened with water.



3. In the ADF unit, clean the white bar (1) and the glass strip (2) with a lint-free cloth moistened with water.



4. (MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW) Open the scanner glass cover (1), and clean the white bar (2) and the glass strip (3) with a soft lint-free cloth moistened with water.



In addition to cleaning the scanner glass and glass strip with a non-flammable glass cleaner, run your fingertip over the glass to see if you can feel anything on it. If you feel dirt or debris, clean the glass again concentrating on that area. You may need to repeat the cleaning process three or four times. To test, make a copy after each cleaning attempt.



When there is a spot of dirt or correction fluid on the glass strip, the printed sample shows a vertical line.



After the glass strip is cleaned, the vertical line is gone.

- Clean Your Brother Machine
- Telephone and Fax problems
- Other Problems

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Clean Your Brother Machine > Clean the Print Head from Your Brother Machine

# **Clean the Print Head from Your Brother Machine**

To maintain good print quality, the machine automatically cleans the print head when needed. If there is a print quality problem, start the cleaning process manually.

- Clean the print head if there is a horizontal line or a blank space in the text or graphics on printed pages.
   Depending on the problem colour, select to clean Black only, three colours at a time (Yellow/Cyan/Magenta), or all four colours at once.
- Cleaning the print head consumes ink.
- Cleaning too often uses ink unnecessarily.

#### IMPORTANT

DO NOT touch the print head. Touching the print head may cause permanent damage and may void the print head's warranty.

#### >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Press [Ink] > [Print Head Cleaning].



- 2. Press [Black only], [Colour only], or [All].
- 3. Press [Normal], [Strong], or [Strongest].
- 4. Press [Start].

The machine cleans the print head.

- If you clean the print head and the print has not improved, try installing a new Brother Original replacement ink cartridge for each problem colour. Try cleaning the print head again. If the print has not improved, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.
  - You can also clean the print head from your computer.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Press [Ink] > [Print Head Cleaning].			
Ø	You can also press [Settings] > [Maintenance] > [Print Head Cleaning].		
2.	. Press [Black only], [Colour only], or [All].		
3.	<pre>Press [Normal], [Strong], or [Strongest].</pre>		
4			

4. Press [Start].

The machine cleans the print head.

- If you clean the print head and the print has not improved, try installing a new Brother Original replacement ink cartridge for each problem colour. Try cleaning the print head again. If the print has not improved, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.
  - You can also clean the print head from your computer.

- Clean Your Brother Machine
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems
- Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Windows)
- Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Mac)

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Clean Your Brother Machine > Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Windows)

# Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Windows)

To maintain good print quality, the machine automatically cleans the print head when needed. If there is a print quality problem, start the cleaning process manually.

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - For Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008

Click (Start) > Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers.

• For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2

#### Click (Start) > Devices and Printers.

• For Windows 8

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.

• For Windows Server 2012

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware** group, click **View devices and printers**.

For Windows Server 2012 R2

Click Control Panel on the Start screen. In the Hardware group, click View devices and printers.

For Windows 10

Click **All apps > Windows System > Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.

2. Right-click the **Brother MFC-XXXX Printer** icon (where XXXX is your model name), and then select **Printing preferences**. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver.

The printer driver dialog box appears.

- 3. Click the Maintenance tab.
- 4. Select one of the following options:

Option	Description
Check Print Quality	Use to print the test page and check the print quality.
Print Head Cleaning	Use to start the cleaning process manually. Select if a line or blank spaces appear in text or graphics on the test page.

- 5. Do one of the following:
  - If you selected the Check Print Quality... option, click Start.
     The machine prints the test page.
  - If you selected the Print Head Cleaning... option, select the Black only, Colour only, or All option for the cleaning type, and then click Next.
- 6. Select the Normal, Strong, or Strongest option for the cleaning strength, and then click Next.
- 7. Click Start.

The machine starts cleaning.

- Clean Your Brother Machine
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems
- · Clean the Print Head from Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Clean Your Brother Machine > Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Mac)

# Clean the Print Head from Your Computer (Mac)

To maintain good print quality, the machine automatically cleans the print head when needed. If there is a print quality problem, start the cleaning process manually.

- 1. Select **System Preferences** from the Apple menu.
- 2. Select Printers & Scanners, and then select the machine.
- 3. Click the Options & Supplies button.
- Click the Utility tab, and then click the Open Printer Utility button. The Status Monitor screen appears.
- 5. Click the Control menu, and then select Maintenance.
- 6. Select one of the following options:

Option	Description
Check Print Quality	Use to print the test page and check the print quality.
Print Head Cleaning	Use to start the cleaning process manually. Select if a line or blank spaces appear in text or graphics on the test page.

- 7. Do one of the following:
  - If you selected the **Check Print Quality...** option, click **Start**. The machine prints the test page.
  - If you selected the **Print Head Cleaning...** option, select **Black only**, **Color only**, or **All** option for the cleaning type, and then click **Next**.
- 8. Select the Normal, Strong, or Strongest option for the cleaning strength, and then click Next.
- 9. Click Start.

The machine starts cleaning.

- Clean Your Brother Machine
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems
- Clean the Print Head from Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Clean Your Brother Machine > Clean the Machine's LCD

# **Clean the Machine's LCD**

## IMPORTANT

DO NOT use liquid cleaners (including ethanol).

- 1. Press and hold down (b) to turn off the machine. The LCD displays [Shutting Down] for a few seconds before the power goes off.
- 2. Clean the LCD with a dry, soft lint-free cloth.





Clean Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Clean Your Brother Machine > Clean the Outside of the Machine

# **Clean the Outside of the Machine**

### IMPORTANT

- Use neutral detergents. Cleaning with volatile liquids such as thinner or benzine will damage the outside surface of the machine.
- DO NOT use cleaning materials that contain ammonia.
- DO NOT use isopropyl alcohol to remove dirt from the control panel. It may crack the panel.
- 1. If the paper support flap is open, close it, and then close the paper support.
- 2. Pull the paper trays (1) completely out of the machine as shown by the arrow.





3. Wipe the outside of the machine with a dry, lint-free cloth to remove dust.



4. Remove the tray top cover and remove anything that is stuck inside the paper tray.



5. Wipe the inside and the outside of the paper tray with a dry, lint-free cloth to remove dust.



6. Replace the tray top cover and slowly push the paper tray completely into the machine.

# Related Information

Clean Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Clean Your Brother Machine > Clean the Machine's Printer Platen

# **Clean the Machine's Printer Platen**

# **WARNING**

Be sure to unplug the machine from the electrical socket before cleaning the printer platen to avoid an electrical shock.

- 1. Using both hands, use the finger holds on each side of the machine to lift the scanner cover into the open position.
- 2. Clean the machine's printer platen (1) and the area around it, wiping off scattered ink with a dry, soft lint-free cloth.



#### IMPORTANT

DO NOT bend or apply too much pressure on the nine tabs (2). They could be damaged.

3. Gently close the scanner cover using both hands.



4. Reconnect the power cord.



- Clean Your Brother Machine
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Clean Your Brother Machine > Clean the Paper Feed Rollers

# **Clean the Paper Feed Rollers**

If the paper feed rollers are stained with ink or have a buildup of paper dust, it may cause paper feed problems.

- 1. Unplug the machine from the electrical socket.
- 2. If the paper support flap is open, close it, and then close the paper support.
- 3. Pull the paper tray (1) completely out of the machine as shown by the arrow.



4. Lift the paper support (1), and then pull it at an angle completely out of the machine as shown by the arrow.



5. Clean the front side of the Paper Feed Rollers (1) with a soft lint-free cloth moistened with water, using a side-to-side motion. After cleaning, wipe the rollers with a dry, soft lint-free cloth to remove all moisture.



 Lift the Jam Clear Flap (2), and then clean the back side of the Paper Feed Rollers (1) with a soft lint-free cloth moistened with water. After cleaning, wipe the rollers with a dry, soft lint-free cloth to remove all moisture.



7. Put the paper support firmly back in the machine. Make sure you fit the paper support into the channels.



- 8. Slowly push the paper tray completely into the machine.
- 9. Reconnect the power cord.

Ø

Do not use the machine again until the rollers are dry. Using the machine before the rollers are dry may cause paper feed problems.

- Clean Your Brother Machine
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems

#### ▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Clean Your Brother Machine > Clean the Base Pad

# **Clean the Base Pad**

Cleaning the Base Pad periodically may prevent the machine from feeding multiple sheets of paper when there are only a few sheets of paper left in the tray.

- 1. If the paper support flap is open, close it, and then close the paper support.
- 2. Pull the paper trays (1) completely out of the machine as shown by the arrow.



Clean the Base Pad (1) with a soft lint-free cloth moistened with water.
 After cleaning, wipe the pad with a dry, soft lint-free cloth to remove all moisture.



4. Slowly push the paper trays completely into the machine.

- Clean Your Brother Machine
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Clean Your Brother Machine > Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers

# **Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers**

Cleaning the paper pick-up rollers periodically may prevent paper jams by ensuring that paper feeds properly.

- 1. Unplug the machine from the electrical socket.
- 2. If the paper support flap is open, close it, and then close the paper support.
- 3. Pull the paper tray (1) completely out of the machine as shown by the arrow.



4. Lift the paper support (1), and then pull it at an angle completely out of the machine as shown by the arrow.



5. Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers (1) with a soft lint-free cloth moistened with water. Slowly turn the rollers so that the whole surface is cleaned. After cleaning, wipe the rollers with a dry, soft lint-free cloth to remove all moisture.



6. Put the paper support firmly back in the machine. Make sure you fit the paper support into the channels.



- 7. Slowly push the paper tray completely into the machine.
- 8. Reconnect the power cord.

- Clean Your Brother Machine
- Error and Maintenance Messages
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems
▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Clean Your Brother Machine > Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers for Paper Tray #2

# Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers for Paper Tray #2

Related Models: MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Unplug the machine from the electrical socket.
- 2. If the paper support flap is open, close it, and then close the paper support.
- 3. Pull tray #2 (1) completely out of the machine as shown by the arrow.



4. Clean the paper pick-up rollers for tray #2 (1) with a soft lint-free cloth moistened with water. Slowly turn the rollers so that the whole surface is cleaned. After cleaning, wipe the rollers with a dry, soft lint-free cloth to remove all moisture.



- 5. Slowly push tray #2 completely into the machine.
- 6. Reconnect the power cord.

# Related Information

Clean Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Check Your Brother Machine

## **Check Your Brother Machine**

- Check the Print Quality
- Check the Print Alignment from Your Brother Machine
- Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Windows)
- Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)
- Check the Ink Volume
- Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Windows)
- Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Mac)

Home > Routine Maintenance > Check Your Brother Machine > Check the Print Quality

## **Check the Print Quality**

If faded or streaked colours and text appear or if text is missing on your printouts, the print head nozzles may be clogged. Print the Print Quality Check Sheet and look at the nozzle check pattern.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Press [Ink] > [Improve Print Quality] > [Check Print Quality].

 Improve Print Quality]
 [Settings] > [Maintenance] > [Improve Print Quality] > [Check Print Quality].

2. Press [Start].

The machine prints the Print Quality Check Sheet.

- 3. Check the quality of the four colour blocks on the sheet.
- 4. The touchscreen asks about the print quality. Do one of the following:
  - If all lines are clear and visible, press [No], and then press to finish the Print Quality check.
  - If lines are missing (see Poor, below), press [Yes].

ΟΚ

			-	_	-	-	-	=	_	_	
_	_	_	_	_	_	-	-	=	_	_	
_											
_	_	_	_	_	_	=	=	=	-	_	_
_	_	_	_	_	_	-	=	-	-	_	_
_	_	_	_	_	_	-	-	_	-	_	_
_									_	_	
_										_	-
=									_	=	_
=										_	_
										_	=
_	_										
_											_
_											
_											
_	_	_	_	_	-	_	-	=	-	_	_
_	_	_	_	_	=	=	_	=	-	_	_
_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	-	_	_
_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	=	-	_	_
_	-	_	-	_	_	_	=	Ξ	_	_	_
_	-	_	-	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_
_	-	_	-	_	_	_	_	Ξ	_	_	_
										_	-
_										_	-
_										_	_
=	=									=	_
=	=									=	_
	_	-								_	=
_	-	=									
_	_	-									_
_		_	_	-	-	_	_	-			
	_										
_	-	_	_	_	-	_	-		_	_	
_	_	_	_	_	_	_		_	-	_	_

Poor

			_	_	-	_	-	=	-	_	_	
-	_	_	=	=	_	_	_	Ξ	-	_	_	
-		_	=	=	_		_	Ξ	_	_		
-	_	_	=	=	_	-	-	Ξ	_	_		
-	_	_	-	=	_	-	-	Ξ	_	_	_	
-	_	_	-	=	_	-	-	=	_		_	
											_	
-	_	_	-	=	=	-	_	Ξ	_	-	_	
-	-	_	-	=	=	_	_	-	_	_	_	
-	-	_	-	=	=	_	_	_	-	_	_	
-	_	_	-	=	=	_	-	=	-	-	_	
-	_	_	_	=	=		-	Ξ	-	_	_	
-	_	_	_	-	=	_	-	Ξ	_	_	_	
-	-	_	_	-	=	=	-	Ξ	_	_	_	
-	-	_	_	-	=	=	-	Ξ		_	_	
-	-	_	_	_	=	=	-	Ξ	_	_	_	
-	-		_	_	=	=	-	Ξ	_	_	_	
-	-	_	_	_	=	=	_	Ξ	_		_	
-	-	_	_	_	=	=	_	Ξ	_	-	_	
-	-	_	_	_	_	=	_	Ξ	_	-	_	
-	-	_	_	=	_	=	-	Ξ	-	_	-	
-	-	_	_	=	=	=	-	Ξ	-	_	_	
-	_	_	_	=	=	_	-	Ξ	-	_	_	
-		_	_	=	=	_	-	Ξ	-		_	
-	-	_	_		=	=	-	Ξ	_	_	_	
-	_	_	_		_	_	-	-	-	_		
-	-	_	_	_	=	=	-	Ξ	_	_	_	
-	-	_	_	_	=	=	_	Ξ		-	_	
-		_	_	_	=	=	_	=	_	-	_	
-	-	_	_	_	=	=	_	=	_	-	_	
	-	_	_	_	=	=	_	Ξ	_	-	_	
_	-	_	_	_	=	_	_	Ξ	-	-	_	
_	_	_	_	_	_		_					

- 5. The touchscreen asks you to check the print quality of each colour. Press the number of the pattern (1–4) that most closely matches the printing result.
- 6. Do one of the following:
  - If print head cleaning is needed, press [Start] to start the cleaning procedure.
  - If print head cleaning is not needed, the Maintenance screen reappears on the touchscreen. Press
- 7. After the cleaning procedure is finished, the touchscreen asks if you want to print the Print Quality Check Sheet again. Press [Yes], and then press [Start].

The machine prints the Print Quality Check Sheet again. Check the quality of the four colour blocks on the sheet again.

If you clean the print head and the print has not improved, try installing a new Brother Original replacement ink cartridge for each problem colour. Try cleaning the print head again. If the print has not improved, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.

### IMPORTANT

Ø

DO NOT touch the print head. Touching the print head may cause permanent damage and may void the print head's warranty.

<sup>\*</sup> When a print head nozzle is clogged, the printed sample looks like this.



After the print head nozzle is cleaned, the lines are gone.



### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Ink] > [Improve Print Quality] > [Check Print Quality].

   You can also press [Settings] > [Maintenance] > [Improve Print Quality] > [Check Print Quality].
- 2. Press [Start].

The machine prints the Print Quality Check Sheet.

- 3. Check the quality of the four colour blocks on the sheet.
- 4. The touchscreen asks about the print quality. Do one of the following:
  - If all lines are clear and visible, press [No], and then press  $\square$  to finish the Print Quality check.
  - If lines are missing (see Poor, below), press [Yes].

ок

			 _
===			 _
===			
===			
	==:		
===			
===			
===			
===		_	
===		_	 _
===			 
===			 
	==:		 

Poor
===============
============

- 5. The touchscreen asks you to check the print quality of each colour. Press the number of the pattern (1–4) that most closely matches the printing result.
- 6. Do one of the following:
  - If print head cleaning is needed, press [Start] to start the cleaning procedure.
  - If print head cleaning is not needed, the Maintenance screen reappears on the touchscreen. Press
- 7. After the cleaning procedure is finished, the touchscreen asks if you want to print the Print Quality Check Sheet again. Press [Yes], and then press [Start].

The machine prints the Print Quality Check Sheet again. Check the quality of the four colour blocks on the sheet again.

If you clean the print head and the print has not improved, try installing a new Brother Original replacement ink cartridge for each problem colour. Try cleaning the print head again. If the print has not improved, contact Brother customer service or your local Brother dealer.

### **IMPORTANT**

DO NOT touch the print head. Touching the print head may cause permanent damage and may void the print head's warranty.

When a print head nozzle is clogged, the printed sample looks like this.



After the print head nozzle is cleaned, the lines are gone.



- Check Your Brother Machine
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Check Your Brother Machine > Check the Print Alignment from Your Brother Machine

# **Check the Print Alignment from Your Brother Machine**

If your printed text becomes blurred or images become faded after transporting the machine, adjust the print alignment.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 2. Press [Next].
- 3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the paper size that needs a print alignment adjustment, and then press it.
- 4. Press [Basic alignment] or [Advanced alignment].
- 5. Load the selected paper size in the tray, and then press  $\cite{Start]}.$

The machine prints the Alignment Check Sheet.



For the (A) pattern, press ▲ or ▼ to display the number of the test print with the fewest visible vertical stripes (1-9), and then press it (in the example above, row number 6 is the best choice). Press [OK].

Repeat this step for the rest of the patterns.





After the print alignment is adjusted correctly, text looks like this.



7. Press

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Press [Ink] > [Improve Print Quality] > [Alignment].

You can also press [Alignment].

- [Settings] > [Maintenance] > [Improve Print Quality] >
- 2. Press [Next].
- 3. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the paper size that needs a print alignment adjustment, and then press it.
- 4. Press [Basic alignment] or [Advanced alignment].
- 5. Load the selected paper size in the tray, and then press [Start].

The machine prints the Alignment Check Sheet.

	(/	4)	
1			
3			2
5			4
7			8
9			5

6. For the "A" pattern, swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the number of the test print with the least visible vertical stripes (1-9), and then press it (in the example, number 6 is the best choice). Press [OK].

Repeat this step for the rest of the patterns.

When the print alignment is not adjusted correctly, text looks blurry like this.



After the print alignment is adjusted correctly, text looks like this.



7. Press



- Check Your Brother Machine
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Check Your Brother Machine > Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Windows)

# Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Windows)

If your printed text becomes blurred or images become faded after transporting the machine, adjust the print alignment.

- 1. Do one of the following:
  - For Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008

Click (Start) > Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers.

For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2

#### Click (Start) > Devices and Printers.

• For Windows 8

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.

• For Windows Server 2012

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware** group, click **View devices and printers**.

For Windows Server 2012 R2

Click Control Panel on the Start screen. In the Hardware group, click View devices and printers.

For Windows 10

Click **All apps > Windows System > Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.

- 2. Right-click the **Brother MFC-XXXX Printer** icon (where XXXX is your model name), and then select **Printer properties**. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver.
- 3. Click the **General** tab, and then click the **Printing Preferences...** or **Preferences...** button. The printer driver dialog box appears.
- 4. Click the Advanced tab.
- 5. Click the Other Print Options button.
- 6. Select the Reduce Uneven Lines option.
- 7. Select one of the following options:

Option	Description
A3, JIS B4, Ledger	Adjust the print alignment for A3, JIS B4 (available only for some countries) and Ledger size paper.
A4, Letter	Adjust the print alignment for A4 and Letter size paper.
Other Sizes	Adjust the print alignment for other paper sizes.

- 8. Click **OK** to return to the printer driver window.
- 9. Click OK.

- Check Your Brother Machine
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems
- Change the Print Setting Options When Having Printing Problems

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Check Your Brother Machine > Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)

# Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)

If your printed text becomes blurred or images become faded after transporting the machine, adjust the print alignment.

- 1. From an application, such as Apple TextEdit, click the File menu, and then select Print.
- 2. Select Brother MFC-XXXX (where XXXX is your model name).

For more page setup options, click the **Show Details** button.

- Click the application pop-up menu, and then select Print Settings.
   The Print Settings options appear.
- 4. Click the Advanced print settings list.
- 5. Click the Reduce Uneven Lines menu.
- 6. Select one of the following options:

Option	Description
A3, JIS B4, Ledger	Adjust the print alignment for A3, JIS B4 (available only for some countries) and Ledger size paper.
A4, Letter	Adjust the print alignment for A4 and Letter size paper.
Other Sizes	Adjust the print alignment for other paper sizes.

- 7. Change other printer settings, if needed.
- 8. Click Print.

Ø



- Check Your Brother Machine
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems
- Change the Print Setting Options When Having Printing Problems

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Check Your Brother Machine > Check the Ink Volume

## **Check the Ink Volume**

Although an ink volume icon appears on the machine's LCD, you can use the ink menu to see a large graph showing the ink left in each cartridge.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Press [Ink] > [Ink Volume]. The touchscreen displays the ink volume.

You can also press [] [Settings] > [Maintenance] > [Ink Volume].

 When the ink cartridge is near the end of its life or having a problem, one of the following icons is displayed.

The	nk cartridge is at the end of its life.
Ther	e is a problem with the ink cartridge.

 To check or print the model numbers of the ink cartridges, press (Back) to go back to the [Ink] menu screen.

Press [Ink Cartridge Model], and follow the instruction on the touchscreen.

# 2. Press

You can also check the ink volume from your computer.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

1. Press [Ink] > [Ink Volume]. The touchscreen displays the ink volume.

• You can also press Y [Settings] > [Maintenance] > [Ink Volume].

• When the ink cartridge is near the end of its life or having a problem, one of the following icons is displayed.

2	The ink level is low.
×	The ink cartridge is at the end of its life.
?	There is a problem with the ink cartridge.

• To check or print the model numbers of the ink cartridges, press (Back) to go back to the [Ink] menu screen.

**Press** [Ink Cartridge Model], and follow the instruction on the touchscreen.

## 2. Press

You can also check the ink volume from your computer.

- Check Your Brother Machine
- Touchscreen LCD Overview
- Settings Screen Overview
- Print a Document (Windows)
- Print a Document (Mac)
- Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Windows)

Home > Routine Maintenance > Check Your Brother Machine > Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Windows)

# Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Windows)

The Status Monitor utility is a configurable software tool for monitoring the status of one or more devices; it allows you to get immediate notification of errors.

- Do one of the following:
  - Double-click the 🎦 icon in the task tray.
  - Windows Vista and Windows 7

Click (Start) > All Programs > Brother > Brother Utilities.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **Tools** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Status Monitor**.

- Windows 8 and Windows 10

Click **Fig.** (Brother Utilities), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **Tools** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Status Monitor**.

😤 Brother S	Status Monitor 🛛 💌
Brother Mi	FC-XXXX 💌
	Ready
	Troubleshooting
	M C Y BK Looking for replacement supplies?

#### Troubleshooting

Click the Troubleshooting button to access the troubleshooting website.

#### Looking for replacement supplies?

Click the Looking for replacement supplies? button for more information on Brother original supplies.

#### **Error icons**

Icon	Description
<b>()</b>	The ink level is low.
8	The ink cartridge is at the end of its life.
0	There is a problem with the ink cartridge.

```
Related Information
```

Check Your Brother Machine

- Status Monitor Indicators and What They Mean (Windows)
- Turn Off the Show Status Monitor Feature (Windows)
- Turn Off the Status Monitor (Windows)
- Cancel a Print Job (Windows)
- Check the Ink Volume

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Check Your Brother Machine > Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Windows) > Status Monitor Indicators and What They Mean (Windows)

# Status Monitor Indicators and What They Mean (Windows)

When you start up your computer, the Brother Status Monitor icon appears on the task tray.

• A green icon indicates the normal stand-by condition.



• A yellow icon indicates a warning.



• A red icon indicates an error has occurred.



• A grey icon indicates the machine is offline.



### Related Information

Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Windows)

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Check Your Brother Machine > Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Windows) > Turn Off the Show Status Monitor Feature (Windows)

## **Turn Off the Show Status Monitor Feature (Windows)**

The Show Status Monitor feature lets you know if there is a problem with a device that your computer is monitoring. The default setting is **Only when printing from this PC**. To turn it off, follow these steps:

- 1. Right-click the (Brother Status Monitor) icon or window, select the Status Monitor Settings option, and then click Options.
  - The **Options** window appears.
- 2. Select the Basic tab, and then select Off for Show Status Monitor.
- 3. Click OK.

Ø

Even if the Show Status Monitor feature is turned off, you can check the machine's status at any time by displaying the Status Monitor.



• Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Windows)

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Check Your Brother Machine > Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Windows) > Turn Off the Status Monitor (Windows)

# Turn Off the Status Monitor (Windows)

- 1. Right-click the 🎦 (Brother Status Monitor) icon or window, and then select Exit.
- 2. Click **OK**.

### Related Information

Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Windows)

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Check Your Brother Machine > Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Mac)

# Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Mac)

Brother's Status Monitor utility program is a configurable software tool for monitoring the status of a device and notifying you immediately in the event of an error. You can also use Brother's Status Monitor to access Web Based Management.

- 1. Select System Preferences from the Apple menu.
- 2. Select **Printers & Scanners**, and then select the machine.
- 3. Click the **Options & Supplies** button.
- 4. Click the **Utility** tab, and then click the **Open Printer Utility** button. The Status Monitor screen appears.



#### Troubleshooting

Click the **Troubleshooting** button to access the Brother Solutions Center, offering FAQs and troubleshooting tips.

#### Visit the Genuine Supplies website

Click the Visit the Genuine Supplies website button for more information about Brother original supplies.

#### Updating the machine's status

To view the latest machine status while the **Status Monitor** window is open, click the **O** icon. To set the interval at which the software updates the machine status information, click the **Brother Status Monitor** menu, and then select **Preferences**.

#### Web Based Management (Network Connection Only)

Access the Web Based Management system by clicking the machine icon on the **Status Monitor** screen. You can use a standard web browser to manage your machine using Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP).

#### **Error icons**

Icon	Description
()	The ink level is low.
8	The ink cartridge is at the end of its life.

Icon	Description
2	There is a problem with the ink cartridge.

- Check Your Brother Machine
- Access Web Based Management

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Correct the Paper Feed to Clear Vertical Lines

# **Correct the Paper Feed to Clear Vertical Lines**

Adjust the paper feed to reduce vertical lines.

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

1. Press [Ink] > [Improve Print Quality] > [Correct Paper Feed].
You can also press [Settings] > [Maintenance] > [Improve Print Quality] > [Correct Paper Feed].
2. Press the [Next] button, and then follow the instructions on the touchscreen.
MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW
1. Press [Ink] > [Improve Print Quality] > [Correct Paper Feed].
You can also press [Settings] > [Maintenance] > [Improve Print Quality] > [Correct Paper Feed].
2. Press the [Next] button, and then follow the instructions on the touchscreen.
Related Information
Routine Maintenance

Other Problems

Home > Routine Maintenance > Change the Print Setting Options When Having Printing Problems

# **Change the Print Setting Options When Having Printing Problems**

If your print result is poor quality, select these options depending on your purpose. When these settings are selected, the printing speed is slower.

These options are available only when performing operations from the machine, such as copying. When printing from your computer, change the settings in the printer driver.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

Ø

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [Maintenance] > [Print Setting Options].
- 2. Press one of the following options:

Option	Description
Reduce Smudging	Select this option according to your paper type and whether you are using 1-sided or 2-sided printing if you have problems with smudged printouts or paper jams.
Reduce Uneven Lines	Select this option according to your paper size if you have problems with uneven lines.
Slow Drying Paper	Select this option if you use a type of plain paper on which ink dries slowly.

- 3. Follow the LCD menus.
- 4. Press

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [Maintenance] > [Print Setting Options].
- 2. Press one of the following options:

Option	Description
Reduce Smudging	Select this option according to your paper type and whether you are using 1-sided or 2-sided printing if you have problems with smudged printouts or paper jams.
Reduce Uneven Lines	Select this option according to your paper size if you have problems with uneven lines.
Slow Drying Paper	Select this option if you use a type of plain paper on which ink dries slowly.

3. Follow the LCD menus.

- Routine Maintenance
- Copy on Both Sides of the Paper (2-sided Copy)
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems
- Prevent Smudged Printouts and Paper Jams (Windows)

- Prevent Smudged Printouts and Paper Jams (Mac)
- Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Windows)
- Check the Print Alignment from Your Computer (Mac)
- Print Settings (Windows)
- Print Options (Mac)

▲ Home > Routine Maintenance > Pack and Ship Your Brother Machine

# Pack and Ship Your Brother Machine

- When you transport the machine, use the packing materials that came with your machine. If you do not pack the machine correctly, any damage that may occur in transit may not be covered by your warranty.
- The machine should be adequately insured with the carrier.

### IMPORTANT

It is important to allow the machine to "park" the print head after a print job. Listen carefully to the machine before unplugging it to make sure that all mechanical noises have stopped. Not allowing the machine to finish this parking process may lead to print problems and possible damage to the print head.

- 1. Unplug the machine from the electrical socket.
- 2. Using both hands, use the finger holds on each side of the machine to lift the scanner cover into the open position. Then unplug the machine from the telephone wall socket and take the telephone line cord out of the machine.
- 3. Unplug the interface cable from the machine, if it is connected.
- 4. Remove the orange protective part from its storage place inside the machine.



5. Gently close the scanner cover using the finger holds on each side.



- 6. Open the ink cartridge cover.
- 7. Press the ink release levers to release the ink cartridges and then take out the ink cartridges.
- 8. Install the orange protective part and then close the ink cartridge cover.



## IMPORTANT

• Make sure the plastic tab on the left side of the orange protective part (1) clicks securely into place (2).



- If you are not able to find the orange protective part, ship the machine without it. DO NOT leave the ink cartridges in the machine during shipping.
- 9. Wrap the machine in the bag.



10. Pack the machine in the original carton with the original packing material as shown below. Do not pack the used ink cartridge in the carton.



11. Close the carton and tape it shut.

- Routine Maintenance
- Replace the Ink Cartridges

#### Home > Machine Settings

# **Machine Settings**

Customise settings and features, create shortcuts, and work with options displayed on the machine's LCD to make your Brother machine a more efficient work tool.

- Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel
- Change Machine Settings from Your Computer

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel

# **Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel**

- In the Event of Power Failure (Memory Storage)
- General Settings
- Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut
- Print Reports
- Settings and Features Tables

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > In the Event of Power Failure (Memory Storage)

# In the Event of Power Failure (Memory Storage)

- · Your menu settings are stored permanently and will not be lost.
- Temporary settings (for example: Contrast and Overseas Mode) will be lost.
- The date and time and programmed fax timer jobs (for example: Delayed Fax) will be retained for approximately 24 hours.
- Other fax jobs in the machine's memory will not be lost.

### Related Information

Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings

- Adjust the Machine Volume
- Change for Daylight Saving Time Automatically
- Change for Daylight Saving Time Manually
- Set Sleep Mode Countdown
- · Set the Machine to Power Off Automatically
- Set the Date & Time
- Set the Time Zone
- Adjust the LCD Backlight Brightness
- Change How Long the LCD Backlight Stays On
- Set Your Station ID
- Set Tone or Pulse Dialling Mode
- Set a Prefix Dial Before Every Fax Number
- Prevent Dialling a Wrong Number (Dial Restriction)
- Reduce Printing Noise
- Change the Language Displayed on the LCD
- Change the Keyboard Setting

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Adjust the Machine Volume

# Adjust the Machine Volume

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [] [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Volume].
- 2. Press one of the following options:

Option	Description
Ring	Adjust the ring volume.
Веер	Adjust the volume when you press a button, make a mistake, or after you send or receive a fax.
Speaker	Adjust the speaker volume.

3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Off], [Low], [Med], or [High] option, and then press the option you want.

# 4. Press

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Volume].
- 2. Press one of the following options:

Option	Description
Ring	Adjust the ring volume.
Веер	Adjust the volume when you press a button, make a mistake, or after you send or receive a fax.
Speaker	Adjust the speaker volume.
Press the [Off], [Low], [Med], or [High] option.	

4. Press

3.



▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Change for Daylight Saving Time Automatically

# Change for Daylight Saving Time Automatically

You can program the machine to change automatically for Daylight Saving Time.

It will reset itself forward one hour in the spring, and backward one hour in the autumn. Make sure you have set the correct date and time in the [Date & Time] setting.

This feature is available only in some countries.

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 👔 [Settings].
- 2. Press 🕜 [Date & Time] > [Auto Daylight].
- 3. Press [On] or [Off].
- 4. Press

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings].
- Press () [Date & Time] > [Auto Daylight].
- 3. Press [On] or [Off].
- 4. Press

#### Related Information

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Change for Daylight Saving Time Manually

# Change for Daylight Saving Time Manually

You can program the machine to change for Daylight Saving Time.

When selecting [Forward Hour] it will forward the time by an hour and backward one hour when selecting [Backward Hour]. Make sure you have set the correct date and time in the [Date & Time] setting.

This feature is available only in some countries.

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 👔 [Settings].
- 2. Press 🕜 [Date & Time] > [Daylight Save].
- 3. Press [Forward Hour] or [Backward Hour].
- 4. Press

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings].
- 2. Press 🕜 [Date & Time] > [Daylight Save].
- 3. Press [Forward Hour] or [Backward Hour].
- 4. Press

#### Related Information

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Set Sleep Mode Countdown

# Set Sleep Mode Countdown

The Sleep Mode (or Power Save Mode) setting can reduce power consumption. When the machine is in Sleep Mode, it acts as though it is turned off. The machine will wake up and start printing when it receives a print job or a fax. Use these instructions to set a time delay (countdown) before the machine enters Sleep Mode.

- The timer will restart if any operation is carried out on the machine, such as receiving a fax or a print job.
- The factory setting is five minutes.
- When the machine goes into Sleep Mode, the LCD backlight turns off.
- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Sleep Mode].
- 2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [1Min], [2Mins], [3Mins], [5Mins], [10Mins], [30Mins], or [60Mins] option, and then press the option you want.
- 3. Press

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Sleep Mode].
- 2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [1Min], [2Mins], [3Mins], [5Mins], [10Mins], [30Mins], or [60Mins] option, and then press the option you want.
- 3. Press

- General Settings
- · Set the Machine to Power Off Automatically

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Set the Machine to Power Off Automatically

# Set the Machine to Power Off Automatically

The Auto Power Off feature can save power consumption. Set the amount of time that the machine will be in Sleep Mode before it automatically powers off. When this feature is set to [Off], you must power off the machine manually.

To turn on the machine after the Auto Power Off feature has turned it Off, press

The machine will not power off automatically when:

- The machine is connected to a telephone line.
- The machine is connected to a wired network.
- The machine is connected to a wireless network.
- [WLAN Enable] is set to [On] or [WLAN] is selected in the [Network I/F] setting.

#### >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 👔 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Auto Power Off].
- 2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Off], [1hour], [2hours], [4hours], or [8hours] option, and then press the option you want.
- 3. Press

Ø

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Auto Power Off].
- 2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Off], [1hour], [2hours], [4hours], or [8hours] option, and then press the option you want.
- 3. Press

- · General Settings
- · Set the Fax Journal's Interval Period
- Set Sleep Mode Countdown

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Set the Date & Time

# Set the Date & Time

The LCD displays the date and time. If they are not current, re-enter them. You can add the date and time to each fax you send by setting your Station ID.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings].
- 2. Press 🕑 [Date & Time].
- 3. Press [Date].
- 4. Enter the last two digits of the year on the touchscreen, and then press [OK].
- 5. Enter two digits for the month on the touchscreen, and then press [OK].
- 6. Enter two digits for the day on the touchscreen, and then press [OK].
- 7. Press [Clock Type].
- 8. Press [12h Clock] or [24h Clock].
- 9. Press [Time].
- 10. To enter the time, do one of the following:
  - If you selected [12h Clock], enter the time (in 12-hour format) using the touchscreen, and then press [AM] or [PM].

Press [OK].

• If you selected [24h Clock], enter the time (in 24-hour format) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].

(For example, enter 19:45 for 7:45 PM.)

```
11. Press
```

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings].
- 2. Press 🔗 [Date & Time].
- 3. Press [Date].
- 4. Enter the last two digits of the year on the touchscreen, and then press [OK].
- 5. Enter two digits for the month on the touchscreen, and then press [OK].
- 6. Enter two digits for the day on the touchscreen, and then press [OK].
- 7. Press [Clock Type].
- 8. Press [12h Clock] or [24h Clock].
- 9. Press [Time].
- 10. To enter the time, do one of the following:
  - If you selected [12h Clock], enter the time (in 12-hour format) using the touchscreen, and then press [AM] or [PM].
    - Press [OK].
  - If you selected [24h Clock], enter the time (in 24-hour format) using the touchscreen. Press [OK].

(For example, enter 19:45 for 7:45 PM.)

11. Press

- General Settings
- Register Your Machine with Google Cloud Print<sup>™</sup> Using Web Based Management
- Set Your Station ID

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Set the Time Zone

# Set the Time Zone

Set the time zone for your location on the machine.

#### >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 🎦 [Settings].
- 2. Press 🕜 [Date & Time] > [Time Zone].
- 3. Enter your time zone.
- 4. Press [OK].
- 5. Press

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings].
- 2. Press 🕜 [Date & Time] > [Time Zone].
- 3. Enter your time zone.
- 4. Press [OK].
- 5. Press

### Related Information
▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Adjust the LCD Backlight Brightness

## Adjust the LCD Backlight Brightness

If you are having difficulty reading the LCD, changing the brightness setting may help.

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [LCD Settings] > [Backlight].
- 2. Press the [Light], [Med], or [Dark] option.
- 3. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [LCD Settings] > [Backlight].
- 2. Press the [Light], [Med], or [Dark] option.
- 3. Press

## Related Information

General Settings

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Change How Long the LCD Backlight Stays On

## Change How Long the LCD Backlight Stays On

You can set how long the LCD backlight stays on after the last finger press.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [LCD Settings] > [Dim Timer].
- 2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [10Secs], [30Secs], [1Min], [2Mins], [3Mins], or [5Mins] option, and then press the option you want.
- 3. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [LCD Settings] > [Dim Timer].
- 2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [10Secs], [30Secs], [1Min], [2Mins], [3Mins], or [5Mins] option, and then press the option you want.
- 3. Press

#### Related Information

General Settings

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Set Your Station ID

## Set Your Station ID

Set the machine's Station ID if you want the date and time to appear on each fax you send.

- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
- >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Station ID].
- 2. Press [Fax].
- 3. Enter your fax number (up to 20 digits) on the touchscreen, and then press [OK].
- 4. Press [Name].
- 5. Enter your name (up to 20 characters) using the touchscreen, and then press [OK].
  - Press A 1 @ to cycle between letters, numbers and special symbols. (The available characters may differ depending on your country.)
    - If you entered an incorrect character and want to change it, press < or ▶ to move the cursor to it. Press</li>
       And then enter the correct character.
    - To enter a space, press [Space].
- 6. Press

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Station ID].
- 2. Press [Fax].
- 3. Enter your fax number (up to 20 digits) on the touchscreen, and then press [OK].
- 4. Press [Name].
- 5. Enter your name (up to 20 characters) using the touchscreen, and then press [OK].
- Press 1 @ to cycle between letters, numbers and special symbols. (The available characters may differ depending on your country.)
  - If you entered an incorrect character and want to change it, press < or > to move the cursor to it. Press
     And then enter the correct character.
  - To enter a space, press [Space].

```
6. Press
```

#### Related Information

- General Settings
- Transfer Faxes to Another Fax Machine
- Transfer the Fax Journal Report to Another Fax Machine
- Enter Text on Your Brother Machine
- · Set the Date & Time

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Set Tone or Pulse Dialling Mode

## Set Tone or Pulse Dialling Mode

Your Brother machine is set for a Tone dialling service. If you have a Pulse dialling (rotary) service, you must change the dialling mode.

This feature is not available in some countries.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Tone/Pulse].
- 2. Press [Tone] or [Pulse].
- 3. Press

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Tone/Pulse].
- 2. Press [Tone] or [Pulse].
- 3. Press

#### Related Information

- General Settings
- Telephone and Fax problems

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Set a Prefix Dial Before Every Fax Number

## Set a Prefix Dial Before Every Fax Number

The Dial Prefix setting will automatically dial a predefined number before every fax number you dial. For example: If your telephone system requires a 9 to dial an outside number, use this setting to automatically dial 9 for every fax you send.

- This feature is not available in some countries.
- Use the numbers and symbols from 0 to 9, #, and \*. (You cannot use ! with any other numbers or symbols.)
- If your telephone system requires a time break recall (hookflash), press ! on the LCD.
- (not available for some countries) If pulse dialing mode is on, # and \* are not available to use.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Dial Prefix].
- 2. Press [On] or [Off].

Ø

- You can turn off the prefix number by pressing [Off].
- The prefix number will remain off until you press [On].
- 3. Press [Dial Prefix].
- 4. Enter the prefix number (up to 5 digits) using the touchscreen, and then press [OK].

To change the prefix number, press ◀ or ► to position the cursor under the digit to be deleted and press the Back Space button . Then press the correct digit.

Repeat until the prefix number is correct, and then press [OK].

5. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Dial Prefix].
- 2. Press [On] or [Off].
  - You can turn off the prefix number by pressing [Off].
  - The prefix number will remain off until you press [On].
- 3. Press [Dial Prefix].
- 4. Enter the prefix number (up to 5 digits) using the touchscreen, and then press [OK].

To change the prefix number, press ◀ or ► to position the cursor under the digit to be deleted and press the Back Space button . Then press the correct digit.

Repeat until the prefix number is correct, and then press [OK].

5. Press

## Related Information

General Settings

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Prevent Dialling a Wrong Number (Dial Restriction)

## Prevent Dialling a Wrong Number (Dial Restriction)

This feature is to prevent users from sending a fax or call to a wrong number by mistake. You can set the machine to restrict Dialling when you use the dial pad, Address Book, Shortcuts and LDAP search.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press 1 [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Dial Restriction].
- 2. Press one of the following options:
  - [Dial Pad]
  - [Address Book]

If you combine Address Book numbers when dialling, the address will be recognised as dial pad input and will not be restricted.

- [Shortcuts]
- [LDAP Server] (available only for some countries)
- 3. Press one of the following options:

Option	Description
Enter # Twice	The machine will prompt you to re-enter the number. If you re-enter the same number correctly, the machine will start dialling. If you re-enter the wrong number, the touchscreen will show an error message.
On	The machine will restrict all fax sending and outbound calls for that dialling method.
Off	The machine does not restrict the dialling method.

- The [Enter # Twice] setting will not work if you use an external phone or press [Hook] (Not available for South Africa) before entering the number. You will not be asked to re-enter the number.
- If you selected [On] or [Enter # Twice], you cannot use the Broadcasting feature.
- 4. Press

## MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Dial Restriction].
- 2. Press one of the following options:
  - [Dial Pad]
  - [Address Book]

<sup>\*</sup> If you combine Address Book numbers when dialling, the address will be recognised as dial pad input and will not be restricted.

- [Shortcuts]
- [LDAP Server] (available only for some countries)
- 3. Press one of the following options:

Option	Description		
Enter # Twice	The machine will prompt you to re-enter the number. If you re-enter the same number correctly, the machine will start dialling. If you re-enter the wrong number, the touchscreen will show an error message.		
On	The machine will restrict all fax sending and outbound calls for that dialling method.		
Off	The machine does not restrict the dialling method.		
• The IE	nter # Twicel setting will not work if you use an external phone or press [Hook] (Not		
availabl	nter # Twice] setting will not work if you use an external phone or press [Hook] (Not e for South Africa) before entering the number. You will not be asked to re-enter the number. elected [On] or [Enter # Twice], you cannot use the Broadcasting feature.		
availabl	e for South Africa) before entering the number. You will not be asked to re-enter the number.		
availabl • If you se Press	e for South Africa) before entering the number. You will not be asked to re-enter the number.		

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Reduce Printing Noise

# **Reduce Printing Noise**

The Quiet Mode setting can reduce printing noise. When Quiet Mode is turned on, the print speed becomes slower.

The factory setting is [Off].



>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [Quiet Mode].
- 2. Press [On] or [Off].
- 3. Press

### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [Quiet Mode].
- 2. Press [On] or [Off].
- 3. Press

Related Information

- General Settings
- Touchscreen LCD Overview
- Paper Handling and Printing Problems

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Change the Language Displayed on the LCD

## Change the Language Displayed on the LCD

Change the LCD language if needed.

This feature is not available in some countries.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Local Language].
- 2. Press your language.
- 3. Press

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. Press Y [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Local Language].
- 2. Press your language.
- 3. Press

#### Related Information

General Settings

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > General Settings > Change the Keyboard Setting

## Change the Keyboard Setting

Related Models: MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

You can choose the type of keyboard for the LCD.

- 1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Keyboard Settings].
- 2. Press [QWERTY] or [ABC].
- 3. Press



General Settings

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut

# Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut

- Add Shortcuts
- Change or Delete Shortcuts

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut > Add Shortcuts

## **Add Shortcuts**

You can add the Fax, Copy, Scan, Web Connect and Apps settings you use most frequently by saving them as your Shortcuts. Later you can press the Shortcut to apply these settings instead of manually re-entering them.

Some Shortcut menus are not available depending on your model.

These instructions describe how to add a Copy Shortcut. The steps for adding a Fax, Scan, Web Connect or Apps Shortcut are very similar.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press + [Shortcuts].
- 2. Press ◀ or ▶ to display the Shortcut screens.
- 3. Press + where you have not added a Shortcut.
- 4. Press ▲ or ▼ to display [Copy].
- 5. Press [Copy].
- 6. Press [Options].
- 7. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the available settings, and then press the setting you want to change.
- Press ▲ or ▼ to display the available options for the setting, and then press the option you want.
   Repeat the previous and this steps until you have selected all the settings for this Shortcut. When finished, press [OK].
- 9. Press [Save as Shortcut].
- 10. Read and confirm the displayed list of settings you have selected, and then press [OK].
- 11. Enter a name for the Shortcut using the LCD, and then press [OK].

When adding Fax or Scan to Shortcuts, you will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. If the Home screen 1, screen 2, or screen 3 appears, press + [Shortcuts].
- 2. Press a tab from [1] to [3].
- 3. Press + where you have not added a Shortcut.
- 4. Press [Copy].
- 5. Press [Options].
- 6. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the available settings, and then press the setting you want to change.
- 7. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the available options for the setting, and then press the option you want.

Repeat the previous and this steps until you have selected all the settings for this Shortcut. When finished, press [OK].

- 8. Press [Save as Shortcut].
- 9. Read and confirm the displayed list of settings you have selected, and then press [OK].
- 10. Enter a name for the Shortcut using the LCD, and then press [OK].

Ø

When adding Fax or Scan to Shortcuts, you will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.



# **Related Information**

• Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut > Change or Delete Shortcuts

## **Change or Delete Shortcuts**

You can change the settings in a Shortcut.

You cannot change a Web Connect Shortcut or Apps Shortcut. If you need to change them, delete them, and then add a new Shortcut.

>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

## MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

- 1. Press + [Shortcuts].
- 2. Press ◀ or ▶ to display the Shortcut you want to change.
- 3. Press and hold the Shortcut you want to change.
- 4. Press [Edit].

To delete the Shortcut, press [Delete]. To edit the name of the Shortcut, press [Rename] and follow the LCD menus.

- 5. Change the settings for the Shortcut you selected.
- 6. Press [Save as Shortcut] when you have finished changing the settings.
- 7. Press [OK] to confirm.

When changing Fax or Scan Shortcuts, you will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

- 1. If the Home screen 1, screen 2, or screen 3 appears, press + [Shortcuts].
- 2. Press a tab from [1] to [3] to display the Shortcut you want to change.
- 3. Press and hold the Shortcut you want to change.
- 4. Press [Edit].

To delete the Shortcut, press [Delete]. To edit the name of the Shortcut, press [Rename] and follow the LCD menus.

- 5. Change the settings for the Shortcut you selected.
- 6. Press [Save as Shortcut] when you have finished changing the settings.
- 7. Press [OK] to confirm.

When changing Fax or Scan Shortcuts, you will be asked if you want to make this a One Touch Shortcut. Follow the LCD instructions.



- Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut
- Enter Text on Your Brother Machine

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > Print Reports

## **Print Reports**

- Reports
- Print a Report
- Fax Reports
- Telephone and Fax problems

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > Print Reports > Reports

## **Reports**

The following reports are available:

#### **Transmission Verify**

The Transmission Verify prints a Transmission Verification Report for your last transmission.

#### Address Book

The Address Book report prints an alphabetical list of names and numbers stored in the Address Book memory.

#### **Fax Journal**

The Fax Journal prints a list of information about your last 200 incoming and outgoing faxes. (TX means Transmit, RX means Receive)



(Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10)

You can view and print the Fax Journal report from your computer using the Fax Journal management software. Go to your model's **Downloads** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u> to download the software.

#### **User Settings**

The User Settings report prints a list of your current settings.

#### **Network Configuration**

The Network Configuration report prints a list of your current network settings.

#### WLAN Report

The WLAN Report prints the wireless LAN connectivity diagnosis.

#### **Caller ID history**

The Caller ID history report prints a list of the available Caller ID information for the last 30 received faxes and telephone calls. (Not available for Taiwan and some countries)

## Related Information

Print Reports

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > Print Reports > Print a Report

Print a Report
>> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW >> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW
MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports].
<ol> <li>Press ▲ or ▼ to display the report options, and then press the option you want.</li> </ol>
3. Press [Yes].
4. Press
MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW
1. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the report options, and then press the option you want.
3. Press [Yes].
4. Press
Related Information
Related Information     Print Reports

Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > Settings and Features Tables

# **Settings and Features Tables**

- Settings Tables (2.7"(67.5 mm) Touchpanel models)
- Features Tables (2.7"(67.5 mm) Touchpanel models)
- Settings Tables (3.7"(93.4 mm) Touch Panel models)
- Features Tables (3.7"(93.4 mm) Touch Panel models)

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > Settings and Features Tables > Settings Tables (2.7"(67.5 mm) Touchpanel models)

# Settings Tables (2.7"(67.5 mm) Touchpanel models)

Related Models: MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

These tables will help you understand your machine's menu selections and options.

# [Settings]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions	
$\odot$	Date	-	Add the date and time on the screen and in the	
(Date & Time)	Time	-	eadings of the faxes you send.	
()	Clock Type	-	Select the time format (12-hour or 24-hour).	
	Auto Daylight	-	Set the machine to change automatically for Daylight	
	(Available only for some countries.)		Saving Time.	
	Daylight Save	-	Change for Daylight Saving Time manually.	
	(Available only for some countries.)			
	Time Zone	-	Set your time zone.	
Maintenance	Improve Print Quality	-	Check and correct the print quality, alignment and paper feeding according to the LCD instructions.	
	Print Head Cleaning	-	Clean the print head according to the LCD instructions.	
	Remove Paper Scraps	-	Remove a piece of paper in the machine according to the LCD instructions.	
	Ink Volume	-	Check the available ink volume.	
	Ink Cartridge Model	-	Check your ink cartridge numbers.	
	Print Setting Options	Reduce Smudging	Reduce smudging on the paper or paper jams during printing.	
		Reduce Uneven Lines	Reduce uneven lines on the paper during printing.	
		Slow Drying Paper	Use this setting when printing with a type of plain paper on which the ink dries very slowly.	
Wi-Fi	TCP/IP	-	Set TCP/IP protocol.	
	Setup Wizard	-	Configure your internal print server manually.	
	WLAN Assistant	-	Configure your wireless network settings using the Brother CD-ROM.	
	WPS	-	Configure your wireless network settings using the one-button push method.	
	WPS w/ PIN Code	-	Configure your wireless network settings using WPS with a PIN.	
	WLAN Status	-	View the current wireless network status.	
	MAC Address	-	View the machine's MAC address.	
Quiet Mode	-	-	Decrease printing noise.	
Tray Setting	Paper Type	-	Set the type of paper in the paper tray.	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions	
Tray Setting	Paper Size	-	Set the size of paper in the paper tray.	
Fax Preview	-	-	View received faxes on the LCD.	
All Settings	-	-	Configure the detailed settings.	

# [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions		
Maintenance	Improve Print Quality	-	Check and correct the print quality, alignment and paper feeding according to the LCD instructions.		
	Print Head Cleaning	-	Clean the print head according to the LCD instructions.		
	Remove Paper Scraps	-	Remove a piece of paper in the machine according to the LCD instructions.		
	Ink Volume	-	Check the available ink volume.		
	Ink Cartridge Model	-	Check your ink cartridge numbers.		
	Print Setting Options	Reduce Smudging	Reduce smudging on the paper or paper jams during printing.		
		Reduce Uneven Lines	Reduce uneven lines on the paper during printing.		
		Slow Drying Paper	Use this setting when printing with a type of plain paper on which the ink dries very slowly.		
Paper Type	-	-	Set the type of paper in the paper tray.		
Paper Size	-	-	Set the size of paper in the paper tray.		
Check Paper	-	-	Check the paper type and paper size when you pull the tray out of the machine.		
Quiet Mode	-	-	Decrease printing noise.		
Volume	Ring	-	Adjust the ring volume.		
	Веер	-	Adjust the beeper volume.		
	Speaker	-	Adjust the speaker volume.		
LCD Settings	Backlight	-	Adjust the brightness of the LCD backlight.		
	Dim Timer	-	Set how long the LCD backlight stays on after the last finger press.		
Screen Settings	Scan Screen	-	Set the default Scan screen settings.		
Notice Settings	Document Alert	-	Displays the alert when a document is left on the scanner glass.		
	Scan Result(Skip Blank Page)	-	Displays a scan result of skip blank page when finished.		
Keyboard Settings	-	-	Select the type of keyboard for the LCD.		
Sleep Mode	-	-	Select how long the machine must be idle before it goes into Sleep Mode.		
Auto Power Off	-	-	Select how long the machine must wait before it automatically turns itself off after entering Sleep Mode.		
			When set to Off, the machine will not power off automatically.		



# [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Shortcut Settings]

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions	
(Select shortcut button.)	Rename	Change the shortcut name.	
	Edit	Change the shortcut settings.	
	Delete	Delete the shortcut.	

# [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Setup Receive	Ring Delay	-	Set the number of rings before the machine answers in Fax Only or Fax/Tel mode.
	Receive Mode	-	Select the Receive Mode that best suits your needs.
	F/T Ring Time	-	Set the length of the pseudo/double-ring time in Fax/Tel mode.
	Fax Preview	-	View received faxes on the LCD.
	Fax Detect	-	Receive fax messages automatically when you answer a call and hear fax tones.
	Remote Codes	-	Answer calls at an extension or external telephone and use codes to turn the machine on or off. You can personalise the codes.
	Auto Reduction	-	Reduce the size of incoming faxes.
	PC Fax Receive	-	Set the machine to send faxes to your computer.
			You can turn on the Backup Print safety feature.
	Memory Receive	-	Set the machine to forward fax messages, to store incoming faxes in the memory (so you can retrieve them while you are away from your machine), or the cloud service. If you select Fax Forward, or Forward to Cloud, you can turn on the Backup Print safety feature.
	Fax Rx Stamp	-	Print the received time and date on the top of received faxes.
Report Setting	XMIT Report	-	Select the initial setup for the Transmission Verification Report.
	Journal Period	-	Set the interval for automatic printing of the Fax Journal.
			If you select an option other than Off and Every 50 Faxes, you can set the time for the option.
			If you select Every 7 Days, you can set the day of the week.
Print Document	-	-	Print received faxes stored in the machine's memory.
Remote Access	-	-	Set your own code for Remote Retrieval.
Dial Restriction	Dial Pad	-	Set the machine to restrict dialling when using the dial pad.
	Address Book	-	Set the machine to restrict the dialling when using the Address Book.
	Shortcuts	-	Set the machine to restrict the dialling when using a Shortcut.
	LDAP Server (Available only for some countries.)	-	Set the machine to restrict dialling when using LDAP search.
Remaining Jobs	-	-	Check which scheduled jobs are in the machine's memory and cancel selected jobs.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Miscellaneous	Distinctive (For some countries)	-	Use with telephone company distinctive ringing service allows you to have a voice number and fax number on the one phone line.
	FaxAbility (For New Zealand only)	-	If you have FaxAbility from Telecom, use this function to store the ringing pattern of your fax number. And if you set in to On, you should use the registered number only.
	Call Waiting (For New Zealand only)	-	If you have Call Waiting service, use this function to answer second call when you are on the phone and someone rings you.

# [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Wired LAN	TCP/IP	BOOT Method	-	Select the BOOT method that best suits your needs.
		IP Address	-	Enter the IP address.
		Subnet Mask	-	Enter the Subnet mask.
		Gateway	-	Enter the Gateway address.
		Node Name	-	Enter the Node name.
		WINS Configuration	-	Select the WINS configuration mode.
		WINS Server	-	Specify the IP address of the primary or secondary WINS server.
		DNS Server	-	Specify the IP address of the primary or secondary DNS server.
		АРІРА	-	Set the machine to allocate the IP address from the link-local address range automatically.
		IPv6	-	Turn the IPv6 protocol on or off. To use the IPv6 protocol, go to the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u> for more information.
	Ethernet	-	-	Select the Ethernet link mode.
	Wired Status	-	-	View the current wired status.
	MAC Address	-	-	View the machine's MAC address.
WLAN	TCP/IP	BOOT Method	-	Select the BOOT method that best suits your needs.
		IP Address	-	Enter the IP address.
		Subnet Mask	-	Enter the Subnet mask.
		Gateway	-	Enter the Gateway address.
		Node Name	-	Enter the Node name.
		WINS Configuration	-	Select the WINS configuration mode.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
WLAN	TCP/IP	WINS Server	-	Specify the IP address of the primary or secondary WINS server.
		DNS Server	-	Specify the IP address of the primary or secondary DNS server.
		АРІРА	-	Set the machine to allocate the IP address from the link-local address range automatically.
		IPv6	-	Turn the IPv6 protocol on or off for a wireless LAN. To use the IPv6 protocol, go to the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u> for more information.
	Setup Wizard	-	-	Configure your internal print server manually.
	WLAN Assistant	-	-	Configure your wireless network settings using the Brother CD-ROM.
	WPS	-	-	Configure your wireless network settings using the one-button push method.
	WPS w/ PIN Code	-	-	Configure your wireless network settings using WPS with a PIN.
	WLAN Status	Status	-	View the current wireless network status.
		Signal	-	View the current wireless network signal strength.
		SSID	-	View the current SSID.
		Comm. Mode	-	View the current Communication Mode.
	MAC Address	-	-	View the machine's MAC address.
Wi-Fi Direct	Push Button	-	-	Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings using the one- button push method.
	PIN Code	-	-	Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings using WPS with a PIN code.
	Manual	-	-	Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings manually.
	Group Owner	-	-	Set your machine as the Group Owner.
	Device Information	Device Name	-	View your machine's device name.
		SSID	-	View the Group Owner's SSID. When the machine is not connected, the LCD displays Not Connected.
		IP Address	-	View your machine's current IP Address.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Wi-Fi Direct	Status Information	Status	-	View the current Wi-Fi Direct network status.
		Signal	-	View the current Wi-Fi Direct network signal strength.
				When your machine acts as Group Owner, the LCD always indicates a strong signal.
	I/F Enable	-	-	Turn the Wi-Fi Direct connection on or off.
E-mail/IFAX	Mail Address	-	-	Enter the email address.
(Available after				(Up to 60 characters)
Internet Fax (I-Fax) is downloaded.)	Setup Server	SMTP	Server	Enter the SMTP server name and address.
			Port	Enter the SMTP port number.
			Auth. for SMTP	Select the Security method for email notification.
			SSL/TLS	Send or receive an email via an email server that requires secure SSL/TLS communication.
			Verify Certification	Verify the SMTP Server Certificate automatically.
		POP3/IMAP4	Protocol	Select the protocol for receiving an email from the server.
			Server	Enter the server name and address.
			Port	Enter the port number.
			Mailbox Name	Enter the mailbox name. (Up to 60 characters)
			Mailbox Password	Enter the password to login to the server.
			Select Folder	(Up to 32 characters) Select the specified folder in the mailbox using the IMAP4 protocol.
			SSL/TLS	Send or receive an E-mail via an E-mail server that requires secure SSL/TLS communication.
			Verify Certification	Verify the Server Certificate automatically.
			APOP	Turn APOP on or off.
	Setup Mail RX	Auto Polling	Auto Polling	Automatically check the server for new messages.
			Poll Frequency	Set the interval for checking new messages on the server.
		Header	-	Select the contents of the email header to be printed.
		Del/Read Error Mail	-	Set the machine to automatically delete error mails.
		Notification	-	Receive notification messages.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
E-mail/IFAX	Setup Mail TX	Sender Subject	-	View the subject.
(Available after Internet Fax (I-Fax) is		Size Limit	Size Limit	Limit the size of email
downloaded.)			Maximum Size(MB)	documents.
		Notification	-	Send notification messages.
	Setup Relay	Relay Broadcast	-	Relay a document to another fax machine.
		Relay Domain	-	Register the Domain name.
		Relay Report	-	Print the relay Broadcast Report.
	Manual Receive	-	-	Manually check the POP3 or IMAP4 server for new messages.
Message from Brother	Message from Brother	-	-	Display messages and notifications from Brother.
	Status	-	-	
Web Connect Settings	Proxy Settings	Proxy Connection	-	Change the Web connection settings.
		Address	-	
		Port	-	
		User Name	-	
		Password	-	
Network I/F	-	-	-	Select the network connection type.
Network Reset	-	-	-	Restore all network settings back to the factory settings.

# [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports]

Level 1	Descriptions
XMIT Verify	Print a Transmission Verification Report for your last transmission.
Address Book	Print a list of names and numbers stored in the Address Book.
Fax Journal	Print a list of information about your last 200 incoming and outgoing faxes.
	(TX means Transmit. RX means Receive.)
User Settings	Print a list of your settings.
Network Configuration	Print a list of your Network settings.
WLAN Report	Print the wireless LAN connection results.
Caller ID History	Print a list of the available Caller ID information about the last 30 received
(Not available for Taiwan and some countries)	faxes and telephone calls.

# [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Machine Info.]

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
Serial No.	-	Check your machine's serial number.
Firmware Version	Main Version	Check your machine's firmware version.

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
Firmware Update	-	Update your machine to the latest firmware.
Firmware Auto Check	-	View firmware information on the Home screen.

# [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup]

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
Date & Time	Date	Add the date and time on the screen and in the headings of
	Time	the faxes you send.
	Clock Type	Select the time format (12-hour or 24-hour).
	Auto Daylight	Set the machine to change automatically for Daylight Saving
	(Available only for some countries.)	Time.
	Daylight Save	Change for Daylight Saving Time manually.
	(Available only for some countries.)	
	Time Zone	Set your time zone.
Station ID	Fax	Enter your name and fax number so it appears on each page
	Name	you fax.
Tone/Pulse	-	Select the dialling mode.
(Available only for some countries.)		
Fax Auto Redial	-	Set the machine to redial the last fax number if the fax did not go through because the line was busy.
Dial Tone	-	Shorten the dial tone detect pause.
Dial Prefix	-	Set a prefix number to always be added before the fax number
(Available only for some countries.)		every time you dial.
Phone Line Set	-	Select the telephone line type.
(Available only for some countries.)		
Compatibility	-	Adjust the equalisation for transmission difficulties.
		VoIP service providers offer fax support using various standards. If you regularly experience fax transmission errors, select Basic (for VoIP).
Reset	Machine Reset	Restore all the machine's settings that you have changed, such as Date and Time and Ring Delay.
	Network	Restore all network settings back to the factory settings.
	Address Book & Fax	Erase all stored phone numbers and fax settings.
	All Settings	Restore all the machine's settings back to the factory settings.
Local Language	-	Change your LCD language.
(Available only for some countries.)		

## Related Information

Settings and Features Tables

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > Settings and Features Tables > Features Tables (2.7"(67.5 mm) Touchpanel models)

# Features Tables (2.7"(67.5 mm) Touchpanel models)

Related Models: MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

## [Fax] (When [Fax Preview] is [Off])

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Redial (Pause)	-	-	Redial the last number called. When you are entering a fax or telephone number on the Touchpanel, Redial changes to Pause on the LCD. Press Pause when you need a delay while dialling numbers, such as access codes and credit card numbers. You can also store a pause when you set up addresses.
Address Book	Q (Search:)	-	When LDAP is off, the search will be within the Local Address Book.
			When LDAP is on, the search will be within the Local Address Book and LDAP Server.
		Detail (This will appear only when LDAP is on.) (Available only for some countries.)	View detailed information about the selected address.
	Edit	-	Store Address Book numbers, set up Group numbers for Broadcasting, and change and delete Address Book numbers.
	-	Apply	Start sending a fax using the Address Book.
Call History	Redial	-	Redial the last number you dialled.
	Outgoing Call	Apply	Select a number from the Outgoing Call history and
		Edit	then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.
	Caller ID	Apply	Select a number from the Caller ID history and then
	History (Not available for Taiwan and some countries)	Edit	send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.
Options	Fax Resolution	-	Set the resolution for outgoing faxes.
	Contrast	-	Adjust the contrast.
	Glass Scan Size	-	Adjust the scan area of the scanner glass to the size of the document.
	Broadcasting	Add Number	Send the same fax message to more than one fax number.
	Preview	-	Preview a fax message before you send it.
	Colour Setting	-	Set whether faxes are sent in monochrome or colour.
	Delayed Fax	Delayed Fax	Set the time of day the delayed faxes will be sent.
		Set Time	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Options	Batch TX	-	Combine delayed faxes to the same fax number at the same time of day into one transmission.
	Real Time TX	-	Send a fax without using the memory.
	Overseas Mode	-	Set to On if you have difficulty sending faxes overseas.
	Call History	Redial	Redial the last number you dialled.
		Outgoing Call	Select a number from the Outgoing Call history and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.
		Caller ID History	Select a number from the Caller ID history and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete
		(Not available for Taiwan and some countries)	it.
	Address Book	Q	When LDAP is off, the search will be within the Local Address Book.
		(Search:)	When LDAP is on, the search will be within the Local Address Book and LDAP Server.
		Edit	Store Address Book numbers, set up Group numbers for Broadcasting, and change and delete Address Book numbers.
	Set New Default	-	Save your settings as the default.
	Factory Reset	-	Restore all settings back to the factory settings.
Save as Shortcut	-	-	Save the current settings as a shortcut.

# [Fax] (When [Fax Preview] iS [On])

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Sending Faxes	Redial (Pause)	-	-	Redial the last number called. When you are entering a fax or telephone number on the Touchpanel, Redial changes to Pause on the LCD. Press Pause when you need a delay while dialling numbers, such as access codes and credit card numbers. You can also store a pause when you set up addresses.
	Address Book (Search:	Q (Search:)	-	When LDAP is off, the search will be within the Local Address Book. When LDAP is on, the search will be within the Local Address Book and LDAP Server.
			Detail	View detailed information about the
			(This will appear only when LDAP is on.)	selected address.
			(Available only for some countries.)	
		Edit	-	Store Address Book numbers, set up Group numbers for Broadcasting, and

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions	
Sending Faxes	Address Book			change and delete Address Book numbers.	
		-	Apply	Start sending a fax using the Address Book.	
	Call History	Redial	-	Redial the last number you dialled.	
		Outgoing Call	Apply	Select a number from the Outgoing Call	
			Edit	history and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.	
		Caller ID	Apply	Select a number from the Caller ID	
		History	Edit	history and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.	
		(Not available for Taiwan and some countries)			
	Options	Fax Resolution	-	Set the resolution for outgoing faxes.	
		Contrast	-	Adjust the contrast.	
		Glass Scan Size	-	Adjust the scan area of the scanner glass to the size of the document.	
		Broadcasting	Add Number	Send the same fax message to more than one fax number.	
		Preview	-	Preview a fax message before you send it.	
		Colour Setting	-	Set whether faxes are sent in monochrome or colour.	
		Delayed Fax	Delayed Fax	Set the time of day the delayed faxes will be sent.	
			Set Time		
		Batch TX	-	Combine delayed faxes to the same fax number at the same time of day into one transmission.	
		Real Time TX	-	Send a fax without using the memory.	
		Overseas Mode	-	Set to On if you have difficulty sending faxes overseas.	
		Call History	Redial	Redial the last number you dialled.	
			Outgoing Call	Select a number from the Outgoing Call history and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.	
			Caller ID History (Not available for Taiwan and some countries)	Select a number from the Caller ID history and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.	
		Address Book	٩	When LDAP is off, the search will be within the Local Address Book.	
			(Search:)	When LDAP is on, the search will be within the Local Address Book and LDAP Server.	
				Edit	Store Address Book numbers, set up Group numbers for Broadcasting, and change and delete Address Book numbers.
		Set New Default	-	Save your settings as the default.	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Sending Faxes	Options	Factory Reset	-	Restore all settings back to the factory settings.
	Save as Shortcut	-	-	Save the current settings as a shortcut.
Received Faxes	Print/Delete	Print All(New Faxes)	-	Print the new received faxes.
		Print All(Old Faxes)	-	Print the old received faxes.
		Delete All(New Faxes)	-	Delete the new received faxes.
		Delete All(Old Faxes)	-	Delete the old received faxes.
Address Book	Q	-	-	When LDAP is off, the search will be within the Local Address Book.
(Search:)	(Search:)			When LDAP is on, the search will be within the Local Address Book and LDAP Server.
		Detail (This will appear only when LDAP is on.) (Available only for some countries.)	-	View detailed information about the selected address.
	Edit	-	-	Store Address Book numbers, set up Group numbers for Broadcasting, and change and delete Address Book numbers.
	-	Apply	-	Start sending a fax using the Address Book.
Call	Redial	-	-	Redial the last number you dialled.
History	Outgoing Call	Apply	-	Select a number from the Outgoing Call
		Edit	-	history and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.
	Caller ID	Apply	-	Select a number from the Caller ID
	History (Not available for Taiwan and some countries)	Edit	-	history and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.

# [Copy]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Save as Shortcut	-	-	Save the current settings as a shortcut.
Options	Quality	-	Select the Copy resolution for your document type.
	Paper Type	-	Select the paper type that matches the paper in the tray.
	Paper Size	-	Select the paper size that matches the paper in the tray.
	Enlarge/Reduce	100%	-
		Enlarge	Select an enlargement ratio for the next copy.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Options	Enlarge/Reduce Reduce		Select a reduction ratio for the next copy.
		Fit to Page	Adjust the copy size to fit on the paper size you have set.
		Custom (25-400%)	Enter an enlargement or reduction ratio.
	Density	-	Adjust the density.
	Stack/Sort	-	Select to stack or sort multiple copies.
	Page Layout	-	Make N in 1, 2 in 1 ID, or Poster copies.
	2-sided Copy	-	Turn off or turn on 2-sided copying and select flip on long edge or flip on short edge.
Advanced - Settings		-	Select advanced copy settings.
	Set New Default	-	Save your settings as the default.
	Factory Reset	-	Restore all settings back to the factory settings.



#### Descriptions Level 1 Level 2 Level 3 Level 4 to Media Other Scan Scan documents and save them to Actions directly to a USB flash drive (When a USB Flash drive without using a computer. is inserted) Options Save as Shortcut to PC to File Scan documents and save them Other Scan to Actions to a folder on your computer. (Select USB or Options PC) Save as Shortcut to OCR Other Scan Convert your scanned document to Actions to an editable text file. (Select USB or Options PC) Save as Shortcut to Image Other Scan Scan photos or graphics into your to Actions graphics applications. (Select USB or Options PC) Save as Shortcut to E-mail Other Scan Send a scanned document as an to Actions email attachment. (Select USB or Options PC) Save as Shortcut to E-mail Server Other Scan Send scanned data to an email \_ server by allowing your machine to Actions (Available after Internet to communicate with your network Fax (I-Fax) is Address Next Destinations and mail server. downloaded.) Book Manual Save as Shortcut

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
to E-mail Server (Available after Internet Fax (I-Fax) is downloaded.)	Manual	Next	Options	Send scanned data to an email server by allowing your machine to communicate with your network and mail server.
to FTP	Other Scan to Actions	-	-	Scan documents directly to an FTP server.
	(Select Profile	Options	-	
	name)	Save as Shortcut	-	
to Network	Other Scan to Actions	-	-	Scan documents directly to a CIFS server on your local network.
	(Select Profile name)	Options	-	
		Save as Shortcut	-	
to Web	-	-	-	Upload the scanned data to an Internet service.
WS Scan	Other Scan	-	-	Scan data using the Web Service
(Appears when you install	to Actions			protocol.
a Web Services Scanner, which is displayed in your computer's Network explorer.)	Scan	-	-	
	Scan for E- mail	-	-	
	Scan for Fax	-	-	
	Scan for Print	-	-	



# Level 1 Descriptions

Level 1	Descriptions
Web	Connect the Brother machine to an Internet service.

# [Apps]

Level 1	Descriptions
Apps	Connect the Brother machine to the Brother Apps service.

# 🔊 [USB]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
JPEG Print	Select Files	ОК	Print Settings	Adjust your photos with the options.
		Print All	-	Print all photos in your USB flash drive.
	Index Print	Print Index Sheet	Print Settings	Print a thumbnail page.
		Print Photos	Print Settings	Print photos by choosing the index numbers.
Scan to Media	-	-	-	Scan documents into a USB flash drive.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Web	-	-	-	Connect the Brother machine to an Internet service.



Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
A3 2in1	Options	Quality	Select the Copy resolution for your document type.
$A4 \Rightarrow A3$		Paper Type	View the available paper type.
A4 + Note(L)		Paper Size	Set the size of paper in the paper tray.
A4 + Note(P) A4 + Grid		Density	Adjust the density.
A4 + Blank			
A4 Centre			



# [Download Software]

Level 1	Descriptions
Download Software	Displays information about downloading and installing software for mobile devices and computers.

# + [Shortcuts]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Add Shortcut	Сору	-	Change the settings in the Copy Options.
	Fax	-	Change the settings in the Fax Options.
	Scan	to PC(File)	Scan documents and save them to a folder on your computer.
		to PC (OCR)	Convert your scanned document to an editable text file.
		to PC(Image)	Scan photos or graphics into your graphics applications.
		to PC(E-mail)	Send a scanned document as an email attachment.
		to Media	Scan documents and save them directly to a USB flash drive without using a computer.
		to E-mail Server (Available after Internet Fax (I-Fax) is downloaded.)	Scan a monochrome or a colour document to your email server.
		to Network	Send scanned data to a CIFS server on your local network or on the Internet.
		to FTP	Send scanned data via FTP.
	Web	-	Connect the Brother machine to an Internet service.
	Apps	-	Connect the Brother machine to the Brother Apps service.
This list appears when	Rename	-	Change the shortcut name.
each Shortcut icon is pressed for 2 seconds.	Edit	-	Change the shortcut settings.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
This list appears when each Shortcut icon is pressed for 2 seconds.	Delete	-	Delete the shortcut.
Edit/Delete	'Delete (Select shortcut button.)	Rename	Change the shortcut name.
		Edit	Change the shortcut settings.
	Delete	Delete the shortcut.	



Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
Ink Volume	-	Check the available ink volume.
Ink Cartridge Model	-	Check your ink cartridge numbers.
Improve Print Quality	-	Check and correct the print quality, alignment and paper feeding according to the LCD instructions.
Print Head Cleaning	-	Clean the print head according to the LCD instructions.
Remove Paper Scraps	-	Remove a piece of paper in the machine according to the LCD instructions.
Print Setting Options	Reduce Smudging	Reduce smudging on the paper or paper jams during printing.
	Reduce Uneven Lines	Reduce uneven lines on the paper during printing.
	Slow Drying Paper	Use this setting when printing with a type of plain paper on which the ink dries very slowly.

# wiFi (Wi-Fi Setup)

Level 1	Descriptions
Setup Wizard	Configure your internal print server manually.
WLAN Assistant	Configure your wireless network settings using the Brother CD-ROM.
WPS	Configure your wireless network settings using the one-button push method.

# When you have put a USB Flash drive in the USB slot

Level 1	Descriptions	
JPEG Print Select photo menu.		
Scan to Media Scan documents into a USB flash drive.		
Web	Connect the Brother machine to an Internet service.	

## **Related Information**

- Settings and Features Tables
- Important Note

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > Settings and Features Tables > Settings Tables (3.7"(93.4 mm) Touch Panel models)

# Settings Tables (3.7"(93.4 mm) Touch Panel models)

Related Models: MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

The Settings tables will help you understand the menu selections and options found in the machine's programs.

# [Settings]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions	
⊘ (Date & Time)	Date	-	Add the date and time on the screen and in the	
	Time	-	headings of the faxes you send.	
	Clock Type	-	Select the time format (12-hour or 24-hour).	
	Auto Daylight	-	Set the machine to change automatically for Daylight	
	(Available only for some countries.)		Saving Time.	
	Daylight Save	-	Change for Daylight Saving Time manually.	
	(Available only for some countries.)			
	Time Zone	-	Set your time zone.	
Maintenance	Improve Print Quality	-	Check and correct the print quality, alignment and paper feeding according to the LCD instructions.	
	Print Head Cleaning	-	Clean the print head according to the LCD instructions.	
	Remove Paper Scraps	-	Remove a piece of paper in the machine according to the LCD instructions.	
	Ink Volume	-	Check the available ink volume.	
	Ink Cartridge Model	-	Check your ink cartridge numbers.	
	Print Setting Options	Reduce Smudging	Reduce smudging on the paper or paper jams during printing.	
		Reduce Uneven Lines	Reduce uneven lines on the paper during printing.	
		Slow Drying Paper	Use this setting when printing with a type of plain paper on which the ink dries very slowly.	
Wi-Fi	TCP/IP	-	Set TCP/IP protocol.	
	Setup Wizard	-	Configure your internal print server manually.	
	WLAN Assistant	-	Configure your wireless network settings using the Brother CD-ROM.	
	WPS	-	Configure your wireless network settings using the one-button push method.	
	WPS w/ PIN Code	-	Configure your wireless network settings using WPS with a PIN.	
	WLAN Status	-	View the current wireless network status.	
	MAC Address	-	View the machine's MAC address.	
Quiet Mode	-	-	Decrease printing noise.	
Tray Setting	Tray #1	Paper Type	Set the type of paper in paper tray #1.	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Tray Setting	Tray #1	Paper Size	Set the size of paper in paper tray #1.
	Tray #2	Paper Size	Set the size of paper in paper tray #2.
	MP Tray	Paper Type	Set the type of paper in the MP tray.
		Paper Size	Set the size of paper in the MP tray.
Fax Preview	-	-	View received faxes on the LCD.
All Settings	-	-	Configure the detailed settings.

[Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Maintenance	Improve Print Quality	-	Check and correct the print quality, alignment and paper feeding according to the LCD instructions.
	Print Head Cleaning	-	Clean the print head according to the LCD instructions.
	Remove Paper Scraps	-	Remove a piece of paper in the machine according to the LCD instructions.
	Ink Volume	-	Check the available ink volume.
	Ink Cartridge Model	-	Check your ink cartridge numbers.
	Print Setting Options	Reduce Smudging	Reduce smudging on the paper or paper jams during printing.
		Reduce Uneven Lines	Reduce uneven lines on the paper during printing.
		Slow Drying Paper	Use this setting when printing with a type of plain paper on which the ink dries very slowly.
Tray Setting	Tray #1	Paper Type	Set the type of paper in paper tray #1.
		Paper Size	Set the size of paper in paper tray #1.
	Tray #2	Paper Size	Set the size of paper in paper tray #2.
	MP Tray	Paper Type	Set the type of paper in the MP tray.
		Paper Size	Set the size of paper in the MP tray.
	Tray Setting: Copy	Tray Use	Select the tray to be used for copying.
		Tray Priority	Change the tray priority for copying.
	Tray Setting: Fax	Tray Use	Select the tray to be used for faxing.
		Tray Priority	Change the tray priority for faxing.
	Tray Setting: Print	Tray Priority	Change the tray priority for printing from your computer.
	Tray Setting: JPEG Print (Media)	Tray Use	Select the tray to be used for printing photos from a USB flash drive.
		Tray Priority	Change the tray priority for printing photos from a USB flash drive.
	Paper Low Notice (MFC-J5930DW)	-	Select whether to display a message telling you that the paper tray is nearly empty.
	Check Paper	-	Check the paper type and paper size when you pull the tray out of the machine or set the paper in MP tray.
Quiet Mode	-	-	Decrease printing noise.
Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
-----------------	---------------------------------	---------	---
Volume	Ring	-	Adjust the ring volume.
	Веер	-	Adjust the beeper volume.
	Speaker	-	Adjust the speaker volume.
LCD Settings	Backlight	-	Adjust the brightness of the LCD backlight.
	Dim Timer	-	Set how long the LCD backlight stays on after the last finger press.
Screen Settings	Home Screen	-	Set the screen that is displayed when you press (Home).
	Copy Screen	-	Set the default Copy screen settings.
	Scan Screen	-	Set the default Scan screen settings.
Notice Settings	Document Alert	-	Displays the alert when a document is left on the scanner glass.
	Scan Result(Skip Blank Page)	-	Displays a scan result of skip blank page when finished.
Sleep Mode	-	-	Select how long the machine must be idle before it goes into Sleep Mode.
Auto Power Off	-	-	Select how long the machine must wait before it automatically turns itself off after entering Sleep Mode.
			When set to Off, the machine will not power off automatically.



## [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Shortcut Settings]

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
(Select shortcut button.)	Rename	Change the shortcut name.
	Edit	Change the shortcut settings.
	Delete	Delete the shortcut.

## [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Setup Receive	Ring Delay	-	Set the number of rings before the machine answers in Fax Only or Fax/Tel mode.
	Receive Mode	-	Select the Receive Mode that best suits your needs.
	F/T Ring Time	-	Set the length of the pseudo/double-ring time in Fax/Tel mode.
	Fax Preview	-	View received faxes on the LCD.
	Fax Detect	-	Receive fax messages automatically when you answer a call and hear fax tones.
	Remote Codes	-	Answer calls at an extension or external telephone and use codes to turn the machine on or off. You can personalise the codes.
	Auto Reduction	-	Reduce the size of incoming faxes.
	PC Fax Receive	-	Set the machine to send faxes to your computer.
			You can turn on the Backup Print safety feature.
	Memory Receive	-	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Setup Receive			Set the machine to forward fax messages, to store incoming faxes in the memory (so you can retrieve them while you are away from your machine), or the cloud service.
			If you select Fax Forward, or Forward to Cloud, you can turn on the Backup Print safety feature.
	Fax Rx Stamp	-	Print the received time and date on the top of received faxes.
Report Setting	XMIT Report	-	Select the initial setup for the Transmission Verification Report.
	Journal Period	-	Set the interval for automatic printing of the Fax Journal.
			If you select an option other than Off and Every 50 Faxes, you can set the time for the option.
			If you select Every 7 Days, you can set the day of the week.
Print Document	-	-	Print received faxes stored in the machine's memory.
Remote Access	-	-	Set your own code for Remote Retrieval.
Dial Restriction	Dial Pad	-	Set the machine to restrict dialling when using the dial pad.
	Address Book	-	Set the machine to restrict the dialling when using the Address Book.
	Shortcuts	-	Set the machine to restrict the dialling when using a Shortcut.
	LDAP Server	-	Set the machine to restrict dialling when using LDAP search.
	(Available only for some countries.)		
Remaining Jobs	-	-	Check which scheduled jobs are in the machine's memory and cancel selected jobs.
Miscellaneous	Distinctive	-	Use with telephone company distinctive ringing service allows you to have a voice number and fax number on the
	(For some countries)		one phone line.
	FaxAbility	-	If you have FaxAbility from Telecom, use this function to
	(For New Zealand		store the ringing pattern of your fax number.
	only)		And if you set in to On, you should use the registered number only.
	Call Waiting	-	If you have Call Waiting service, use this function to answer
	(For New Zealand only)		second call when you are on the phone and someone rings you.

## [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Printer]

### (MFC-J5930DW)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Emulation	-	-	Select the emulation mode.
2-sided	2-sided Print	-	Enable or disable 2-sided printing and choose long edge or short edge.
HP Tray Command	-	-	Select the correct version of HP LaserJet emulation.
Reset Printer	-	-	Restore the printer settings to the factory settings.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Wired LAN	TCP/IP	BOOT Method	-	Select the BOOT method that best suits your needs.
		IP Address	-	Enter the IP address.
		Subnet Mask	-	Enter the Subnet mask.
		Gateway	-	Enter the Gateway address.
		Node Name	-	Enter the Node name.
		WINS Configuration	-	Select the WINS configuration mode.
		WINS Server	-	Specify the IP address of the primary or secondary WINS server.
		DNS Server	-	Specify the IP address of the primary or secondary DNS server.
		APIPA	-	Set the machine to allocate the IP address from the link-local address range automatically.
		IPv6	-	Turn the IPv6 protocol on or off. To use the IPv6 protocol, go to the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u> for more information.
	Ethernet	-	-	Select the Ethernet link mode.
	Wired Status	-	-	View the current wired status.
1	MAC Address	-	-	View the machine's MAC address.
WLAN	TCP/IP	BOOT Method	-	Select the BOOT method that best suits your needs.
		IP Address	-	Enter the IP address.
		Subnet Mask	-	Enter the Subnet mask.
		Gateway	-	Enter the Gateway address.
		Node Name	-	Enter the Node name.
		WINS Configuration	-	Select the WINS configuration mode.
		WINS Server	-	Specify the IP address of the primary or secondary WINS server.
		DNS Server	-	Specify the IP address of the primary or secondary DNS server.
		APIPA	-	Set the machine to allocate the IP address from the link-local address range automatically.
		IPv6	-	Turn the IPv6 protocol on or off for a wireless LAN. To use the IPv6 protocol, go to the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u> for more information.

## [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
WLAN	Setup Wizard	-	-	Configure your internal print server manually.
	WLAN Assistant	-	-	Configure your wireless network settings using the Brother CD-ROM.
	WPS	-	-	Configure your wireless network settings using the one- button push method.
	WPS w/ PIN Code	-	-	Configure your wireless network settings using WPS with a PIN.
	WLAN Status	Status	-	View the current wireless network status.
		Signal	-	View the current wireless network signal strength.
		SSID	-	View the current SSID.
		Comm. Mode	-	View the current Communication Mode.
	MAC Address	-	-	View the machine's MAC address.
Wi-Fi Direct	Push Button	-	-	Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings using the one- button push method.
	PIN Code	-	-	Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings using WPS with a PIN code.
	Manual	-	-	Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings manually.
	Group Owner	-	-	Set your machine as the Group Owner.
	Device Information	Device Name	-	View your machine's device name.
		SSID	-	View the Group Owner's SSID. When the machine is not connected, the LCD displays Not Connected.
		IP Address	-	View your machine's current IP Address.
	Status Information	Status	-	View the current Wi-Fi Direct network status.
		Signal	-	View the current Wi-Fi Direct network signal strength.
				When your machine acts as Group Owner, the LCD always indicates a strong signal.
	I/F Enable	-	-	Turn the Wi-Fi Direct connection on or off.
E-mail/IFAX (Available after	Mail Address	-	-	Enter the email address. (Up to 60 characters)
Internet Fax (I-Fax) is downloaded.)	Setup Server	SMTP	Server	Enter the SMTP server name and address.
	1	1	1	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
E-mail/IFAX (Available after	Setup Server	SMTP	Auth. for SMTP	Select the Security method for email notification.
Internet Fax (I-Fax) is downloaded.)			SSL/TLS	Send or receive an email via an email server that requires secure SSL/TLS communication.
			Verify Certification	Verify the SMTP Server Certificate automatically.
		POP3/IMAP4	Protocol	Select the protocol for receiving an email from the server.
			Server	Enter the server name and address.
			Port	Enter the port number.
			Mailbox Name	Enter the mailbox name. (Up to 60 characters)
			Mailbox Password	Enter the password to login to the server. (Up to 32 characters)
			Select Folder	Select the specified folder in the mailbox using the IMAP4 protocol.
			SSL/TLS	Send or receive an E-mail via an E-mail server that requires secure SSL/TLS communication.
			Verify Certification	Verify the Server Certificate automatically.
			APOP	Turn APOP on or off.
	Setup Mail RX	Auto Polling	Auto Polling	Automatically check the server for new messages.
			Poll Frequency	Set the interval for checking for new messages on the server.
		Header	-	Select the contents of the email header to be printed.
		Del/Read Error Mail	-	Set the machine to automatically delete error mails.
		Notification	-	Receive notification messages.
	Setup Mail TX	Sender Subject	-	View the subject.
		Size Limit	Size Limit	Limit the size of email
			Maximum Size(MB)	documents.
		Notification	-	Send notification messages.
	Setup Relay	Relay Broadcast	-	Relay a document to another fax machine.
		Relay Domain	-	Register the Domain name.
		Relay Report	-	Print the relay Broadcast Report.
	Manual Receive	-	-	Manually check the POP3 or IMAP4 server for new messages.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Message from Brother	Message from Brother	-	-	Display messages and notifications from Brother.
	Status	-	-	
	Proxy Settings	Proxy Connection	-	Change the Web connection settings.
		Address	-	
		Port	-	
		User Name	-	
		Password	-	
Network I/F	-	-	-	Select the network connection type.
Network Reset	-	-	-	Restore all network settings back to the factory settings.

## [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports]

Level 1	Descriptions	
XMIT Verify	Print a Transmission Verification Report for your last transmission.	
Address Book	Print a list of names and numbers stored in the Address Book.	
Fax Journal	Print a list of information about your last 200 incoming and outgoing faxes. (TX means Transmit. RX means Receive.)	
User Settings	Print a list of your settings.	
Network Configuration	Print a list of your Network settings.	
WLAN Report	Print the wireless LAN connection results.	
Caller ID History (Not available for Taiwan and some countries)	Print a list of the available Caller ID information about the last 30 received faxes and telephone calls.	

## [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Machine Info.]

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
Serial No.	-	Check your machine's serial number.
Firmware Version	Main Version	Check your machine's firmware version.
Firmware Update	-	Update your machine to the latest firmware.
Firmware Auto Check	-	View firmware information on the Home screen.

## [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup]

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
Date & Time	Date	Add the date and time on the screen and in the headings of
	Time	the faxes you send.
	Clock Type	Select the time format (12-hour or 24-hour).
	Auto Daylight (Available only for some countries.)	Set the machine to change automatically for Daylight Saving Time.
	Daylight Save	Change for Daylight Saving Time manually.

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
Date & Time	(Available only for some countries.)	
	Time Zone	Set your time zone.
Station ID	Fax	Enter your name and fax number so it appears on each page
	Name	you fax.
Tone/Pulse	-	Select the dialling mode.
(Available only for some countries.)		
Fax Auto Redial	-	Set the machine to redial the last fax number if the fax did not go through because the line was busy.
Dial Tone	-	Shorten the dial tone detect pause.
Dial Prefix	-	Set a prefix number to always be added before the fax number
(Available only for some countries.)		every time you dial.
Phone Line Set	-	Select the telephone line type.
(Available only for some countries.)		
Compatibility	-	Adjust the equalisation for transmission difficulties.
		VoIP service providers offer fax support using various standards. If you regularly experience fax transmission errors, select Basic (for VoIP).
Reset	Machine Reset	Restore all the machine's settings that you have changed, such as Date and Time and Ring Delay.
	Network	Restore all network settings back to the factory settings.
	Address Book & Fax	Erase all stored phone numbers and fax settings.
	All Settings	Restore all the machine's settings back to the factory settings.
Local Language (Available only for some countries.)	-	Change your LCD language.

### **Related Information**

Settings and Features Tables

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel > Settings and Features Tables > Features Tables (3.7"(93.4 mm) Touch Panel models)

### Features Tables (3.7"(93.4 mm) Touch Panel models)

Related Models: MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

### [Fax] (When [Fax Preview] is [Off])

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions	
Address Book	Q (Search:)	-	When LDAP is off, the search will be within the Local Address Book. When LDAP is on, the search will be within the Local Address Book and LDAP Server.	
		Detail (This will appear only when LDAP is on.) (Available only for some countries.)	View detailed information about the selected address.	
	Edit	-	Store Address Book numbers, set up Group numbers for Broadcasting, and change and delete Address Book numbers.	
	-	Apply	Start sending a fax using the Address Book.	
Call	Redial	-	Redial the last number you dialled.	
History	Outgoing Call	Apply Edit	Select a number from the Outgoing Call history and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.	
	Caller ID History (Not available for Taiwan and some countries)	Apply Edit	Select a number from the Caller ID history and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.	
Options	Fax Resolution	-	Set the resolution for outgoing faxes.	
	2-sided Fax	-	Set the 2-sided scanning format.	
	Contrast	-	Adjust the contrast.	
	Glass Scan Size	-	Adjust the scan area of the scanner glass to the size of the document.	
	Broadcasting	Add Number	Send the same fax message to more than one fax number.	
	Preview	-	Preview a fax message before you send it.	
	Colour Setting	-	Set whether faxes are sent in monochrome or colour.	
	Delayed Fax	Delayed Fax	Set the time of day the delayed faxes will be sent.	
		Set Time		
	Batch TX	-	Combine delayed faxes to the same fax number at the same time of day into one transmission.	
	Real Time TX	-	Send a fax without using the memory.	
	Overseas Mode	-	Set to On if you have difficulty sending faxes overseas.	
	Set New Default	-	Save your settings as the default.	
	Factory Reset	-	Restore all settings back to the factory settings.	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Save as Shortcut	-	-	Save the current settings as a shortcut.

[Fax] (When [Fax Pr	eview] İS [On])
---------------------	-----------------

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Sending Faxes	Address Book	Q	-	When LDAP is off, the search will be within the Local Address Book.
		(Search:)		When LDAP is on, the search will be within the Local Address Book and LDAP Server.
			Detail (This will appear only when LDAP is on.) (Available	View detailed information about the selected address.
			only for some countries.)	
		Edit	-	Store Address Book numbers, set up Group numbers for Broadcasting, and change and delete Address Book numbers.
		-	Apply	Start sending a fax using the Address Book.
	Call	Redial	-	Redial the last number you dialled.
	History	Outgoing Call	Apply	Select a number from the Outgoing Call
			Edit	history and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.
		Caller ID	Apply	Select a number from the Caller ID history
		History (Not available for Taiwan and some countries)	Edit	and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.
	Options	Fax Resolution	-	Set the resolution for outgoing faxes.
		2-sided Fax	-	Set the 2-sided scanning format.
		Contrast	-	Adjust the contrast.
		Glass Scan Size	-	Adjust the scan area of the scanner glass to the size of the document.
		Broadcasting	Add Number	Send the same fax message to more than one fax number.
		Preview	-	Preview a fax message before you send it.
		Colour Setting	-	Set whether faxes are sent in monochrome or colour.
		Delayed Fax	Delayed Fax	Set the time of day the delayed faxes will be sent.
			Set Time	
		Batch TX	-	Combine delayed faxes to the same fax number at the same time of day into one transmission.
		Real Time TX	-	Send a fax without using the memory.
		Overseas Mode	-	Set to On if you have difficulty sending faxes overseas.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Sending	Options	Set New Default	-	Save your settings as the default.
Faxes		Factory Reset	-	Restore all settings back to the factory settings.
	Save as Shortcut	-	-	Save the current settings as a shortcut.
Received Faxes	Print/ Delete	Print All(New Faxes)	-	Print the new received faxes.
		Print All(Old Faxes)	-	Print the old received faxes.
		Delete All(New Faxes)	-	Delete the new received faxes.
		Delete All(Old Faxes)	-	Delete the old received faxes.
Address Book	٩	-	-	When LDAP is off, the search will be within the Local Address Book.
	(Search:)			When LDAP is on, the search will be within the Local Address Book and LDAP Server.
		Detail (This will appear only when LDAP is on.) (Available only for some countries.)	-	View detailed information about the selected address.
	Edit	-	-	Store Address Book numbers, set up Group numbers for Broadcasting, and change and delete Address Book numbers.
	-	Apply	-	Start sending a fax using the Address Book.
Call	Redial	-	-	Redial the last number you dialled.
History	Outgoing	Apply	-	Select a number from the Outgoing Call
	Call	Edit	-	history and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.
	Caller ID	Apply	-	Select a number from the Caller ID history
	History (Not available for Taiwan and some countries)	Edit	-	and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.

## [Copy]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Preset	$A4 \Rightarrow A3$	-	Select the settings you want.
(Appears when	Normal		
you press ►.)	2sided(1⇒2)		
	2sided(2⇒2)		
	2in1(ID)		
	2in1		
	Poster		
	Ink Save		
	Book		

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Save as Shortcut	-	-	Save the current settings as a shortcut.
Options	Quality	-	Select the Copy resolution for your document type.
	Paper Type	-	Select the paper type that matches the paper in the tray.
	Paper Size	-	Select the paper size that matches the paper in the tray.
	Tray Select	-	Select the tray to be used for Copy mode.
	Enlarge/Reduce	100%	-
		Enlarge	Select an enlargement ratio for the next copy.
		Reduce	Select a reduction ratio for the next copy.
		Fit to Page	Adjust the copy size to fit on the paper size you have set.
		Custom(25-400%)	Enter an enlargement or reduction ratio.
	Density	-	Adjust the density.
	Stack/Sort	-	Select to stack or sort multiple copies.
	Page Layout	-	Make N in 1, 2 in 1 ID, or Poster copies.
	2-sided Copy	-	Turn off or turn on 2-sided copying and select flip on long edge or flip on short edge.
	Advanced Settings	-	Select advanced copy settings.

## [Scan]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
to Media (When a USB Flash drive	Other Scan to Actions	-	-	Scan documents and save them directly to a USB flash drive
is inserted)	Options	-	-	without using a computer.
	Save as Shortcut	-	-	
to PC	to File	Other Scan to Actions	-	Scan documents and save them to a folder on your computer.
		(Select USB or PC)	Options	
			Save as Shortcut	
	to OCR	Other Scan to Actions	-	Convert your scanned document to an editable text file.
		(Select USB or PC)	Options	
			Save as Shortcut	
	to Image	Other Scan to Actions	-	Scan photos or graphics into your graphics applications.
		(Select USB or PC)	Options	
			Save as Shortcut	
	to E-mail	Other Scan to Actions	-	Send a scanned document as an email attachment.
		(Select USB or PC)	Options	1

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
to PC	to E-mail	(Select USB or PC)	Save as Shortcut	Send a scanned document as an email attachment.
to E-mail Server (Available after Internet	Other Scan to Actions	-	-	Send scanned data to an email server by allowing your machine
Fax (I-Fax) is downloaded.)	Address Book	-	-	to communicate with your network and mail server.
downloaded.)	Manual	-	-	
	Next	Destinations	-	
		Options	-	
		Save as Shortcut	-	
	Destinations	-	-	
to FTP	Other Scan to Actions	-	-	Scan documents directly to an FTP server.
	(Select Profile	Options	-	
	name)	Save as Shortcut	-	
to Network	Other Scan to Actions	-	-	Scan documents directly to a CIFS server on your local network.
	(Select Profile	Options	-	
	name)	Save as Shortcut	-	
to Web	-	-	-	Upload the scanned data to an Internet service.
WS Scan	Other Scan to	-	-	Scan data using the Web
(Appears when you	Actions			Service protocol.
install a Web Services Scanner, which is	Scan	-	-	
displayed in your	Scan for E-mail	-	-	
computer's Network explorer.)	Scan for Fax	-	-	
	Scan for Print	-	-	



Level 1	Descriptions
Web	Connect the Brother machine to an Internet service.

## [Apps]

Level 1	Descriptions
Apps	Connect the Brother machine to the Brother Apps service.

## 🔊 [USB]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
PDF Print (MFC-J5930DW)	(Select a PDF file.)	-	Print Settings	Print a PDF file directly from a USB flash drive.
JPEG Print	Select Files	ок	Print Settings	Adjust your photos with the options.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
JPEG Print	Select Files	Print All	-	Print all photos in your USB flash drive.
	Index Print	Print Print Index Print Print a thum Sheet Settings		Print a thumbnail page.
		Print Photos Using Index No.	Print Settings	Print photos by choosing the index numbers.
Scan to Media	-	-	-	Scan documents into a USB flash drive.
Web	-	-	-	Connect the Brother machine to an Internet service.

## [A3 Copy Shortcuts]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
A3 2in1	Options	Quality	Select the Copy resolution for your document type.
$A4 \Rightarrow A3$		Paper Type	View the available paper type.
A4 + Note(L)		Paper Size	Set the size of paper in the paper tray.
A4 + Note(P) A4 + Grid A4 + Blank		Tray Select	Set the machine to automatically select the tray that contains the most appropriate paper.
A4 + Blank A4 Centre		Density	Adjust the density.

## [Download Software]

Level 1	Descriptions
Download Software	Displays information about downloading and installing software for mobile devices and computers.

## + [Shortcuts]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Add Shortcut	Сору	-	Change the settings in the Copy Options.
	Fax	-	Change the settings in the Fax Options.
	Scan	to PC(File)	Scan a monochrome or a colour document to your computer.
		to PC (OCR)	Convert your scanned document to an editable text file.
		to PC(Image)	Scan a colour picture into your graphics application.
		to PC(E-mail)	Scan a monochrome or a colour document into your email application.
		to Media	Scan documents and save them directly to a USB flash drive without using a computer.
		to E-mail Server (Available after Internet Fax (I-Fax) is downloaded.)	Scan a monochrome or a colour document to your email server.
		to Network	Send scanned data to a CIFS server on your local network or on the Internet.
		to FTP	Send scanned data via FTP.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Add Shortcut	Web	-	Connect the Brother machine to an Internet service.
	Apps	-	Connect the Brother machine to the Brother Apps service.
This list appears when each Shortcut icon is pressed for 2 seconds.	Rename	-	Change the shortcut name.
	Edit	-	Change the shortcut settings.
	Delete	-	Delete the shortcut.
Edit/ Delete	(Select	Rename	Change the shortcut name.
	shortcut button.)	Edit	Change the shortcut settings.
		Delete	Delete the shortcut.

# [Ink]

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
Ink Volume	-	Check the available ink volume.
Ink Cartridge Model	-	Check your ink cartridge numbers.
Improve Print Quality	-	Check and correct the print quality, alignment and paper feeding according to the LCD instructions.
Print Head Cleaning	-	Clean the print head according to the LCD instructions.
Remove Paper Scraps	-	Remove a piece of paper in the machine according to the LCD instructions.
Print Setting Reduce Options Smudging		Reduce smudging on the paper or paper jams during printing.
Reduce Uneven Reduce Lines		Reduce uneven lines on the paper during printing.
	Slow Drying Paper	Use this setting when printing with a type of plain paper on which the ink dries very slowly.

## wiFi (Wi-Fi Setup)

Level 1	Descriptions
Setup Wizard	Configure your internal print server manually.
WLAN Assistant	Configure your wireless network settings using the Brother CD-ROM.
WPS	Configure your wireless network settings using the one-button push method.

### When you have put a USB Flash drive in the USB slot

Level 1	Descriptions
PDF Print	Print a PDF file directly from a USB flash drive.
(MFC-J5930DW)	
JPEG Print	Select photo menu.
Scan to Media	Scan documents into a USB flash drive.
Web	Connect the Brother machine to an Internet service.

### Related Information

Settings and Features Tables

• Important Note

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from Your Computer

### **Change Machine Settings from Your Computer**

- Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management
- Change the Machine Settings Using Remote Setup
- Where Can I Find My Brother Machine's Network Settings?
- Network Management Software and Utilities

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from Your Computer > Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management

### Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management

Web Based Management is a utility that uses a standard web browser to manage your machine using the Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or Hyper Text Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer (HTTPS).

- What is Web Based Management?
- Access Web Based Management
- · Set a Login Password for Web Based Management

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from Your Computer > Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management > What is Web Based Management?

### What is Web Based Management?

Web Based Management is a utility that uses a standard web browser to manage your machine using the Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or Hyper Text Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer (HTTPS). Type your machine's IP address into your web browser to access and change your print server settings.

- We recommend Microsoft Internet Explorer 8/11 for Windows and Safari 9 for Mac. Make sure that JavaScript and Cookies are always enabled in whichever browser you use. If you use different web browser, make sure it is compatible with HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1.
  - You must use the TCP/IP protocol on your network and have a valid IP address programmed into the print server and your computer.

General Address Book Fax Prir	nt Scan Administrator Network		Solutions Center
			Bottom 🔻
<ul> <li>Status</li> <li>Auto Refresh Interval</li> <li>Maintenance Information</li> <li>Find Device</li> <li>Contact &amp; Location</li> <li>Sleep Time</li> <li>Auto Power Off</li> <li>Volume</li> <li>Panel</li> </ul>	Status Device Status Automatic Refresh Ink Level	Ready • Off O On M C Y BK	
	Web Language	Auto 🗸	
	Device Location	Contact :	

• The actual screen may differ from the screen shown above.

#### **Related Information**

Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from Your Computer > Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management > Access Web Based Management

### Access Web Based Management

- We recommend using the HTTPS security protocol when configuring settings using Web Based Management.
- When you use HTTPS for Web Based Management configuration, your browser will display a warning dialog box.
- 1. Start your web browser.
- Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.
  - For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://brnxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

- For Mac, access Web Based Management by clicking the machine's icon on the **Status Monitor** screen.
- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click -

You can now change the print server settings.

If you change the protocol settings, you must restart the machine after clicking **Submit** to activate the configuration.

#### **Related Information**

- Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management
- Print the Network Configuration Report
- Monitor Machine Status from Your Computer (Mac)

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from Your Computer > Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management > Set a Login Password for Web Based Management

### Set a Login Password for Web Based Management

We recommend setting a login password to prevent unauthorised access to Web Based Management.

- 1. Start your web browser.
- 2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.
  - For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://brnxxxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

- For Mac, access Web Based Management by clicking the machine's icon on the Status Monitor screen.
- 3. No password is required by default. Type a password if you have set one, and then click -
- 4. Click Administrator.
- 5. Type the password you want to use in the Enter New Password field (8 to 32 characters).
- 6. Retype the password in the Confirm New Password field.
- 7. Click Submit.

In the future, every time you access Web Based Management, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click ->.

After configuring the settings, log off by clicking

If you have not previously set a login password, you can also set a password by clicking the **Please** configure the password button on the machine's web page.



Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from Your Computer > Change the Machine Settings Using Remote Setup

### Change the Machine Settings Using Remote Setup

The Remote Setup program lets you configure many of your Brother machine's settings from your computer. When you start Remote Setup, the settings on your Brother machine will be downloaded to your computer and displayed on your screen. If you change the settings on your computer, you can upload them directly to the machine.

- Remote Setup (Windows)
- Remote Setup (Mac)

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from Your Computer > Change the Machine Settings Using Remote Setup > Remote Setup (Windows)

### Remote Setup (Windows)

- Set Up the Brother Machine from Your Computer (Windows)
- Set Up the Brother Machine Using ControlCenter4 (Windows)
- Set Up Your Machine's Address Book Using ControlCenter4 (Windows)

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from Your Computer > Change the Machine Settings Using Remote Setup > Remote Setup (Windows) > Set Up the Brother Machine from Your Computer (Windows)

### Set Up the Brother Machine from Your Computer (Windows)

If Secure Function Lock is set to On, you cannot use Remote Setup.

1. Do one of the following:

Ø

• Windows Vista and Windows 7

Click (Start) > All Programs > Brother > Brother Utilities.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **Tools** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Remote Setup**.

Windows 8 and Windows 10

Launch **Fig** (Brother Utilities), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click Tools in the left navigation bar, and then click **Remote Setup**.

The Remote Setup Program window appears.

When your machine is connected via a Network, type the password if required.

2. Configure the settings as needed.

🔏 Remote Setup Program - MFC-X	xxx				- • ×
MFC-XXXX General Setup Fax Fax Address Book Report Setting Remote Fax Opt	<u>General Setup</u> Check Paper Volume	Ring	⊚ On Med ▼	© Off	
Media     Network     TCP/IP(Wired)     Ethemet     TCP/IP(WLAN)     Initial Setup	LCD Settings	Beep Speaker	Low		
	Sleep Mode	Backlight Dim Timer	Light 30 Secs 5 Mins		
	Auto Power Off		lh ▼		
Export Import	Print		ок	Cancel	Apply

#### Export

Click to save the current configuration settings to a file.

Click **Export** to save your address book or all settings for your machine.

#### Import

Click to import a file and read its settings.

#### Print

Click to print the selected items on the machine. You cannot print the data until it is uploaded to the machine. Click **Apply** to upload the new data to the machine, and then click **Print**.

#### οκ

Click to start uploading data to the machine, and then exit the Remote Setup Program. If an error message appears, confirm that your data is correct, and then click **OK**.

#### Cancel

Click to exit the Remote Setup Program without uploading data to the machine.

#### Apply

Click to upload data to the machine without exiting the Remote Setup Program.

- 3. Click **OK**.
- If your computer is protected by a firewall and is unable to use Remote Setup, you may need to configure the firewall settings to allow communication through port numbers 137 and 161.
- If you are using Windows Firewall and you installed the Brother software and drivers from the CD-ROM, the necessary firewall settings have already been set.

#### Related Information

- Remote Setup (Windows)
- ControlCenter4 (Windows)

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from Your Computer > Change the Machine Settings Using Remote Setup > Remote Setup (Windows) > Set Up the Brother Machine Using ControlCenter4 (Windows)

### Set Up the Brother Machine Using ControlCenter4 (Windows)

If Secure Function Lock is set to On, you cannot use Remote Setup.

- 1. Click the **CCA** (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
- 2. Click the Device Settings tab.
- 3. Click the Remote Setup button.
- 4. Configure the settings as needed.

🔏 Rem	ote Setup Program - MFC-XX	(XX				- • ×
. M	FC-XXXX	General Setup				
	General Setup	Check Paper		On	© Off	
	Address Book	Volume				
	Report Setting Remote Fax Opt		Ring	Med •		
	··· Media ·· Network		Веер			
	···· TCP/IP(Wired)		Speaker			
	···· Ethernet ····· TCP/IP(WLAN)		эреакс	Med 🔻		
l.	··· Initial Setup	LCD Settings				
			Backlight	Light 🔻		
			Dim Timer	30 Secs •		
		Sleep Mode		5 Mins 🔹		
		Auto Power Off		1h •		
Ex	port Import	Print		ОК С	ancel	Apply

#### Export

Click to save the current configuration settings to a file.

Click Export to save your address book or all settings for your machine.

#### Import

Click to import a file and read its settings.

#### Print

Click to print the selected items on the machine. You cannot print the data until it is uploaded to the machine. Click **Apply** to upload the new data to the machine, and then click **Print**.

#### οκ

Click to start uploading data to the machine, and then exit the Remote Setup Program. If an error message appears, confirm that your data is correct, and then click **OK**.

#### Cancel

Click to exit the Remote Setup Program without uploading data to the machine.

#### Apply

Click to upload data to the machine without exiting the Remote Setup Program.

- 5. Click **OK**.
- If your computer is protected by a firewall and is unable to use Remote Setup, you may need to configure the firewall settings to allow communication through port numbers 137 and 161.
- If you are using Windows Firewall and you installed the Brother software and drivers from the CD-ROM, the
  necessary firewall settings have already been set.

#### Related Information

- ControlCenter4 (Windows)
- Remote Setup (Windows)

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from Your Computer > Change the Machine Settings Using Remote Setup > Remote Setup (Windows) > Set Up Your Machine's Address Book Using ControlCenter4 (Windows)

### Set Up Your Machine's Address Book Using ControlCenter4 (Windows)

Use Remote Setup through CC4 to add or change Address Book numbers on your computer.

If Secure Function Lock is set to On, you cannot use Remote Setup.

- 1. Click the **CCA** (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
- 2. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
- 3. Click the Address Book button.

The Address Book opens in a Remote Setup window.

- 4. Add or update the Address Book information as needed.
- 5. Click OK.



- Remote Setup (Windows)
- ControlCenter4 (Windows)

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from Your Computer > Change the Machine Settings Using Remote Setup > Remote Setup (Mac)

## Remote Setup (Mac)

- Set Up the Brother Machine Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Set Up Your Machine's Address Book Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from Your Computer > Change the Machine Settings Using Remote Setup > Remote Setup (Mac) > Set Up the Brother Machine Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

### Set Up the Brother Machine Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

If Secure Function Lock is set to On, you cannot use Remote Setup.

In the Finder menu bar, click Go > Applications > Brother, and then double-click the ControlCenter) icon.

The ControlCenter2 screen appears.

- 2. Click the DEVICE SETTINGS tab.
- 3. Click the Remote Setup button.

The Remote Setup Program screen appears.

	Remote Setup Prog	gram		
<ul> <li>MFC-XXXX General Setup</li> <li>Fax Address Book Report Setting Remote Fax Opt Media</li> <li>Network TCP/IP(Wired) Ethernet TCP/IP(WLAN) Initial Setup</li> </ul>	General Setup Check Paper Volume Rin Bee Speak LCD Settings Backlig Dim Tim Sleep Mode Auto Power Off	<ul> <li>On</li> <li>Med</li> <li>Hed</li> <li>Low</li> <li>Med</li> <li>Med</li> <li>Med</li> <li>the Light</li> <li>Light</li> <li>Comparison</li> </ul>	-	
Export Import	Print	ОК	Cancel Apply	

4. Configure the settings as needed.

#### Export

Click to save the current configuration settings to a file.

Click Export to save your address book or all settings for your machine.

11.

#### Import

Click to import a file and read its settings.

#### Print

Click to print the selected items on the machine. You cannot print the data until it is uploaded to the machine. Click **Apply** to upload the new data to the machine, and then click **Print**.

#### οκ

Click to start uploading data to the machine, and then exit the Remote Setup Program. If an error message appears, enter the correct data again, and then click **OK**.

#### Cancel

Click to exit the Remote Setup Program without uploading data to the machine.

#### Apply

Click to upload data to the machine without exiting the Remote Setup Program.

5. When finished, click **OK**.

#### Related Information

- ControlCenter2 (Mac)
- Remote Setup (Mac)

▲ Home > Machine Settings > Change Machine Settings from Your Computer > Change the Machine Settings Using Remote Setup > Remote Setup (Mac) > Set Up Your Machine's Address Book Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

### Set Up Your Machine's Address Book Using ControlCenter2 (Mac)

Use Remote Setup through ControlCenter2 to add or change Address Book numbers on your computer.

If Secure Function Lock is set to On, you cannot use Remote Setup.

 In the Finder menu bar, click Go > Applications > Brother, and then double-click the (ControlCenter) icon.

The ControlCenter2 screen appears.

- 2. Click the **DEVICE SETTINGS** tab.
- 3. Click the Address Book button.

The Address Book opens in a Remote Setup window.

- 4. Add or update the Address Book information as needed.
- 5. When finished, click **OK**.

Ø

#### Related Information

- Remote Setup (Mac)
- ControlCenter2 (Mac)

### Home > Appendix

## Appendix

- Specifications
- Supply Specifications
- Enter Text on Your Brother Machine
- Brother Numbers

## Specifications

## **General Specifications**

Printer Type		Inkjet
Print Head Mono		Piezo with 420 nozzles x 1
	Colour	Piezo with 420 nozzles x 3
Memory Cap	pacity	<ul> <li>MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW</li> <li>128 MB</li> <li>MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW</li> <li>256 MB</li> <li>MFC-J5930DW</li> <li>512 MB</li> </ul>
LCD (liquid (	crystal display) <sup>1</sup>	<ul> <li>MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW</li> <li>2.7 in. (67.5 mm) TFT Colour Touchscreen LCD</li> <li>MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW</li> <li>3.7 in. (93.4 mm) TFT Colour Touchscreen LCD</li> </ul>
Power Sour	Ce	AC 100 to 120 V 50/60 Hz (Taiwan) AC 220 to 240 V 50/60 Hz (Australia and other countries)
Power Cons	umption <sup>2</sup>	<ul> <li>MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW</li> <li>Copying <sup>3</sup>: Approx. 29 W</li> <li>Ready <sup>4</sup>: Approx. 6.5 W</li> <li>Sleep <sup>4</sup>: Approx. 1.6 W</li> <li>Power Off <sup>4 5</sup>: Approx. 0.04 W</li> <li>MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW</li> <li>Copying <sup>6</sup>: Approx. 30 W</li> <li>Ready <sup>4</sup>: Approx. 6.5 W</li> <li>Sleep <sup>4</sup>: Approx. 1.6 W</li> <li>Power Off <sup>4 5</sup>: Approx. 0.04 W</li> </ul>
Dimensions		<ul> <li>MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW</li> <li>Journal and the second</li></ul>



<sup>1</sup> Measured diagonally

<sup>2</sup> Measured when the machine is connected to the USB interface. Power consumption varies slightly depending on the usage environment or part wear.

- <sup>3</sup> When using ADF, single-sided printing, resolution: standard / document: ISO/IEC 24712 printed pattern.
- <sup>4</sup> Measured according to IEC 62301 Edition 2.0.
- <sup>5</sup> Even when the machine is turned off, it will automatically turn itself on periodically for print head maintenance, and then turn itself off.
- <sup>6</sup> When using ADF, single-sided printing and scanning, resolution: standard / document: ISO/IEC 24712 printed pattern.
- 7 Noise depends on printing conditions.
- <sup>8</sup> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW: Up to 30 pages when copying with the sort function.

#### **Document Size Specifications**

Document Size	ADF Width	105 to 215.9 mm
	ADF Length <sup>1</sup>	148 to 355.6 mm
	Scanner Glass Width	Max. 215.9 mm
	Scanner Glass Length	Max. 297 mm

1 Up to 900 mm when using the long paper function.

### **Print Media Specifications**

Paper Input	Paper Tray #1	Paper Type <sup>1</sup>	Plain Paper, Inkjet Paper (coated paper), Glossy Paper, Recycled Paper
		Paper Size <sup>2 3</sup>	(Landscape)
			A4, Letter, Executive, B5 (JIS)
			(Portrait)
			A3, Ledger, B4 (JIS), Legal, Mexico Legal, India Legal, Folio, A5, B6 (JIS), A6, Envelopes (C5, Com-10, DL, Monarch), Photo (10 x 15 cm), Photo L (9 x 13 cm),
			Photo 2L (13 x 18 cm), Index card (13 x 20 cm)
		Maximum Paper Capacity	Up to 250 sheets of 80 gsm plain paper
	Paper Tray #2	Paper Type	Plain Paper, Recycled Paper
	(MFC-J2730DW/	Paper Size <sup>3</sup>	(Landscape)
	MFC-J5730DW/		A4, Letter
	MFC-J5930DW)		(Portrait)
			A3, Ledger, B4 (JIS), Legal, Mexico Legal, India Legal, Folio
		Maximum Paper Capacity	Up to 250 sheets of 80 gsm plain paper
	Multi-purpose tray (MP tray) <sup>4</sup>	Paper Type <sup>1</sup>	Plain Paper, Inkjet Paper (coated paper), Glossy Paper, Recycled Paper
		Paper Size <sup>3</sup>	(Landscape)
	(MFC-J2730DW/		A4, Letter, Executive, B5 (JIS)
	MFC-J5730DW/ MFC-J5930DW)		(Portrait)
	MFC-J5930DW)		A3, Ledger, B4 (JIS), Legal, Mexico Legal, India Legal, Folio, A5, B6 (JIS), A6, Envelopes (C5, Com-10, DL, Monarch), Photo (10 x 15 cm), Photo L (9 x 13 cm), Photo 2L (13 x 18 cm), Index card (13 x 20 cm)
		Maximum Paper Capacity	Up to 100 sheets of 80 gsm Plain Paper
	Manual Feed Slot (MFC-J2330DW/	Paper Type <sup>1</sup>	Plain Paper, Inkjet Paper (coated paper), Glossy Paper, Recycled Paper
	MFC-J5330DW)	Paper Size <sup>3</sup>	(Landscape)
			A4, Letter, Executive, B5 (JIS)
			(Portrait)
			A3, Ledger, B4 (JIS), Legal, Mexico Legal, India Legal, Folio, A5, B6 (JIS), A6, Envelopes (C5, Com-10, DL, Monarch), Photo (10 x 15 cm), Photo L (9 x 13 cm), Photo 2L (13 x 18 cm), Index card (13 x 20 cm)
		Maximum Paper Capacity	Up to 1 sheet
Paper Ou	utput <sup>1</sup>		Up to A4/Letter size paper
			Up to 100 sheets of 80 gsm Plain Paper (face up print delivery to the output paper tray)
			Over A4/Letter size paper
			Up to 50 sheets of 80 gsm Plain Paper (face up print delivery to the output paper tray)

<sup>1</sup> For glossy paper, remove printed pages from the output paper tray immediately after they exit the machine to avoid smudging.

<sup>2</sup> Glossy paper is available up to A4 or Letter size.

<sup>3</sup> B6 (JIS), B5 (JIS) and B4 (JIS) size paper are supported only in some countries.

<sup>4</sup> We recommend using the MP tray for glossy paper.

#### **Fax Specifications**

Compatibility Modem Speed	<ul> <li>MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW ITU-T Group 3</li> <li>MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW ITU-T Super Group 3</li> <li>MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW Automatic Fallback: 14,400 bps</li> <li>MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW Automatic Fallback: 33,600 bps</li> </ul>
Scanning Width	ADF: 208 mm (A4)
(Single-sided document)	Scanner Glass: 204 mm (A4)
Scanning Width and Length (2-sided document)	Width: 208 mm (A4/Letter/Legal) (ADF) Length: 349.6 mm (ADF)
(MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)	
Printing Width	291 mm (A3)
Greyscale	Monochrome: 8 bit (256 levels) Colour: 24 bit (8 bit per colour/ 256 levels)
Resolution (Horizontal)	203 dpi
Resolution (Vertical)	Standard: 98 dpi (Mono) 196 dpi (Colour) Fine:
	196 dpi (Mono) 196 dpi (Colour)
	Superfine: 392 dpi (Mono)
	Photo: 196 dpi (Mono)
Address Book	100 names x 2 numbers or E-mail addresses <sup>1</sup>
Groups	Up to 6
Broadcasting	250 (200 Address Book/50 Manual Dial)
Automatic Redial	3 times at 5 minute intervals
Memory Transmission	Up to 200 pages <sup>2</sup>
Out of Paper Reception	Up to 200 pages <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> E-mail addresses are available after Internet Fax (I-Fax) is downloaded.

<sup>2</sup> 'Pages' refers to the 'ITU-T Test Chart #1' (a typical business letter, Standard resolution, MMR code).

### **Copy Specifications**

Colour/Monochrome	Yes/Yes
Copy Width	204 mm <sup>1</sup>

Multiple Copies		Stacks/Sorts up to 99 pages
Enlarge/	Reduce	25% to 400% (in increments of 1%)
Resoluti	on	Prints up to 1200 × 4800 dpi
2-sided	Paper Type	Plain Paper, Recycled Paper
	Paper Size	A4, Letter, A5

<sup>1</sup> When copying on A4 size paper.

### **USB Flash Drive Specifications**

Compatible Med	ia	USB Flash drive <sup>2</sup>	
JPEG Print	Resolution	Up to 1200 x 4800 dpi	
	Paper Type	Plain Paper, Inkjet Paper (coated paper), Glossy Paper, Recycled Paper	
	Paper Size	A4, Letter, A3, Ledger, Photo (10 x 15 cm), Photo 2L (13 x 18 cm)	
	File Format	JPEG (Progressive JPEG format is not supported)	
PDF Print	Resolution	Up to 1200 x 1800 dpi	
(MFC-J5930DW)	Paper Type	Plain Paper, Recycled Paper	
	Paper Size <sup>1</sup>	A4, Letter, A3, Ledger, B4 (JIS), Legal, Mexico Legal, India Legal, Folio, B5 (JIS), A5, A6	
	File Format	PDF version1.7	
Scan to Media	File Format	JPEG, PDF (Colour, Grey) TIFF, PDF (Monochrome)	

 $^1$   $\,$  B5 (JIS) and B4 (JIS) size paper are supported only in some countries.

<sup>2</sup> USB Flash drive is not included. Full-Speed USB 2.0. USB Mass Storage standard up to 256 GB. Supported formats: FAT12/FAT16/ FAT32/exFAT

#### **Scanner Specifications**

Colour/Monochrome	Yes/Yes
TWAIN Compliant	Yes
	(Windows Vista / Windows 7 / Windows 8 / Windows 10)
	(OS X v10.9.5 / 10.10.x /10.11.x)
WIA Compliant	Yes
	(Windows Vista / Windows 7 / Windows 8 / Windows 10)
ICA Compliant	Yes (OS X v10.9.5 / 10.10.x /10.11.x)
Colour Depth	• MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
	48 bit colour processing (Input)
	24 bit colour processing (Output)
	<ul> <li>MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW</li> </ul>
	48 bit colour processing (simplex) (Input)
	30 bit colour processing (duplex) (Input)
	24 bit colour processing (Output)

Greyscale	• MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW
	16 bit colour processing (Input)
	8 bit colour processing (Output)
	• MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW
	16 bit colour processing (simplex) (Input)
	10 bit colour processing (duplex) (Input)
	8 bit colour processing (Output)
Resolution	Up to 19200 × 19200 dpi (interpolated) <sup>1</sup>
	Up to 1200 × 2400 dpi (optical) (from Scanner Glass)
	Up to 600 × 600 dpi (optical) (from ADF)
Scanning Width and Length	(Scanner Glass)
(Single-sided document)	Width: Up to 213.9 mm
	Length: Up to 295 mm
	(ADF)
	Width: Up to 213.9 mm
	Length: Up to 353.6 mm
Scanning Width and Length	Width: Up to 213.9 mm (ADF)
(2-sided document)	Length: Up to 353.6 mm (ADF)
(MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW)	

Maximum 1200 × 1200 dpi scanning with the WIA driver in Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8 and Windows 10 (resolution up to 19200 × 19200 dpi can be selected using the scanner utility).

### **Printer Specifications**

Emulation		PCL6, BR-Script3, PDF version1.7, XPS version 1.0
(MFC-J5930DW)		
Resolution		Up to 1200 × 4800 dpi
Printing Width <sup>1</sup>		291 mm [297 mm (borderless)] <sup>2</sup>
Borderless		A4, Letter, A3, Ledger, A6, Photo (10 x 15 cm), Photo L (9 x 13 cm), Photo 2L (13 x 18 cm), Index card (13 x 20 cm)
Automatic 2-sided Paper Type		Plain Paper, Recycled Paper
	Paper Size <sup>3</sup>	A4, Letter, A5, Executive, B5 (JIS), B6 (JIS)
Print Speed	1	For detailed specifications visit <u>www.brother.com</u> .

<sup>1</sup> When printing on A3 size paper.

<sup>2</sup> When the Borderless feature is set to On.

<sup>3</sup> B6 (JIS), B5 (JIS) and B4 (JIS) size paper are supported only in some countries.

#### **Interface Specifications**

<b>USB</b> <sup>12</sup>	Use a USB 2.0 interface cable that is no longer than 5 m.
LAN	Use an Ethernet UTP cable category 5 or greater.
Wireless LAN	IEEE 802.11b/g/n (Infrastructure)
	IEEE 802.11g/n (Wi-Fi Direct)

<sup>1</sup> Your machine has a USB 2.0 Hi-Speed interface. The machine can also be connected to a computer that has a USB 1.1 interface.

<sup>2</sup> Third party USB ports are not supported.

#### **Network Specifications**

Ø

You can connect your machine to a network for Network Printing, Network Scanning, PC-Fax Send, PC-Fax Receive (Windows only), and Remote Setup.

Brother BRAdmin Light (Windows only) Network Management software is also available as a download from Brother Solutions Center. Go to your model's **Downloads** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u> to download the software.

(Windows) If you require more advanced machine management, use the latest Brother BRAdmin Professional utility version. Go to your model's **Downloads** page on the Brother Solutions Center at <u>support.brother.com</u> to download the software.

Wireless Network Security		WEP 64/128 bit, WPA-PSK (TKIP/ AES), WPA2-PSK (TKIP/AES) <sup>1</sup>	
Wireless Setup Support Utility	WPS	Yes	

1 Wi-Fi Direct supports WPA2-PSK (AES) only.

#### **Computer Requirements Specifications**

#### **Supported Operating Systems And Software Functions**

Computer Platform & Operating System Version		PC Interface		Processor	Hard Disk Space to Install		
		USB <sup>1</sup>	10/100 Base-TX (Ethernet)	Wireless 802.11b/ g/n	-	For Drivers	For Applications (Including Drivers)
Wind ows Oper	Windows Vista <sup>2 3</sup>	Printing PC Fax <sup>4</sup>			32 bit (x86) or 64 bit (x64) processor	500 MB	1.3 GB
ating Syste m	Windows 7 <sup>2</sup> 3	Scanning				650 MB	-
	Windows 8 <sup>2</sup> 3						
	Windows 8.1 2 3						
	Windows 10 Home <sup>2 3</sup>						
	Windows 10 Pro <sup>2 3</sup>						
	Windows 10 Education <sup>2 3</sup>						
	Windows 10 Enterprise <sup>2 3</sup>						
	Windows Server 2008	N/A	Printing			50 MB	N/A
	Windows Server 2008 R2				64 bit (x64) processor		
	Windows Server 2012						
	Windows Server 2012 R2						
Mac Oper	OS X v10.9.5	Printing	·		Intel <sup>®</sup>	80 MB	550 MB
Oper		PC-Fax (Se	end) <sup>4</sup>		Processor		

ating Syste m	OS X v10.10.x OS X v10.11.x	Scanning				
---------------------	--------------------------------------	----------	--	--	--	--

- <sup>1</sup> Third party USB ports are not supported.
- <sup>2</sup> For WIA, 1200 x 1200 resolution. Brother Scanner Utility enables enhancing up to 19200 x 19200 dpi.
- <sup>3</sup> Nuance<sup>™</sup> PaperPort<sup>™</sup> 14 supports Windows Vista (SP2 or greater), Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows 10 Home, Windows 10 Pro, Windows 10 Education and Windows 10 Enterprise.
- 4 PC-Fax supports black and white only.

For the latest driver updates, visit <u>support.brother.com</u> and go to your model's **Downloads** page.

All trademarks, brand and product names are the property of their respective companies.

#### Related Information

• Appendix

### **Supply Specifications**

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5330DW/MFC-J5730DW

Ink	The machine uses individual Black, Yellow, Cyan and Magenta ink cartridges that are separate from the print head assembly.
Service Life of Ink Cartridge	The first time you install a set of ink cartridges the machine will use an amount of ink to fill the ink delivery tubes for high quality printouts. This process will only happen once. After this process is complete the cartridges provided with your machine will have a lower yield than regular capacity cartridges (approximately 65%). With all following ink cartridges you can print the specified number of pages.

#### **Replacement Supplies**

	(For Australia and other Oceania countries)	(For Middle East, Africa, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Nepal and Afghanistan)	(For other countries)
Super High Yield Black	LC3319XLBK	LC3719XLBK	LC3619XLBK
Super High Yield Yellow	LC3319XLY	LC3719XLY	LC3619XLY
Super High Yield Cyan	LC3319XLC	LC3719XLC	LC3619XLC
Super High Yield Magenta	LC3319XLM	LC3719XLM	LC3619XLM

Black - Approximately 3000 pages <sup>1</sup>

Yellow, Cyan and Magenta - Approximately 1500 pages <sup>1</sup>

	(For Australia and other Oceania countries)	(For Middle East, Africa, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Nepal and Afghanistan)	(For other countries)
High Yield Black	LC3317BK	LC3717BK	LC3617BK
High Yield Yellow	LC3317Y	LC3717Y	LC3617Y
High Yield Cyan	LC3317C	LC3717C	LC3617C
High Yield Magenta	LC3317M	LC3717M	LC3617M

Black, Yellow, Cyan and Magenta - Approximately 550 pages <sup>1</sup>

For more information about the replacement supplies, visit us www.brother.com/pageyield

#### What is Innobella?

Innobella is a range of genuine supplies offered by Brother. The name "Innobella" derives from the words "Innovation" and "Bella" (meaning "Beautiful" in Italian) and is a representation of the "innovative" technology providing you with "beautiful" and "long lasting" print results.

When you print photo images, Brother recommends Innobella glossy photo paper (BP71 series) for high quality. Brilliant prints are made easier with Innobella Ink and paper.



#### MFC-J5930DW

Ink

The machine uses individual Black, Yellow, Cyan and Magenta ink cartridges that are separate from the print head assembly.

<sup>1</sup> Approx. cartridge yield is declared in accordance with ISO/IEC 24711

Service Life of Ink Cartridge	The first time you install a set of ink cartridges the machine will use an amount of ink to fill the ink delivery tubes for high quality printouts. This process will only happen once. After this process is complete the cartridges provided with your machine will have a lower yield than LC3329XL cartridges (approximately 80% for Black and 65% for colour). With all following ink cartridges you can print the specified number of pages.
Replacement Supplies	<super black="" high="" yield=""> LC3329XLBK <super high="" yellow="" yield=""> LC3329XLY <super cyan="" high="" yield=""> LC3329XLC <super high="" magenta="" yield=""> LC3329XLM Black - Approximately 3000 pages <sup>1</sup> Yellow, Cyan and Magenta - Approximately 1500 pages <sup>1</sup> For more information about replacement supplies, visit us at <u>www.brother.com/pageyield</u></super></super></super></super>

1 Approx. cartridge yield is declared in accordance with ISO/IEC 24711

### Related Information

• Appendix

▲ Home > Appendix > Enter Text on Your Brother Machine

### **Enter Text on Your Brother Machine**

- The characters that are available may differ depending on your country.
- The keyboard layout may differ depending on the function you are setting.
- >> MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

•

>> MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

#### MFC-J2330DW/MFC-J5330DW

When you need to enter text on your Brother machine, a keyboard will appear on the touchscreen.



- Press A 1 @ to cycle between letters, numbers and special characters.
- Press \_\_\_\_\_\_ to cycle between lowercase and uppercase letters.
- To move the cursor to the left or right, press ◀ or ►.

#### **Inserting spaces**

• To enter a space, press [Space]. Or, you can press ▶ to move the cursor.

#### **Making corrections**

- If you entered an incorrect character and want to change it, press < or > to highlight the incorrect character.
   Press < , and then enter the correct character.</li>
- To insert a character, press < or > to move the cursor to the correct place, and then enter the character.
- Press  $\propto$  for each character you want to erase, or press and hold  $\propto$  to erase all the characters.

#### MFC-J2730DW/MFC-J5730DW/MFC-J5930DW

When you need to enter text on your Brother machine, a keyboard will appear on the touchscreen.

Shortcut Name	1	
Shortcut01		$\times$ $\times$ $\times$
QWE	RTY	UIOP
AS	DFG	H J K L
. Z	X C V	B N M @
СтаА	Space	А 1 @ ОК

- Press A 1 @ to cycle between letters, numbers and special characters.
- Press ☆aA to cycle between lowercase and uppercase letters.
- To move the cursor to the left or right, press ◀ or ►.

#### **Inserting spaces**

• To enter a space, press [Space]. Or, you can press ▶ to move the cursor.

#### **Making corrections**

- If you entered an incorrect character and want to change it, press < or > to highlight the incorrect character.
   Press < , and then enter the correct character.</li>
- To insert a character, press ◀ or ► to move the cursor to the correct place, and then enter the character.
- Press  $\overleftarrow{\times}$  for each character you want to erase, or press and hold  $\overleftarrow{\times}$  to erase all the characters.

#### **Related Information**

- Appendix
- Send the Same Fax to More than One Recipient (Broadcasting)
- · Store Address Book Numbers from Outgoing Calls
- Store Address Book Numbers from Caller ID History
- Change a Broadcasting Group Name
- Set Your Station ID
- Change or Delete Shortcuts

▲ Home > Appendix > Brother Numbers

### **Brother Numbers**

#### IMPORTANT

For technical help, you must call Brother Customer Service or your local Brother Dealer.

#### FAQs (Frequently Asked Questions)

The Brother Solutions Center is our one-stop resource for all your Machine needs. Download the latest software and utilities and read **FAQs & Troubleshooting** tips to learn how to get the most from your Brother product. Check here for Brother driver updates, too.

support.brother.com

#### **Customer Service**

Visit www.brother.com for contact information on your local Brother office.

#### Service centre locations

For service centres in your area, contact your local Brother Office. Contact information for local Brother Offices can be found at <u>www.brother.com</u> and selecting your country.

#### **Internet Addresses**

Brother Global Web Site: www.brother.com

For Frequently Asked Questions (FAQs), Product Support and Technical Questions, and Driver Updates and Utilities:

support.brother.com



• Appendix





OCE/ASA/SAF/GLF Version B